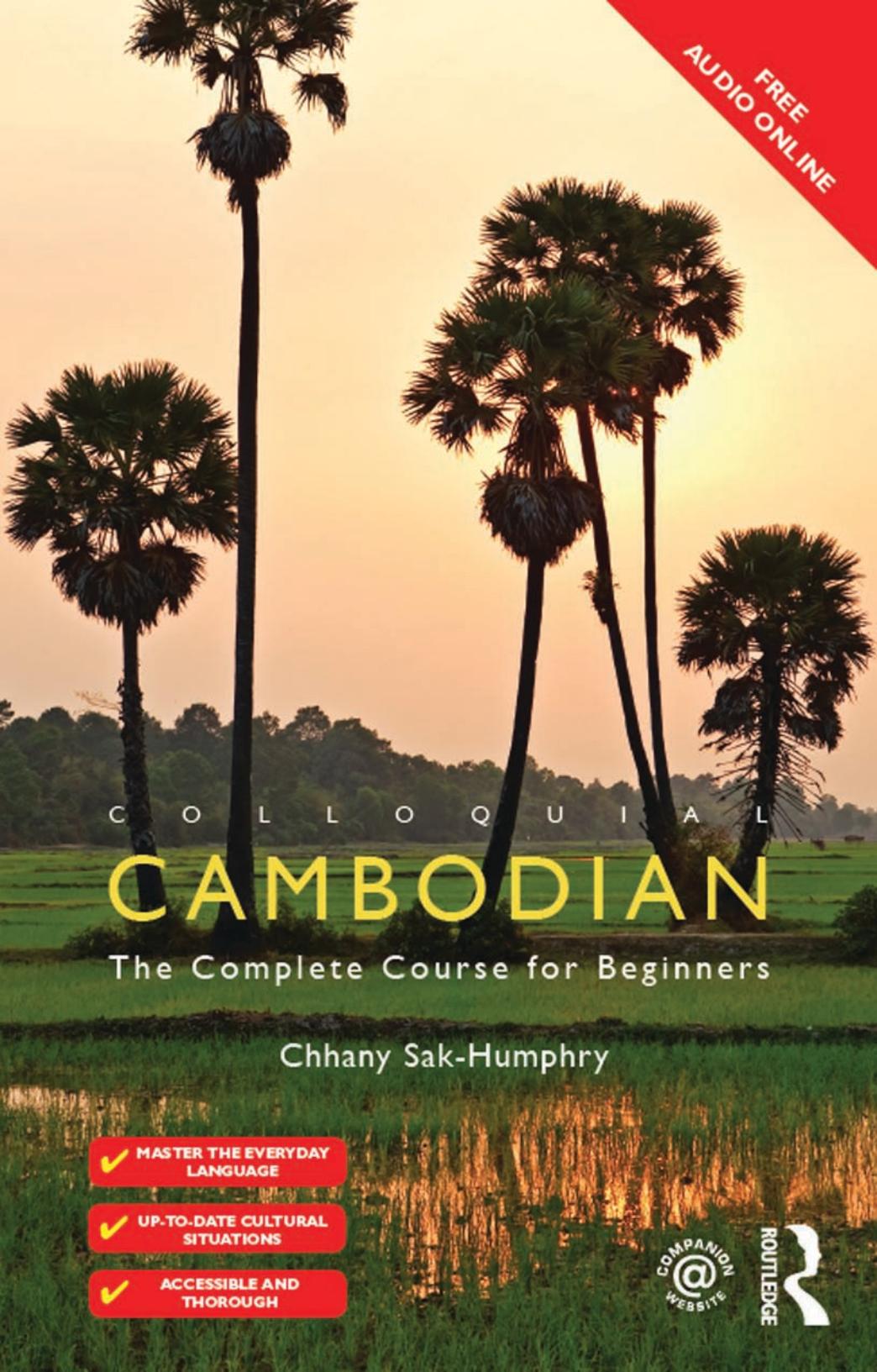


FREE
AUDIO ONLINE



COLLOQUIAL

CAMBODIAN

The Complete Course for Beginners

Chhany Sak-Humphry

✓ MASTER THE EVERYDAY LANGUAGE

✓ UP-TO-DATE CULTURAL SITUATIONS

✓ ACCESSIBLE AND THOROUGH

COMPANION
@
WEBSITE

ROUTLEDGE R

Colloquial

Cambodian

Colloquial Cambodian provides a step-by-step course in Cambodian as it is written and spoken today.

Colloquial Cambodian has been developed by a linguist and an experienced Cambodian language professor and combines an accessible approach with a thorough treatment of the language, equipping learners with the essential skills needed to communicate confidently and effectively in Cambodian in a broad range of situations. No prior knowledge of the language is required.

Key features include:

- progressive coverage of speaking, listening, reading, and writing skills
- jargon-free explanations of grammar
- an extensive range of focused and stimulating exercises
- realistic and entertaining dialogues covering a broad variety of scenarios
- coverage of the Cambodian writing script
- useful vocabulary lists throughout the text
- additional resources available at the back of the book, including a full answer key, a grammar summary, bilingual glossaries, and translations of dialogues and reading passages.

Balanced, comprehensive, and rewarding, *Colloquial Cambodian* is an indispensable resource both for independent learners and for students taking courses in Cambodian.

Colloquials are now supported by FREE AUDIO available online. All audio tracks referenced within the text are free to stream or download from www.routledge.com/cw/colloquials. Recorded by native speakers, the audio complements the book and will help enhance learners' listening and speaking skills.

By the end of this course, you will be at Level B1 of the Common European Framework for Languages and at the Intermediate level on the ACTFL proficiency scales.

THE COLLOQUIAL SERIES

Series Adviser: Gary King

The following languages are available in the Colloquial series:

Afrikaans	German	Romanian
Albanian	Greek	Russian
Amharic	Gujarati	Scottish Gaelic
Arabic (Levantine)	Hebrew	Serbian
Arabic of Egypt	Hindi	Slovak
Arabic of the Gulf	Hungarian	Slovene
Basque	Icelandic	Somali
Bengali	Indonesian	Spanish
Breton	Irish	Spanish of Latin America
Bulgarian	Italian	Swahili
Burmese	Japanese	Swedish
Cambodian	Kazakh	Tamil
Cantonese	Korean	Thai
Catalan	Latvian	Tibetan
Chinese (Mandarin)	Lithuanian	Turkish
Croatian	Malay	Ukrainian
Czech	Mongolian	Urdu
Danish	Norwegian	Vietnamese
Dutch	Punjabi	Welsh
English	Persian	Yiddish
Estonian	Polish	Yoruba
Finnish	Portuguese	Zulu (forthcoming)
French	Portuguese of Brazil	

COLLOQUIAL 2s series: *The Next Step in Language Learning*

Chinese	German	Russian
Dutch	Italian	Spanish
French	Portuguese of Brazil	Spanish of Latin America

Colloquials are now supported by FREE AUDIO available online. All audio tracks referenced within the text are free to stream or download from www.routledge.com/cw/colloquials. If you experience any difficulties accessing the audio on the companion website, or still require to purchase a CD, please contact our customer services team through www.routledge.com/info/contact.

Colloquial Cambodian

The Complete Course
for Beginners

Chhany Sak-Humphry



Routledge
Taylor & Francis Group
LONDON AND NEW YORK

Second edition published 2016
by Routledge
2 Park Square, Milton Park, Abingdon, Oxon OX14 4RN

and by Routledge
711 Third Avenue, New York, NY 10017

Routledge is an imprint of the Taylor & Francis Group, an informa business

© 2016 Chhany Sak-Humphry

The right of Chhany Sak-Humphry to be identified as author of this work has been asserted by her in accordance with sections 77 and 78 of the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reprinted or reproduced or utilized in any form or by any electronic, mechanical, or other means, now known or hereafter invented, including photocopying and recording, or in any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publishers.

Trademark notice: Product or corporate names may be trademarks or registered trademarks, and are used only for identification and explanation without intent to infringe.

First edition by David Smyth published by Routledge 1995

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloging in Publication Data
Sak-Humphry, Chhany, author.

Colloquial Cambodian : the complete course for beginners / Chhany Sak-Humphry. –
Second edition.

pages cm. — (The colloquial series)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

1. Khmer language—Textbooks for foreign speakers—English. 2. Khmer language—Conversation and phrase books—English. 3. Khmer language—Spoken Khmer. I. Title.
II. Series: Colloquial series.

PL4323.S248 2015

495.9'3282421–dc23

2014027234

ISBN: 978-0-415-52407-0 (pbk)

ISBN: 978-0-203-12065-1 (ebk)

Typeset in Avant Garde and Helvetica
by Graphicraft Limited, Hong Kong

Additional materials are available on the companion website at www.routledge.com/cw/colloquials

Contents

Introduction	xi
1 kaa kuə saam niŋ kaa nae noam kluən ការគូសម និងការណែនាំខ្លួន Greetings and self-introductions	1
In this unit you will learn how to:	
• introduce yourself	
• exchange common greetings	
• use personal pronouns	
• address people	
• make simple sentences	
• ask and answer some ‘what’ and ‘where’ questions	
• read and write Cambodian consonants (C)	
2 kruəsaa ត្រីពីរ Family	17
In this unit you will learn how to:	
• introduce members of your family	
• ask and answer questions about Cambodian kinship and relationships	
• ask and answer questions with ‘how many’	
• count unit numbers with classifier nouns	
• use possessive and demonstrative nih and noh	
• ask and answer some yes and no questions with tee	
• make simple negation sentences with min . . . tee and ?at . . . tee	
• count numbers 1–20	
• read and write vowels (V)	

3 peel veelie 32

ពេលវេលា

Time and date

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell the time
- ask and talk about different days of the week and months of the year
- use the future and past time expressions
- use verb combinations with **caŋ** and **trəv**
- count and use numbers from 20 to one million
- read and write all consonants (C) and vowels (V), and their combinations (CV)

4 kaa nat cuəp niŋ kəc prəcam tñay 46

ការណាត់ដូចបន្ទិងកិច្ចប្រចាំថ្ងៃ

Appointments and daily routines

In this unit you will learn how to:

- make appointments with specific people, organizations, or institutions in the public and private sector
- address government officials by their various titles and positions
- use the words **kampuŋ**, **coap rɔvuəl**, and **nat**
- use specific timeframe terms **coŋ**, **daəm**, **peak kondaal**
- ask and answer questions using **tumnee**, **cam**, **taam cət**, **bon kamnaət**
- use expressions related to daily routine
- read and write combinations of consonant, vowel, and consonant (CVC)

5 niv psaa kmae 60

ផ្សេងៗរខ្សោយ

At the open market

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and say what to buy at the open market
- ask, tell, and bargain for prices with **taa tlay**
- use the expressions ‘yet,’ ‘not yet,’ and ‘how about’
- say some names of fruits and vegetables
- use appropriate classifiers
- refer to qualities and units of measurement
- read and write CV and CVC combinations

6 rɔbah ?ɑ?nuhsaava?rii niŋ samliek bampeak	74
របស់អនុស្សារីយ៍និងសំលោកបំពាក់	
Souvenirs and clothing	

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about buying and selling clothes, shoes, and souvenirs
- use expressions relating to ‘price,’ ‘to try or test,’ and saying ‘please’
- talk about and ask for color and sizes for your clothing
- use the verbs **sliek** and **peak** on wearing garments/things
- use appropriate classifiers
- read and write subscripts

7 mhoop ?aahaa niŋ pʰoocea?niyea?tʰaan	86
មួបអាមេរិនិងភោជនីយដ្ឋាន	
Food and restaurants	

In this unit you will learn how to:

- say what Cambodians eat for breakfast, lunch, and dinner
- invite someone to eat out
- order food and drinks at a restaurant
- express like and dislike
- use expressions **rii**, **tumnee**, **hav**, **yɔɔk**, **?aoy**, and **cie muəy**
- read and write words with subscripts

8 rɔbaa rɔɔk sii niŋ kaanje	100
របវគកសីនិងការងារ	
Vocations and employment	

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about certain occupations
- apply for a job
- use expressions related to professions and employments
- use words and expressions with **neak**, **cien**, **rɔɔk sii**, **baək**, **kaanje**, **pii mun . . . kraoy**, or **pii damboon . . . kraoy**
- read and write words or expressions related to vocations
- read and write monosyllabic words with subscripts CCV or CCVC

9 tii konlaen niŋ tih dav	114
ទីកន្លែងនិងទិសដំណោះ	
Locations and directions	

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about the location of things
- ask and give directions
- use expressions related to distances, and ordinal and cardinal points
- use the progressive form with **kamponj**
- use expressions **pii . . . + motion verb; pii . . . + r̥hoot dal**
- use the word **dael** in front of a verb
- read and write Cambodian locational and directional expressions
- read and write cluster words with C₁C₂V(C₃), C₁C₂C₃V(C₄), and C₁C₂C₃ C₄V(C₅)

10 ?aakaasa?t̥iet niŋ r̥cdəv	128
ភាគាសធាតុនិងរដ្ឋវាំ	
Weather and seasons	

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about weather and seasons in various places
- use expressions related to the weather and seasons
- ask and answer with the expression **haet ?øy baan cie**
- use expressions **steah, reaŋ, tleak, tnal lic tik, can**, **ŋoap, min . . . ponmaan**, and **kue tae**
- read and write expressions and sentences related to the weather and seasons
- read and write Cambodian independent vowels

11 sakamp^hiep kamsaan 143

សកម្មភាពកំសាន្ត

Leisure activities

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about leisure activities, favorite things, people, or places
- use the expressions **mīn səv, cuən kaal, taəŋ tae, cie nic, kaa daoy, and daəmbəy**
- read and write words/expressions for leisure activities in Cambodian scripts
- use some Cambodian diacritics symbols

12 kaa tvəə damnaə 158

ការធ្វើដំណើរ

Traveling

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about your travel plans and means of traveling
- ask and tell about various sites to visit in Cambodia
- use words or expressions related to traveling
- read and write Cambodian punctuation

13 sant^haakie niŋ sambot 172

សណ្ឋាគារនិងសំបុត្រ

Hotels and tickets

In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about booking a hotel/place to stay
- ask and tell about booking/confirming plane tickets and renting a car
- use words or expressions related to buying/confirming tickets or booking a hotel room
- use words or expressions with **samrap, bənceak, kak, baep, seevaa, seevakam, tiv, mɔɔk, piŋ cət, cool cət, and som cuəy**
- read and write short expressions in Cambodian script related to this theme

14	krueh ?aasan niŋ pajhha sokphiep គ្រោះអាសន្និងបញ្ហាសុខភាព Emergencies and health issues	186
In this unit you will learn how to:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ask and call for help use expressions related to diseases and illness use words or expressions with kaet, cʰii, cumnjii, and bondaal, trəv (passive construction) read and write short expressions and simple sentences in Cambodian script 		
15	praysa?nii niŋ tʰɔniekie ត្រូវសណ្ឋើយ៉ានិងធ្វាត់ Post office and banking	200
In this unit you will learn how to:		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ask and tell about sending letters and goods within and outside of Cambodia ask and tell about exchanging money ask and tell about a bank or ATM machine nearby use the words ?aasray lœ, prak, luy, ban, and kaat read and write Cambodian expressions and short sentences 		
 Grammar summary		213
Key to exercises		231
Translations of dialogues		258
Translations of reading passages		274
Cambodian–English glossary		280
English–Cambodian glossary		304
Index		329
Audio track listing		331

Introduction (Audio 1.1; Bonus audio 1)



Cambodian is the official language of Cambodia. It's spoken by around 14 million people inside the country. A few more million in southern Vietnam and in some provinces along the Cambodian northern border adjoining northeast Thailand also speak Cambodian dialects.

Cambodian is one of the oldest languages in Southeast Asia. It belongs to the Mon-Khmer family of languages, with its own writing system being the earliest recorded well over 1,000 years ago. Three main phases in the language's evolution have been recognized by linguists:

- 1 Old Cambodian, from the seventh to the fourteenth centuries;
- 2 Middle Cambodian, fourteenth to eighteenth centuries; and
- 3 Modern Cambodian, eighteenth century to the present.

Given its geographic location in mainland Southeast Asia, and also its Angkor golden era from around the ninth to the thirteenth centuries, Cambodian – with its heavy cultural influence from ancient India through Buddhism and Hinduism – has inevitably influenced the development of other languages in neighbouring areas.

From around the fifteenth century onward, however, with the decline of the Angkor civilization, the Cambodian language has in turn been influenced by its western neighbour, Thai; and to a lesser extent, by Vietnamese, its eastern neighbour.

Between the nineteenth and the first half of the twentieth century, when Cambodia was under French protectorate, Cambodian acquired a heavy dose of French cultural and linguistic influence. This influence, however, has been gradually and steadily replaced by English. The replacement of French by English has been accelerated especially since the 1991 Paris Peace Accords brokered by the United Nations. In many respects, despite concerted effort by Francophone countries

over the past few decades, it can be said that in Cambodia, English has already supplanted French as the country's second language. English-speaking people will find this evolution of Cambodian a welcome start as they embark on their quest to learn one of the oldest languages of mainland Southeast Asia.

The advent of the internet has certainly contributed to speeding up the decline of French linguistic influence on Cambodian, especially in the fields of information technology and the media. This is partly the result of English-speaking Western journalists providing training to their Cambodian counterparts. Syntax is one the most easily noticeable features when reading the majority of Cambodian-language newspapers.

Unlike its neighbouring Thai in the west and Vietnamese in the east, Cambodian is devoid of tones. Cambodian's rich vocalic system, however, has made some people think that it is also a tonal language.

The majority of genuine Cambodian words consist of one or two syllables. Words with three or more syllables are almost certainly loanwords or newly coined ones using components borrowed from Sanskrit and Pali, two major ancient languages in India.

Another characteristic of Cambodian is the ways new words are created. Generally known as the derivation and infixation processes, the Cambodian language can produce primary and secondary sets of derivations from a root word. These productive means, which were in decline during the Middle Cambodian period, have been revived by the Royal Cambodian Academy over the past few decades. The result produced by this development is still undergoing a kind of test. Several newly coined words are apparently not yet fully adopted by users.

Along with derivation and infixation, new generations of Cambodian linguists have also tried to bring back the tendency to coin new words using elements borrowed from Sanskrit and Pali.

Pronunciation and spelling are two other areas that are causing some problems, not only to foreign students of Cambodian but also to Cambodians themselves. Attempts have been made by Cambodian authorities to standardize pronunciation and spelling.

This brief introduction is not meant to discourage foreign learners of Cambodian. Like any attempt to learn a foreign language, learners should be clear on how they plan to use the language they are learning. For those whose goal is to learn 'colloquial Cambodian,'

defined here as ‘everyday language of young, educated people,’ this book should prove a big help for them. Great effort has been made to select only the most common terms/words/expressions learners would read in vernacular newspapers and hear in local conversation and in television and radio programs.

Transliteration

As mentioned earlier, there is no standardization or universally accepted system for Cambodian in Romanization or transliteration. The transliteration used in this book is based on International Phonetic Alphabet (IPA). Thus the transliteration in the book is mine and might not be the same as other sources. The transliteration is designed to provide learners with an introduction to Cambodian pronunciation. However it is not perfect because many sounds in Cambodian language do not exist in English and cannot be accurately represented phonetically. The audio available online will help learners with their pronunciation. Taking into account the difference in pronunciation between colloquial and formal Cambodian, there is no substitute for closely listening and trying to replicate what the natives say.

Consonants and consonant clusters

(Audio 1.2–1.5; Bonus audio 2)



The 33 regular Cambodian consonant symbols and their phonetic transcription representing Cambodian sounds in normal alphabetic order are presented in [Unit 1, Table 1](#). The 11 other consonant symbols modified by the diacritics (៥) and (ᬁ) are presented in [Unit 11](#). Cambodian consonants are represented by the following phonetic sound symbols: p, t, c, k, ?, b, d, s, h, f, m, n, ɲ, ɳ, v, y, l, r. How to write these Cambodian consonant symbols is shown in [Unit 1, Table 2](#).

The following are examples using English words to show the pronunciation of the following sound symbols: p, t, c, k, ?, b, d, s, h, f, m, n, ɲ, ɳ, v, y, l, r when they are in initial position sound like in English:

- p- as in ‘spot’ or ‘span’ (stop)
- t- as in ‘top’ or ‘sting’
- c- as in ‘cheese’ or ‘chat’
- k- as in ‘ski’ or ‘score’ (unaspirated)
- ?- as in ‘oh’ or ‘any’
- b- as in ‘bin’ or ‘bat’
- d- as in ‘day’ or ‘do’
- s- as in ‘sit’ or ‘sand’
- h- as in ‘hard’ or ‘hall’
- m- as in ‘man’ or ‘mother’
- n- as in ‘no’ or ‘north’
- ŋ- as in ‘canyon’ or ‘onion’
- ɳ- as in ‘sing’
- v- as in ‘very’
- y- as in ‘yard’
- l- as in ‘late’ or ‘lock’
- r- as in ‘rose’

The following are examples using English words to show the pronunciation of some of the sound symbols when they are in final position:

- p as in ‘up’ or ‘cup’
- t as in ‘hot’ or ‘bat’
- c as in ‘such’
- k as in ‘back’
- s as in ‘mass’
- m as in ‘him’
- n as in ‘can’
- ŋ as in ‘bang’
- v as in ‘cover’
- y as in ‘boy’
- l as in ‘hall’

Many Cambodian words start with consonant clusters and are straightforward as in English but several others are different. They are introduced and discussed in [Units 6 to 9](#).

Vowels (Audio 1.6; Bonus audio 3–6)



Cambodian has 24 regular dependent vowel symbols and 12 independent vowel symbols and can be in various combinations with consonant symbols. The sound of some Cambodian vowels seems indistinguishable to foreign ears; some are quite hard to pronounce.

Learning to write Cambodian script will also help to clarify pronunciation. The vowel symbols and their phonetic transcriptions are presented in [Unit 2, Table 3](#). How to write these symbols is shown in [Table 4](#). Learning to say them correctly in isolation with the aid of the audio will help with articulation, but the essential part is to be able to carry out task activities, and interact and communicate with others.

The following are some examples using Cambodian and English words to show the pronunciation of some of these vowel symbols.

aa: the aa in l?aa ល្អ ‘good’ sounds like a in ‘ago’

aa: the aa in baan បាន ‘to obtain’ sounds like a in ‘car’

ə: the ə in bət បែត ‘to close’ sounds like u in ‘but’

əy: the əy in day ដៃ ‘earth’, sounds like ay in ‘pay’

ii: the ii in pii ពិិ ‘two’ or ciik ចិិក ‘dig’ sounds like ee in ‘see’ or ‘cheek’

oo: the oo in koon កូន ‘child’ sounds like o in ‘go’

iə: the iə in biə បិះ ‘earth’ sounds like e in ‘here’

ie: the ie in vie ីវ ‘s/he, it’ or cie ីជោ ‘to be’ sounds like e in ‘here’

ay: the ay in thay ឃាយ ‘Thai’ sounds like ai in ‘Thai’

av: the av in hav ហាហ ‘call’ or cav ហាង ‘grandchildren’ sounds like ao in ‘Lao’

eh: the eh in seh ឈុំ ‘horse’ sounds like e in ‘set’

How to use this course

There are 15 units with the same layout in this book. Each unit has two to three sample dialogues introducing the key points and language points in context of how Cambodian natives used them. They are indispensable for developing listening and speaking skills.

The English translations of the dialogues from **Unit 6** onwards are provided at the end of the book.

Exercises consist of vocabulary-building, grammar, reading, and writing activities. Most exercises are also recorded in the audio available online. Use the key at the end of the book to check your answers.

The Cambodian–English and English–Cambodian glossaries will help learners to quickly check new words and use them creatively when building their own sentences.

Further study

- Headley, Robert (1977) *Cambodian–English, English–Cambodian Dictionary*, 2 volumes, Washington: Catholic University of American Press.
- Headley, Robert, Rath Chim and Ok Soeun (2000) *Modern Cambodian–English Dictionary*, Kensington, MD: Dunwoody Press.
- Huffman, F. E and Im Proum (1977) *Cambodian Literary Reader and Glossary*, New Haven and London: Yale University Press.
- Jacob, Judith M. (1968) *Introduction to Cambodian*, London: Oxford University Press.
- Sak-Humphry, Chhany (2005) *Communicating in Khmer: Reading and Writing for Beginners*, Honolulu: University of Hawaii at Manoa.

Online dictionary

Sealang SEAlang Library Khmer Dictionary, www.sealang.net/khmer/dictionary.htm

Unit One

kaa kuə saam nɪŋ kaa nae noam kluən

ការគួរសម និងការណែនាំខ្លួន

Greetings and self-introductions

In this unit you will learn how to:



- introduce yourself
- exchange common greetings
- use personal pronouns
- address people
- make simple sentences
- ask and answer some ‘what’ and ‘where’ questions
- read and write Cambodian consonants (C)

When you meet people in Cambodia, you will introduce yourself and exchange information about each other.

Dialogue 1



Self-introductions (**Audio 1.7**)



Listen to how Sophal (A) and Marie (B) introduce themselves at their first meeting.

-
- A: cumriep suə. knom cmvəh San Sophal. som hav knom Sophal.
B: cumriep suə. knom cmvəh Marie Claude. Claude kii cie cmvəh tracool knom.
A: knom cie kmae. mɔɔk pii kʰaet siəm riep.

- A: soom tooh, Marie mook pii srok naa?
 B: knom cie coon ciet baaran mook pii tii krom paarii.
 A: knom cie kruu banriən pʰiesaa ?aŋkleeh niv saakol vittyielay.
 coh Marie?
 B: knom cie nieysek niv peet kalmact.
 A: ?aa kun. riikriey daoy baan cuəp knie.
 B: knom kaa ?aŋcəŋ dae.
- A: *Hello, I am San Sophal. Please call me Sophal.*
 B: *Hello, my name is Marie Claude. Claude is my last name.*
 A: *I am Cambodian. I am from Siem Reap.*
 A: *Excuse me, where are you from Marie?*
 B: *I am a Frenchwoman from Paris.*
 A: *I am an English teacher at the university. What about you, Marie?*
 B: *I am the director of Calmette Hospital.*
 A: *Thank you. Nice to meet you.*
 B: *Pleased to meet you too.*



Vocabulary

cumriepl suə	ជំម្រាបសុវា	hello (polite greeting form)
knom	ខ្លួន	I
cmbeəh	ណែនាំ	to be called
som	សំ	to request, to ask (for); to ask to (do something)
hav	ហោរ	to call
kii ciə, ciə	គីជា, ជា	is (to be)
trakool or cmbeəh kruəsaa	ត្រួរពិនិត្យ ឬ ណែនាំត្រួរពិនិត្យ	family name or last name
baat	បាត	polite response for male
caah, caa	ចាស់, ចា	polite response for female
mook	មក	to come; to, toward
pii	ពី	from
kʰaet	ខេត្ត	province
soom tooh	សូមទោស	excuse (me)

banriən	បានរីន	to teach
kruu banriən	គ្រូបានរីន	teacher
ph̄iesaa	ភាសា	language
?aŋkleeh	អង់គ្លេស	English; of or pertaining to England
niv	នៅវិទ្យាល័យ	to be at; to stay/live/reside (at); at; in
saakol vittyielay	សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ	university
cōon ciet	ជនជាតិ	nationality
baaranj	បាត់ចាត់	France; French person (woman/man)
ti kroŋ	ទីក្រុង	city
paarii	បាត់រី	Paris
coh	ចុះ	what/how about; to go down
nieysek	នាយក	director
tv̄eə	ធ្វើ	to do, to make, to perform
tv̄eə kaa	ធ្វើការ	to work
p̄eet kalmaet	ពេឡាកាល់ខែត្តិត	Calmette Hospital
?ae naa	ឯណាតា	where
?aa kun	អារគុណា	thank you
riikriey	រឹករាយ	happy, glad
cuəp	ដួប	to meet
daoy baan cuəp	ដោយបានដួប	to be able to meet
kaa ?aŋcəŋ dae	ក៏អត្ថៃងដែរ	it's the same

Language points



Greeting in Cambodian

There are several expressions used for greeting in Cambodian. The formal, respectful, and common greeting to say hello and goodbye in Cambodian are cumriep suə ជ្រើមបិស្បែរ ‘hello’ and cumriep lie ជ្រើមបិលា ‘goodbye,’ with the salute gesture sampeah សំបិះ (clasping

your hands together in a lotus bud form as if in prayer and bowing your head). In a familiar situation, when a younger person greets an elder person, or when both parties are about the same age and status, the gesture sampeah សំបេះ can be omitted. The word suəsdəy សូសិតី is frequently used by young people to foreigners to equate the English word ‘hello,’ in which case the gesture is omitted. The expression ləek day tvaay preah is an elderly person’s response to young people’s greeting.

Names in Cambodian

Cambodians write their names with a family name first followed by a given name. Some people will use the word cmuəh kruəsaa ត្រួតពិវិវុ ‘family name,’ then trakool ត្រួតពិលុ ‘last name.’ Cambodians address each other with a title noun followed by the given name. Depending on the age of the speaker, the name can be prefixed by baan បាន ‘elder,’ pou ពួរ ‘uncle,’ or miin មិន ‘aunt.’ When addressing a foreigner, Cambodians use the title noun followed by the family name, unless both parties are familiar with each other or about the same age. In that case the title noun will be followed by the given name. Some title nouns are listed in the pronouns section below and in the kinship terms in [Unit 2](#).

Pronouns

Cambodian has many nouns and title nouns that are used as pronouns. Learners need to select appropriate words based on the speaker’s gender and age. Pronouns are usually omitted based upon the context. These are common pronouns used by beginners.

knom	ខ្សោយ	I
look	លោក	Mr., you (sing., plur.) for male and polite
look srey	លោកស្រី	Mrs., you (sing., plur.) for female and polite
neak	អ្នក	you (sing., plur.) for male/female. Neutral, commonly used by both genders of the same age

koat	គាំពី	he, him, his, they, she, her, their. Polite
kee	គិត	he, she; his, her; they, them; someone; other
yəəŋ	យើង	we, us, ours (regular). I, me, my, mine (intimate)
vie	វា	he, she; they; it (of animals) (refers to people in informal context or to people of a lower status or rank)
knie	គ្មូ	I, he, she, we, they (depends on the context); people. Together
?aeŋ	ឯង	you (familiar and intimate); self, oneself
?ap	អញ្ជូ	I (depends on the context)

Simple sentence construction

In Cambodian sentences, the word order is: subject-verb-object. In a colloquial context, the subject and object, especially pronouns, are often omitted.

The word srok ស្រប ‘country’ is used more informally than prateeh ប្រធៃណិត. The expression coon ciet ជនជាតិ ‘nationality, citizen’ is often omitted as well. For example:

koat cie ?aameerikaj.

គាំពីជាអាមេរិកា។

She is an American.

moo k pi srok ?aŋkleeh.

មកពីស្របអង់គ្លេស។

Comes from England.

‘What’ questions

The Cambodian word for ‘what’ is vey ដី (formal) or ?øy ឌី (colloquial). This interrogative word is used at the end of the question statement. For example:

look srey tvəə kaa ?vəy?
 លោកស្រីធើរដ្ឋី?
 What do you (female) do?

?aeŋ cməəh ?əy?
 ឯធមុនីអី?
 What is your name?

'Where' questions

In Cambodian the word for 'where' is naa នានា when asking a question.
 In general the contractive of ?ae naa ឯធមុនី is naa នានា. For example:

koat baŋriən niv naa?
 តាគតែបង្វែននៅណា?
 Where does she teach?

?aeŋ mɔɔk pii naa?
 ឯធមកពីណា?
 Where are you from?

saalaa niv naa?
 សាលាដោយណា?
 Where is the school?

'Who' questions

The expression neak naa អ្នកណា, used to ask for 'who, whom; anyone; someone,' is used more often than noɔnaa នូចណា. For example:

look cie neak naa (noɔnaa).
 លោកជាអ្នកណា?
 Who are you (sir)?

look srey cie neak naa?
 លោកស្រីជាអ្នកណា?
 Who are you (madam)?

kruu baŋriən cie neak naa?
 គ្រួបង្វែនជាអ្នកណា?
 Who is the teacher?

Statements with ‘excuse me’

The expression som tooh សូមថាស់ ‘excuse, sorry’ is used at the beginning of a question or at the end of a statement to express politeness. For example:

som tooh, koat mook pii naa?

សូមថាស់ តាត់មកពីណា?

Excuse me, where is he from?

som tooh, ?aeŋ riən ?əy?

សូមថាស់ ជនរៀនអី?

Excuse me, what do you study?

som tooh, knom niv psaa.

សូមថាស់ ខ្សោយផ្លូវ។

Excuse me, I am at the market.

Exercise 1



Listen to the dialogue conversation 1 again. Marie is asking these questions to Sophal. How would Sophal respond?

1 cmuəh ?əy?

2 mook pii naa?

3 cie ccoñ ciet ?əy?

4 tvəə cie ?əy?

5 banriən phiesaa ?əy?

6 niv ?ae naa?

Exercise 2 (Audio 1.8)



Now Sophal is asking you these questions about Marie. How would you respond?



1 soom tooh koat cmuəh ?əy?

2 trakool ?əy?

3 mook pii srok naa?

4 tii kroŋ cmuəh ?əy?

5 tvəə cie nieysek ?əy?

6 haəy tvəə kaa niv ?ae naa?



Dialogue 2



Hello and goodbye (Audio 1.9)

Borey (A) meets Wei Ly (B) at his university. They exchange greetings.

-
- A: suəsdəy, kñom cmuəh Kong Borey.
 A: som tooh, soom nae noam k^huən.
 B: suəsdəy, kñom cmuəh Wei Ly, mɔɔk pii srok cən.
 A: kñom cie nihsət mɔɔk pii srok kmae.
 A: peel tjay, riən niv saakal vittyielay.
 A: peel yup, tvəə kaa niv sənt^haakie. coh ?aeŋ?
 B: peel tjay, bəŋriən p^hiesaa cən, haəy riən p^hiesaa kmae.
 B: peel yup, tvəə kaa niv haəj baay cən.
 B: ?aa kun. lei haəy.
 A: lei haəy. cuəp knie tjay kraoy.
- A: *Hello, my name is Kong Borey.*
 A: *Excuse me, please can you introduce yourself.*
 B: *Hello, my name is Wei Ly, I am from China.*
 A: *I am a student from Cambodia.*
 A: *During the day, I study at the university.*
 A: *At night, I work at a hotel. How about you?*
 B: *During the day, I teach Chinese and study the Cambodian language.*
 B: *At night, I work at a Chinese restaurant.*
 B: *Thank you. Goodbye.*
 A: *Goodbye. See you next time.*
-



Vocabulary

som tooh	សំទោស	excuse (me)
nae noam	ណែនាំ	to guide; to advise; to give clue
soom nae noam k ^h uən	សូមណែនាំខ្លួន	please introduce yourself

kmae	ខ្សែរ	Cambodian
prateh kmae or kampu?cie	ប្រធែសខ្សែរ ឬកម្ពុជា	Cambodia
peel tñay # peel yup	ពេលថ្ងៃ # ពេលយប់	day time/night time
riən	រៀន	to study
nihsət	និស្សិត	student (college)
sant̄hakie	សណ្ឌាគារ	hotel
cən	ចិន	Chinese; China; to be Chinese
srok (prateh) cən	ស្រីក(ប្រធែស)ចិន	China
haaŋ bay	ហាងបាយ	restaurant
lei haøy	លាមីយ	goodbye
tñay kraoy	ថ្ងៃក្រាយ	next time

Exercise 3 (Audio 1.10)

One student asks you these questions about Borey and Wei Ly. How would you respond?



- 1 Borey moök pii srok naa?
- 2 vie cie coon ciet øy?
- 3 vie riən niv ?ae naa?
- 4 peel yup vie tvøə kaa niv ?ae naa?
- 5 neak naa cie nihset cən?
- 6 Wei Ly riən ?øy?
- 7 Wei Ly baŋriən ?øy?
- 8 peel yup, Wei Ly tvøə ?øy?



Dialogue 3

Greeting an elder (Audio 1.11)



A young man (A) exchanges his greeting with his friend's grandfather (B) when they meet.

- A: cumriep suə look taa!
 B: ləək day tvaay preah, cav.
 A: look taa sok sapbaay cie tee?
 B: sok sapbaay. cav ?aeŋ mook pii naa?
 A: baat, knom mook pii salaa riən.
 A: look taa ?əŋcəəŋ tiv naa?
 B: tiv psaa, cav.
 A: look taa, knom tiv tvəə kaa. soom cumriep lie haəy.
 B: min ?ey tee cav. tiv ?aoy sok sapbaay.

- A: *Hello grandpa!*
 B: *Hello (grandson).*
 A: *How do you do grandpa?*
 B: *I am fine. Where are you coming from?*
 A: *(Yes) I am coming from school.*
 A: *Grandpa where are you going?*
 B: *Going to the market.*
 A: *Grandpa, I am going to work. Please, goodbye for now.*
 B: *That's fine. Health and happiness to you.*



Vocabulary

ləək day tvaay preah	លោក ដែលបានស្រីម្បាយ	hello (elderly greeting to other)
sok sapbaay cie tee	សុខ សមប្បាយជាទុក	how are you
sok sapbaay	សុខ សមប្បាយ	to be well (fine) and happy
salaa rien (salaan)	សាលាអេង (សាលា)	school
?əŋcəəŋ	អង្ក់ញូ	to invite
tiv	ទៅ	to go; to; toward
psaa	ផ្សារ	market
cumriep lie	ធម្មាបណា (ធម្មាបណា)	goodbye; to say goodbye (polite)
min ?ey tee	មិនអីទេ	it's nothing, you're welcome; surely

Language point



Manners and respect

The expression សិរីជាអ្វី ធនា ‘to invite,’ when used before verbs of motion and other verbs, is used to indicate a sign of respect, as in ‘please do.’ For example:

សិរីជាអ្វី cool.

ធនាបាន

Please come in.

សិរីជាអ្វី សិរីកូយា.

ធនាបានអង្គូយា

Please sit down.

សិរីជាអ្វី រាម.

ធនាបានរាម

Please eat.

The expression សាត់ អរគុណណា ‘thank you’ can also mean to be grateful or to be thankful to someone, as in these examples:

សាត់ លូក ស្រែយ.

អរគុណណាលោកស្រី

I am grateful to you (madam).

សាត់ ក្រាយ នាហ.

អរគុណណាប្រើនិនាសំ

Thank you very much.

The expression មិនឱ្យទេ មិនីត្រូវ ‘surely’ is also used to respond to សាត់ អរគុណណា ‘thank you,’ as in ‘it does not matter, it is all right,’ ‘don’t mention it,’ or ‘you’re welcome.’

The expression ក្រាយ នាហ ប្រើនិនាសំ ‘very much’ is used at the end of the sentence.



Exercise 4 (Audio 1.12)

How would you say these statements to a Cambodian person?



- 1 Please introduce yourself.
- 2 I am pleased to meet you (sir).
- 3 Excuse me, where are you coming from?
- 4 Goodbye, see you next time.
- 5 Thanks, be well and healthy.
- 6 Don't mention it.



Language points

Reading and writing Cambodian scripts

The Cambodian writing system consists of 44 consonant symbols (33 regular symbols and 11 others modified by diacritics). Cambodian writing has no spaces between words and starts from left to right on the horizontal line. When space occurs it serves as punctuation marks (like commas in English) or as pronunciation pause. The symbol 'I' is used in the same way as a full stop or period in English. Unlike Thai, some Cambodian words begin with two consonant clusters (CCV, for example, knom ក្រុម 'I'), three consonant clusters (CCCV, for example, banriən បានរីយ៉ាន 'to teach'), or four consonant clusters (CCCCV, for example, kontray កំត្រាយ 'scissors'), where the second, third, and fourth consonants are in modified forms, subscripts, written below the first, second, or third consonant.

There are two styles of writing: the regular script (can be straight or italic) for regular use; and the ornate round script (for signs or titles of books).

Here you will learn how to pronounce (see [Table 1](#)) and write (see [Table 2](#)) the 33 consonant (C) symbols in the Cambodian writing system. It will take a while to master them, thus use the audio (to hear the actual pronunciation) and keep reviewing and learning them for the next two to six weeks.

Table 1 Consonant symbols and phonetic transcriptions

1 Velars	ក kaa k- -k	ខ k ^h aa k ^h - -k	គ koo k- -k	ឃ k ^h oo k ^h - -k	ង goo ŋ- -ŋ
2 Palatals	ច caa c- -c	ឆ c ^h aa c ^h - -c	ជ coo c- -c	ធម c ^h oo c ^h - -c	ញ goo n- -n
3 Retroflexes	ជ daa d- -t	ប t ^h aa t ^h - -t	ឌ doo d- -t	ធម t ^h oo t ^h - -t	ណុន naa n- -n
4 Dentals	ធ taa t- -t	ច t ^h aa t ^h - -t	ទ too t- -t	ធម t ^h oo t ^h - -t	នុន noo n- -n
5 Labials	ប baa b- -p	ផ p ^h aa p ^h - -p	ល boo p- -p	វ p ^h oo p ^h - -p	មុន maa m- -m
6 Miscellaneous	យ yoo y- -y	រ roo r- -r	ល loo l- -l	វ voo v- -v	
	សិរ saa s- -h	បាន haa h-	ឡាតាំង laa l-	អីន្លឹង ?aa ?-	

Consonants

Cambodian consonants are classified as belonging to two groups: first series or first register or low register, and second series or second register or high register. They are divided by the sounds they make when combined with the vowels.

The 33 regular Cambodian consonant symbols and their phonetic transcriptions representing Cambodian sounds in normal alphabetic order are presented here (see Table 1). They are classified according to the first series (in bold) and second series. They are arranged in five groups (velars, palatals, retroflexes, dentals, and labials) based on position of articulation, proceeding from the back of the mouth to the front of the mouth. A sixth group is labeled as miscellaneous.

On the second line of each group, each consonant represents how it is written in the initial position and in the final position. Example in the velars group, the k-, k^h-, k-, k^h-, ŋ-, represented in the initial position; and as -k, -k, -k, -k, -ŋ, respectively in the final position; and so on. Notice that, the consonants ខ គ ឃ in final position pronounce as k; ច ជ ធម in final position pronounce as c; ជ គ ធម នុន in final position pronounce as t; ផ ល វ in final position pronounce

as p; and the consonants ធម្ម ធម្មា ធគ្ម ធគ្មា can be represented only in the initial position – they never appear in the final position. In the miscellaneous group, the ending -r is not pronounced; the consonant ធរ is represented as -h in the final position.

Exercise 5 (Audio 1.13)



Listen to the audio and practice writing these 10 consonants of the 1st series symbols:

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 k ^h aa | 6 caa |
| 2 p ^h aa | 7 naa |
| 3 taa | 8 daa |
| 4 laa | 9 haa |
| 5 saa | 10 t ^h aa |

Exercise 6 (Audio 1.14)



Listen to the audio and practice writing these ten consonants of the second series symbols:

- | | |
|------|---------------------|
| 1 cm | 6 cc ^h p |
| 2 ko | 7 cu |
| 3 tc | 8 ccu |
| 4 lc | 9 ccu |
| 5 cy | 10 ca |

Exercise 7

Read aloud these consonants.

- | | |
|---------|---------|
| 1 ធម្ម | 11 ធគ្ម |
| 2 ធម្មា | 12 ធន |
| 3 ធគ្ម | 13 ធប |
| 4 ធគ្មា | 14 ធច |
| 5 ធប | 15 ធប |
| 6 ធហា | 16 ធគ |
| 7 ធហ | 17 ធប |
| 8 ធប | 18 ធប |
| 9 ធម | 19 ធប |
| 10 ធផ្ម | 20 ធប |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 1.15; Bonus audio 7)



First listen to the summary of the self-introduction and exchange greeting in this unit. Then look at the Cambodian text to see how many consonants or words you can recognize in these statements. Draw a blue circle around the first register consonants and a red circle around the second register consonants.

ធម្មាបសុំ ខ្សែំ ឈើណ៍ សាន់សុជលា ខ្សែំ មកពី សៀវភៅ មកបា
ខ្សែំ ជាគ្រូបង្រៀន ភាសាអង់គ្លេស នៅសាកលវិទ្យាល័យ។

ធម្មាបសុំ ខ្សែំ ឈើណ៍ ម៉ារីកតា ក្បួនពី ជាឈើណ៍ គ្រួស ខ្សែំ ជាងនជាតិ បាក់ដំឡើង មកពី បាក់រោា ខ្សែំ ជាទាមយក ធ្វើការ នៅ ពេទ្យកាល ម៉ែត្រ។

សូសី ខ្សែំ ឈើណ៍ គឺជាបុរី ខ្សែំ ជានិស្សិត មកពី ស្រុក ខ្មែរ ពេល ថ្ងៃ ខ្សែំ ផ្លូវ ហើយ ពេល យប់ ខ្សែំ ធ្វើការ នៅ សណ្ឌាការ។

cumriep suə, knom cmvəh saan Sophal. knom mɔok pii siəm riep. knom cie kruu baŋriən pʰiesaa ?əŋkleeh niv saakal vittyielay.

cumriep suə, knom cmvəh Marie Claude. Claude ki̥ cie cmvəh tracool knom. knom cie cɔɔn ciet baaraŋ mɔok pii paarii. knom cie nieysek tvəə kaa niv peet kalmaet.

suəsðəy, knom cmvəh Kong Borey. knom cie nihsət mɔok pii srok kmae. peel tŋay, knom riən haøy peel yup, knom tvəə kaa niv santʰaakie.

Table 2 How to write Cambodian consonant symbols



The writing of these 33 consonant symbols starts from the dot numbered 1, 2, or 3, on each symbol.

Unit Two

kruəsaa

គ្រឿង សំរាប់

Family

In this unit you will learn how to:



- introduce members of your family
- ask and answer questions about Cambodian kinship and relationships
- ask and answer questions with ‘how many’
- count unit numbers with classifier nouns
- use possessive and demonstrative **nih** and **noh**
- ask and answer some yes and no questions with **tee**
- make simple negation sentences with **min . . . tee** and **?at . . . tee**
- count numbers 1–20
- read and write vowels (V)

Dialogue 1



Introducing your family (**Audio 1.16**)



This dialogue is between two friends, Sophal (A) and Rany (B). They talk about each other’s family members.

-
- A: suəsdəy Rany.
B: suəsdəy Sophal. nih kii ciə kruəsaa knom.
A: kruəsaa ?aerj mien knie ponmaan neak?
B: mien pram pil neak.

- A: neak naa klah?
 B: kii look taa look yiey, ?əvpuk mdaay, baan proh, p?oon sr̄ey, ni? knom.
 A: Rany, nih kii ci? baan sr̄ey knom, koon koat ni? puu miij knom.
 B: coh ?əvpuk mdaay ?aen?
 A: ?əvpuk mdaay knom slap haey. kruəsaa yøø? mien knie pram neak.
- A: *Hello, Rany.*
 B: *Hello, Sophal. This is my family.*
 A: *How many people are there in your family?*
 B: *There are seven people in my family.*
 A: *Who are they?*
 B: *There are my grandparents, my parents, my older brother, my younger sister and I.*
 A: *Rany, this is my older sister, her son, and my aunt and uncle.*
 B: *How about your parents?*
 A: *My parents have passed away. Our family has five people.*



Vocabulary

kruəsaa	គ្រែសាត់	family
mien	មាន	to have, consist of, comprise
ponmaan	បុន្ណាន	how many
neak	នាក់	classifier for people
klah	នី៖	some; else
look taa (or taa)	លោកតា (តា)	grandfather (polite)
look yiey (or yiey)	លោកយាយ (យាយ)	grandmother (polite)
?əvpuk mdaay	ឱពុកម្នាយ	parents (lit. father/mother)
?əvpuk/?əv/puk/paa	ឱពុក (ឱ ពុក ចុំ)	father, dad, papa
mdaay/puk/mak	ម្នាយ (ចិំ ម៉ាក)	mother, mom, mommy
baan	បង្គ	older sibling
baan proh, baan sr̄ey	បង្គប្រើស, បង្គក្រី	older brother, older sister

p?oon	ឃុំ	younger sibling
p?oon sr?y, p?oon proh	ឃុំស្រី, ឃុំប្រិស	younger sister, younger brother
baan p?oon	បានឃុំ	brother and sister; relatives
puu	ពូ	uncle
mii?g	មីង	aunt
koon	កូន	child
koon proh, koon sr?y	កូនប្រិស, កូនស្រី	son, daughter
slaap	ស្មាប់	pass away or decease

Language points



Family and kinship terms

Family is a core social component in Cambodian daily life. When you meet people, they immediately want to talk or know about the family. Beside your immediate family words listed above, you will need to use the following kinship terms while interacting with people. Generally speaking, the term look លោក លោក is used in combination with kinship terms to denote respect, politeness, and even endearment, such as look taa, look yiey, look baan, look p?oon, or look mie. The word baan បាន, besides referring to an older sibling or person, is also used to refer to or address a husband, oneself, or a slightly older friend or acquaintance.

Similarly, the word p?oon ឃុំ (or its contracted form ?oon) means a younger sibling or person, and is also used to denote familiarity and endearment. For example, a wife would refer to herself as ?oon ឃុំ when talking to her husband. The words puu ពូ and mii?g មីង primarily mean uncle and aunt, or oneself when talking to others, but can also be used to address any persons judged to be of one's parents' generation.

The word ?um, ?om អូម means elder sibling of one's parent or also refers to oneself when talking to other relatives or persons of one's parents' generation. The word kmuay ក្មោយ 'nephew or niece' can also be used to denote affection toward someone about the same age as one's children.

Usage of word ponmaan ប៉ូន្មាន

In this unit the word ponmaan ប៉ូន្មាន is used at the end of a question statement to ask for ‘how many’ or ‘how much.’ When used with a classifier noun, ponmaan is placed before the noun. In Cambodian the use of a classifier is optional. However, when counting, the position of the classifier is fixed: noun-number-classifier. The classifier noun neak នាក់ is used for ‘people,’ cnam ឆ្នាំ for ‘year,’ k^hae ខែ for ‘month,’ and tñay ថ្ងៃ for ‘day.’ For example:

mien koon ponmaan (neak)?
How many children do you have?

baat pram (or pram neak).
Yes, five (I have five children).

kaa bann pii tñay haøy.
Been married for two days already.

Asking about age with ?aayu? អាយុ

In Cambodian it is common to ask for a person’s age because it indicates the hierarchical order needed to select the appropriate term to address the person.

koon srøy ?aayu? døp cnam.
The daughter is ten years old.

?aeñ ?aayu? ponmaan (cnam)?
How old are you?

caa mp^hey cnam.
Yes, 20 years old.

Yes-no question with tee ឬ

The word to indicate a yes-no question (tee ឬ) is always placed at the end of a sentence. To answer ‘yes’ to this type of question, the main verb from the question is repeated. To denote politeness, it may optionally be preceded by baat បាត (by male speaker) or caah/caa ចាត់ស្រប/ចាត់ (by female speaker).

?aeŋ mien taa yiey tee?
Do you have grandparents?

caa mien or mien.
I have (grandparents).

caa tee or tee.
No (female).

baat tee or tee.
No (male).

Negation markers min . . . tee or ?at . . . tee

These two expressions min . . . tee ພຶນ . . . ແກ້ວ and ?at . . . tee ຂັດຕິ . . . ແກ້ວ have the same meaning but the latter indicates a stronger degree of familiarity among speakers.

Colloquially the negation markers min ພຶນ or ?at ຂັດຕິ are placed before the verb, and tee ແກ້ວ is optional after. The contraction form of min mien ພຶນມານີ ‘don’t have’ is kmien ຄູ້ານີ.

koat min tiv tee.
S/he is not going.

koat ?at tiv tee.
S/he is not going.

koat ?at tiv.
S/he is not going.

Numbers (Audio 1.17–1.18)



soon	ໂ	ສົ່ງ	zero
muøy	໭	ມູຍ	one
pii	໨	ຕິ່ງ	two
bəy	໩	ບີ່	three
buən	໪	ບູນ	four
pram	໫	ປຽມ	five
pram muøy	໬	ປຽມມູຍ	six
pram pii/pram pil	໧	ປຽມຕິ່ງ	seven

pram bəy	៨	ប្រាំបី	eight
pram buən	៩	ប្រាំបូន	nine
dap	១០	ដប់	ten

There are two ways of expressing the numbers from 11 to 19.

dap muəy/muəy dandap/ mədəndap	១១	ដប់មួយ	eleven
dap pii/pii dandap	១២	ដប់ពីរ	twelve
dap bəy/bəy dandap	១៣	ដប់បី	thirteen
dap buən/buən dandap	១៤	ដប់បូន	fourteen
dap pram/pram dandap	១៥	ដប់ប្រាំ	fifteen
dap pram muəy/ pramuəy dandap	១៦	ដប់ប្រាំមួយ	sixteen
dap pram pii/ pram pil dandap	១៧	ប្រាំពីរ	seventeen
dap pram bəy/ pram bəy dandap	១៨	ដប់ប្រាំបី	eighteen
dap pram buən/ pram buən dandap	១៩	ដប់ប្រាំបូន	nineteen
mpʰey	២០	ម៉ឺន	twenty

Shortened forms of some words in Cambodian are important for those wishing to understand colloquial speech. muəy is usually reduced to initial /mə ~ m/ sound. The following are some examples: mneak from muəy neak ‘one person,’ mercoy from muəy rcoy ‘one hundred,’ mədəndap from muəy dandap ‘eleven,’ and mkʰaan from muəy kʰaan ‘one side.’



Exercise 1 (Audio 1.19)

Suppose a Cambodian person asks you these yes-no questions. How would you respond?



- 1 look mien baan proh tee?
- 2 mien koon tee?
- 3 mien puu miiŋ tee?
- 4 kmuəy srəy riən tee?
- 5 baan srəy tiv pteah tee?
- 6 paa mak niv səntʰaakie tee?

Exercise 2 (Audio 1.20–1.21)



First, how would you make these regular statements into negative statements by using m̄in . . . tee or ?at . . . tee expressions? Second, how would you use them to make questions?

- 1 koat mien baan̄ sr̄ey.
- 2 k̄nom t̄iv pteah mak paa.
- 3 cav koat mneak tv̄eə kaa n̄iv saalaa.
- 4 puu ban̄riən p̄iesaa cən.
- 5 ?om mien koon pii neak.
- 6 nihs̄et b̄ey neak riən p̄iesaa kmae.



Dialogue 2

Family album (Audio 1.22)

Dara (A) is showing pictures of his family to his friend (B) who comes to visit him at the dormitory. Listen to their conversation.

- A: nih ruup t̄aat kruəsaa k̄nom.
 B: ?aeŋ mien kruəsaa s̄aat nah.
 A: nih mak paa k̄nom.
 B: noh ruup t̄aat neak naa?
 A: noh cie ruup t̄aat baan̄ p̄oon k̄nom.
 A: nih ruup baan̄ sr̄ey k̄nom niŋ pd̄ey koat.
 B: baan̄ sr̄ey ?aeŋ n̄iv kmeen̄ nah.
 A: koat mien koon ?aayu? pii cnam.
 A: noh baan̄ proh k̄nom niŋ pr̄pusən koat.
- A: *This is a photograph of my family.*
 B: *You have a beautiful family.*
 A: *This is my mom and dad.*
 B: *Who is in that picture?*
 A: *That picture is of my brothers and sisters.*
 A: *This picture is of my sister and her husband.*
 B: *Your older sister is very young.*
 A: *She has a two-year-old child.*
 A: *Those are my older brother and his wife.*



Vocabulary

ruup tʰaat	រូបថត	photograph, picture
s?aat	ស្អាត	beautiful, pretty
mak paa	ម៉ាកចុង	mom and dad
nih / noh	នេះ / នៅ៖	this; here / that; there
pday # prapuən	ជីវិត # ប្រពន្ធ	husband / wife
kmeerj	ក្រុង	children, to be young
niv kmeerj	នៅក្រុង	still young



Language points

Possessive and demonstrative nih and noh

As we have seen so far, direct possessive modifiers, like other modifiers in Cambodian, follow the word they modify. This will go with the demonstratives nih នេះ ‘this, here’ and noh នៅ៖ ‘that, there’ as well.

nih kruəsaa knom.

នេះគ្រឿងបានខ្លួន។

This is my family.

noh ruup tʰaat baanj knom.

នៅ៖រូបថតបង្កើន។

This is my family.'

koon noh tiv pteah.

កូននោះទៅផ្ទះ។

That child goes home.



Exercise 3

How would you say these statements in Cambodian? Pay attention to how to use the possessive modifiers.

- 1 Who are those people?
- 2 My aunt's house is beautiful.
- 3 This is a photo of his school.

- 4 Her husband is young.
- 5 Your friend comes to my hospital.
- 6 His wife is an American.

Exercise 4 (Audio 1.23)

Read these statements. Make them into questions to ask someone.



- 1 nih cie ruup t̄aat kñom.
- 2 kruøsaa noh mien koon pii neak.
- 3 ruup t̄aat puk niv pteah taa yiey.
- 4 kruu niø nisøt tiv saalaa tvø kaa.
- 5 ruup t̄aat mdaay koat s?aat nah.
- 6 kmeø nih ?aayu? døp cnam.



Dialogue 3

Family relationships (Audio 1.24)

Rany (A) has not met her close friend, Navy (B), for a long time. They meet at Angkor Internet Café and talk with each other.

- A: suøsdøy Navy. mœøl sør tae min skoal.
 B: suøsdøy Rany. øyløv ?aerj srh nah.
 A: ?aerj mien kruøsaa riø niv?
 B: knie riep kaa baan bøy cnam haøy. coh ?aerj mien soøsaa tee?
 A: pcoap piek haøy. nih ruup t̄aat kuu dandøø kñom.
 B: soøhaa nah, kom plic hav knie sii kaa p̄øanø.
 A: min plic tee. niv bøy khae tiøt.
 B: coh p?oon proh ?aerj, vie kaa haøy riø niv?
 A: vie niv liiv tee.
 B: tuurea?sap vie leek ponmaan?
 A: nih leek tuurea?sap vie 012 53 79.
- A: *Hello, Navy. I almost didn't recognize you.*
 B: *Hello, Rany. You look more beautiful now.*
 A: *Are you married yet?*
 B: *I have been married for three years already. And you, do you have a boyfriend?*

- A: I am engaged. Here is a picture of my fiancé.
- B: Very handsome, don't forget to invite me to your wedding.
- A: I won't, it's in three months.
- B: How about your younger brother; is he married yet?
- A: He is still single.
- B: What is his phone number?
- A: Here is his phone number 012 53 79.



Vocabulary

mœøl	ម៉ីល	to read; to watch
skoal	ស្នាល់	to know; to become acquainted with
mœøl skoal	ម៉ីលស្នាល់	to recognize
sœŋ tae	សីងតែ	almost
?œylœv	ឥឡូវ	now
nah	ណាត់ស់	very, greatly; very much; too much
srah	ប្រសិរី	beautiful
sañhaa	សង្កោ	handsome
riep kaa	ព្រៃការ	getting married
(haøy) riï niv	(ហើយ)ប្រឡេ	yet (already or not yet)
baan	បាន	to get, to obtain
sañsaa	សង្ការា	girlfriend/boyfriend
pcoap piek	ភ្លាប់ពាក្យ	to be engaged
haøy (after a verb)	ហើយ	mark completed action
kuu dandœŋ	គួដុណីង	fiancé
plic	ផ្លូច	to forget
hav knie	ហោក្រាតា	to invite me
sii kaa	សីការា	wedding party
tiët	ទៅតែ	again, more, further
niv liiv	នៅលីវ	to be unmarried, single (for male/female)
tuurea?sap	ទូរសព្ទ	telephone; to make phone call
leek tuurea?sap	លេខទូរសព្ទ	phone number

Language points



Expression haøy rii niv

The expression ໂບໍ່ຢູ່ແນວໜ້າ haøy rii niv ‘already?’ or ‘not yet?’ in colloquial speech can be shortened first as haøy rinv and then as haøy niv ໂບໍ່ຢູ່ແນວໜ້າ ‘yet or not?’ It is always used at the end of a question statement. For example:

koat riøn haøy rinv?

Did he study already?

?aeø mien koon haøy rii niv?

Did you already have children?

vie tiv haøy niv?

Did he leave yet or not?

Expressions ‘beautiful and handsome’

The word srah ສຽງຕົມ ‘fresh’ can also refer to the female’s appearance; sañhaa ສັງຫຼັກ usually refers to a similar aspect in male. The word s?aat ສັນຕິ ‘clean, neat’ can be used as ‘nice-looking’ for males and ‘pretty, beautiful’ for females.

knom mien banlae srah.

I have fresh vegetables.

bo?rah nih sañhaa nah.

This man is very handsome.

prapuøen koat s?aat.

His wife is beautiful.

The word kaa ກ້າວ when combined with a verb or another element has different meanings. Earlier you’ve seen tvøø kaa ຕົ້ວກ້າວ ‘to work,’ riep kaa ຮຶບກ້າວ ‘to marry with a ceremony,’ sii kaa ສີ່ກ້າວ ‘to attend a wedding party.’ Colloquially the expression riep kaa ຮຶບກ້າວ can be shortened or reduced to kaa ກ້າວ.

koat mɔɔk ka knom.

He attended my wedding.

?əvpuk riep kaa koon.

Father married off his children.

neak kruu riep kaa cnam nih.

The teacher will get married this year.



Exercise 5 (Audio 1.25)



Suppose a Cambodian person asks you these questions. How would you respond?

- 1 look mien saŋsaa tee?
- 2 mien kuu dandəŋ tee?
- 3 pdəy koat sənhaa tee?
- 4 saŋsaa ?aen s?aat tee?
- 5 koat niv liiv tee?
- 6 som leek tuurea?sap baan tee?



Exercise 6

Make these regular statements into question statements with the haøy riit niv expression.

- 1 koat tiv tii kroŋ paarii.
- 2 yiey mien cav proh.
- 3 kon srəy mɔɔk pii pœt.
- 4 saŋsaa knom tiv banriən.
- 5 koat tuurea?sap tiv kuu dandəŋ.
- 6 p?oon proh pcoap piek haøy.



Reading and writing Cambodian scripts



Vowels (Bonus audio 3–6)

There are 24 dependent vowel symbols (note that the 0 represents the position of the consonant in relation to the vowel) as listed in [Table 3](#) in dictionary order. Vowel symbols can appear around the main consonant: left, right, above, below. Each vowel is pronounced

Table 3 Vowel symbols and phonetic transcriptions

ឃ	ឃ	ឃ	ឃ	ឃ
aa ie	e i	əy ii	ə i	əi ii
ួ	ួ	ួ	ួ	ួ
o u	oo uu	uə en	aə ee	iə ie
ើ	ើ	ើ	ើ	ើ
ee ee	ae ee	ay ey	ao oo	av iv
ួ	ួ	ួ	ួ	ួ
om um	am um	am oam	ah eah	
ួេ	ួេ	ួេ	ួេ	ួេ
oh uh	əh ih	əh ih	əh ueh	

in two different ways, according to its combination with the consonant. When combined with a first series consonant, it takes the first series value (in bold); and when combined with a second series consonant, it takes the second series value.

Use the audio to review and master your reading and writing skills. You also can use a computer (PC or Mac) to download Cambodian (or Khmer) Unicode fonts and practice typing. Learn how to pronounce them according to the first or second series value.

Exercise 7



Practice reading and writing the transcription of the vowels and their symbols (see Tables 3 and 4).

Exercise 8 (Audio 1.26)



Listen to the audio and practice writing these ten first series vowel symbols in your notebook.

- | | |
|------|-------|
| 1 əy | 6 av |
| 2 oo | 7 oh |
| 3 aə | 8 əi |
| 4 om | 9 am |
| 5 ah | 10 aa |





Exercise 9 (Audio 1.27)

Listen to the audio and practice writing these ten second series vowel symbols in your notebook.



- | | |
|-------|-------|
| 1 uu | 6 uh |
| 2 ii | 7 εε |
| 3 əəh | 8 əə |
| 4 ɨɨ | 9 ih |
| 5 eah | 10 ee |



Exercise 10

Read these vowels aloud as in first series value and in second series value.

- | | |
|--------|-------|
| 1 ឃ | 6 ឃ |
| 2 ឃ | 7 ឃួ |
| 3 ឃើ | 8 ឃួ |
| 4 ឃួ | 9 ឃួា |
| 5 ឃួោះ | 10 ឃួ |



Listening and reading passage

(Audio 1.28; Bonus audio 8)



Listen to the audio information about these people (Sophal, Rany, and Navy) and their families. See how many consonants, vowels, or words you can recognize in these statements. Draw red circles around the consonants, blue around the vowels, and use a slant line / to mark separate words.

ត្រូសារសុដុលមានលោកតាលោកយាយ ឱពុកម្មាយ បងប្រុស
ឬនស្រី ប្រធានគាត់ និងគាត់។ សុដុលជោបានបីឆ្នាំហើយ។

ត្រូសារកីមានបងស្រីគាត់និងកូន និងពួមិងគាត់។ ឱពុកម្មាយ
កនិត្យប៉ែអស់ហើយ។

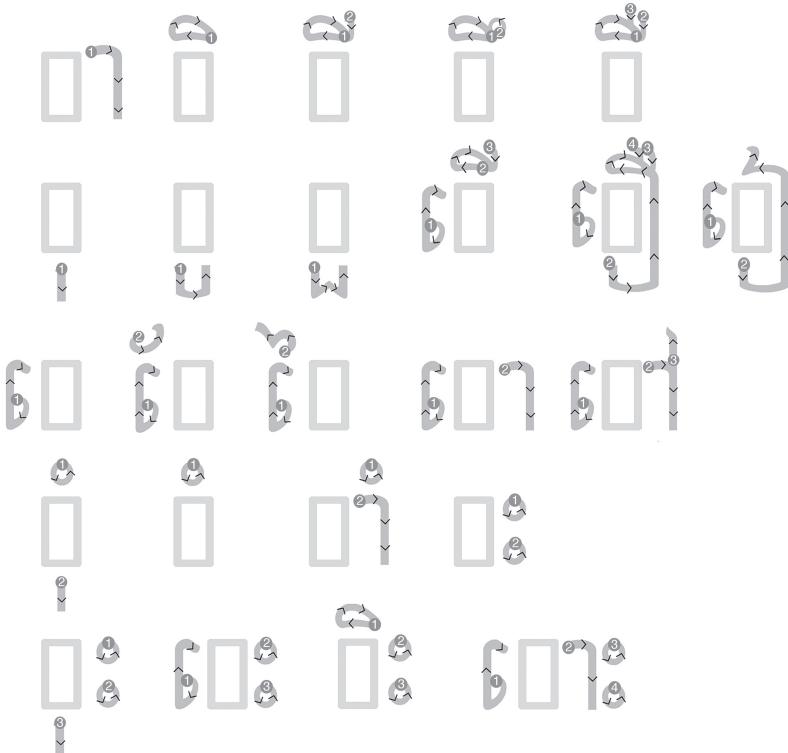
ណាកីមានសង្កែរសង្កាតោណាស់។ គាត់ភ្លាប់ពាក្យបានបីខេហើយ។
គាត់និងហៅត្រូសារសុដុល និងកីមកសុករគាត់។ ឬនប្រុសណាកី
នៅតីវិហ័លេទ។

kruəsaa Sophal mien look taa look yiey, ?əvpuk mdaay, baəŋ proh, p?oon srəy, prapuən koat niŋ koat. Sophal riep kaa baan bəy cnam haəy.

kruəsaa Rany mien baəŋ srəy koat niŋ koon, niŋ puu miŋ. ?əvpuk mdaay Rany slap haəy.

Navy mien saŋsaa saŋhaa nah. koat pcoap piek baan bəy k^hae haəy. koat niŋ hav kruəsaa Sophal niŋ kruəsaa Rany moɔk sii kaa koat. p?oon proh Navy niv liiv haəy niv tiv riən.

Table 4 How to write Cambodian vowel symbols



Start writing the vowel symbols from the dot numbered 1, 2, 3, or 4 and follow the arrow. Notice the position of each vowel in relation to the consonant (as in the box).

Unit Three

peel veelie

ពេលវេលា

Time and date



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell the time
- ask and talk about different days of the week and months of the year
- use the future and past time expressions
- use verb combinations with **can** and **trev**
- count and use numbers from 20 to one million
- read and write all consonants (C) and vowels (V), and their combinations (CV)



Dialogue 1



Asking to go somewhere (**Audio 1.29**)

This morning Vanna (A) is calling his friend Thida (B) and asking her to go to the market with him. Listen to their conversation.

-
- A: ?aaloo Thida. prik nih ?aeŋ caŋ tiv psaa cie muəy knom tee?
- B: ?aaloo Vanna. ?ot tumnee tee. s?æk, knom tumnee.
- A: ?iicəŋ tñay sav ?aeŋ caŋ tiv psaa naa?
- B: psaa tumnæep so?re?yaa niŋ psaa tmey.
- A: knom trev tñ kadoo somrap tiv cup liəŋ niv tñay ?aatit kraoy.
- B: knom caŋ daə mæəl ?øyvan tmey tmey niv psaa so?re?yaa.

- A: ?iicəŋ s?æk yəəŋ cih mootoo kaŋ bəy tiv cie muəy knie.
 B: yuəl prɔɔm. s?æk prik tñay sav cuəp niv maon dap pram dandap nietii.
- A: Hello Thida. Do you want to go to the market with me this morning?
 B: Hello Vanna, I'm not free. Tomorrow I'm free.
 A: Then on Saturday which market do you want to go to?
 B: Soriya Market and Central Market.
 A: I must buy a gift for next Sunday's party.
 B: I want to walk around and check out new merchandise at Soriya Market.
 A: In that case, tomorrow let's take the motorbike with three wheels and go together.
 B: Agreed. We'll meet tomorrow, on Saturday morning, at 10:15 am.

Vocabulary

**A
C
B**

?aaloo	អាគ្រោះ	hello
prik nih	ព្រឹកនេះ	this morning
tumnee	ទំន់នា	to be free; unoccupied, vacant
dae	ដែរ	too
cie muəy	ជាមួយ	with, along with; together
caŋ	ចង់	to want
trøv	ត្រូវ	must, should; right, correct, exact
tij	ទិញ	to buy
kadoo	កាត់	gift or present (French word)
samrap	សម្រាប់ (សំណើប់)	for; used for; used to (do something)
tiv cup liəŋ	ទៅដីជំលោះ	going to a party
tñay	ថ្ងៃ	day
dae	ដោរ	to walk
dae mœəl	ដោរម៉ឺល	window shopping

?əyvan	អីវាន់ (តីវាន់)	merchandise, things, goods; baggage
tmey	ថ្មី	new
cih	ជិះ	to ride
mootoo kan bəy	មូទូកាគុងបី	motorbike with three wheels
yuel prəom	យូល់ប្រាំ	to agree
pram dəndap nietii	ប្រាំដំណើរប់នាទី	fifteen minutes



Language points

The use of ?aaloo អាលូឃី is a general greeting before starting a phone conversation.

Telling time

To express time maon ម៉ោង is used for ‘hour,’ nietii នៅទី for ‘minute,’ and vi?nietii វិនាទី for ‘second.’ When talking about very specific clock times, the word maon is placed immediately in front of the number (maon pii ម៉ោងពីឯ ‘two o’clock’). The word haøy ហើយ ‘already’ is often used at the end of the number. When telling a specific length of time, maon immediately follows the number (pii maon ពីឯម៉ោង ‘two hours’). The nietii, ‘minute,’ and vi?nietii, ‘second,’ immediately follow the numeral. Thirty minutes, sam səp nietii, can also be stated as konlah maon កែនលេខ៌ម៉ោង ‘half hour.’ Also minutes to the hour are expressed with the pattern: maon + number (of hour) + kvah + minutes (maon pii kvah dəp nietii ម៉ោងពីឯទូទេៗដែលបែន្តៅទី ‘ten to two’). To express the ‘exact’ hour, the word kxət គត់ is added after the number. For example:

maon ponmaan haøy?

ម៉ោងបុញ្ញនានហើយ?

What time is it?

maon pram haøy.

ម៉ោង៥:០០ហើយ។

It is 5 o’clock already.

maoŋ pram bəy prik kət.
ម៉ោង ៨:០០ ព្រឹក គត់។

It is exactly 8:00 am.

maoŋ buən kənlah Iniec.
ម៉ោង ៤:៣០ ល្ងាច។

It is 4:30 pm.

maoŋ pram kvah pram nietii Iniec.
ម៉ោង ៥៥:៩៣ ល្ងាច។

It is 5:55 pm.

Period of the day

These are words used to express specific parts of the day: prik ព្រឹក ‘morning,’ tñay traŋ ថ្ងៃគ្រោះ ‘noon,’ rɔsiəl វេស៊ូល ‘early afternoon,’ Iniec ល្ងាច ‘late afternoon,’ and yup យប់ ‘night.’ To be more precise about a moment, នៅ is added: peel prik នៅព្រឹក ‘in the morning,’ peel tñay traŋ នៅថ្ងៃគ្រោះ ‘at noon,’ peel rɔsiəl នៅវេស៊ូល ‘in the early afternoon,’ peel Iniec នៅល្ងាច ‘in the late afternoon,’ peel yup នៅយប់ ‘at night,’ and peel ?a?triet នៅអ្នក្រាំង ‘midnight.’ For example:

prik nih, kñom tvəə kaa.
ព្រឹកនេះខ្សោយឱ្យការ។

This morning, I work.

peel Iniec, koat ?at riən.
នៅល្ងាចគាត់អាត់រៀន។

In the afternoon, he's not studying.

yup nih, yəəə tiv sii kaa.
យប់នេះយើងទៅសិការ។

Tonight, we are going to a wedding.

Days of the week (Audio 1.30)

Table 5 shows the seven days of the week in Cambodian. Each day is preceded by tñay, which is often optional.



Table 5 The seven days of the week

tŋay can	ថ្ងៃចន្ទី	Monday	tŋay sok	ថ្ងៃសុក្រ	Friday
tŋay ʔaŋkie	ថ្ងៃអង្កេរ	Tuesday	tŋay sav	ថ្ងៃសៅវា	Saturday
tŋay put	ថ្ងៃពុធ	Wednesday	tŋay ʔaatit	ថ្ងៃអាតិត្យ	Sunday
tŋay pr̥oħoah	ថ្ងៃព្រហ័លស្អែក	Thursday			

?aatit អាតិត្យ also means ‘week,’ muəy ?aatit មួយអាតិត្យ ‘one week,’ muəy ?aatit mdən មួយអាតិត្យមន់ ‘weekly,’ ?aatit nih អាតិត្យនេះ ‘this week,’ or preah ?aatit ព្រះអាតិត្យ ‘the sun.’ For example:

tŋay nih, tŋay ?əy?

What day is today?

tŋay can, koat mook riən.

Monday, he comes to school.

tŋay ?aatit, koat riəp kaa.

Sunday, she gets married.

tŋay pr̥oħoah, mak tiv pəet.

Thursday, mom goes to the hospital.

knoj mə?aatit mien ponmaan tŋay?

In a week how many days are there?

Verb combinations with **can** and **tr̥ev**

The verb **can** ចង់ primarily indicates the speaker’s wish, desire, or intention, while **tr̥ev** ត្រូវ implies varying degrees of obligation. When immediately followed by another verb, the combination expresses an increase in intensity, emphasis, or obligation. For example:

knom niv pteah. knom can niv pteah. knom tr̥ev niv pteah.
I stay home. I want to stay home. I must stay home.



Exercise 1 (Audio 1.31)

Suppose someone asks you what time it is, how would you say in Cambodian:

- 1 It is 12:00 noon.
- 2 It is 9:30 pm.
- 3 It is exactly 6:00 pm.
- 4 It is 9:45 am.
- 5 Let's meet each other in 30 minutes.
- 6 It is 11:15 am and 45 seconds.

Exercise 2



Complete these statements by selecting appropriate words from the next column.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 s?æk tñay ?aatit, kñom _____. | a tñay sav |
| 2 koat tñ kñao ?aav niv _____. | b pii moaq tiøt |
| 3 ?aeñ tñv cup liøñ _____ nih. | c psaa |
| 4 niv psaa, koat daø mæøl _____. | d kvah dap pram |
| 5 cuøp knie _____. | e ?øyvan |
| 6 maøq dap _____ nietii. | f tumnee |

Exercise 3



Read these statements and then turn them into questions.

- 1 knoø mæøaatit mien pram piiø tñay.
- 2 tñay can nih koat tñv saalaa.
- 3 tñay ?ønkie prik mak kñom tumnee.
- 4 tñay ?aatit koat cih tuktuk.
- 5 tñay put koat cuøp kruøsaa.
- 6 peel tñay traø ?aeñ niv kaari?yaalay.

Dialogue 2



Making plans (**Audio 1.32**)



Rany (A) and her friend Navy (B) make plans to go to Siem Reap Province.

-
- A: kñae kraoy, Navy caø tñv siøm riep tee?
 - B: caø! kñae meesaa kñom tumnee mæøaatit.
 - B: Rany caø tñv tñay naa?

- B: កេរិ ដាម្នារ់ និវ ពីរ ពី ដាប កែវ មើសា បាន ទី?
- A: ពិវ យារ៉ា មេះ?
- B: កណុម បាទ លាន ពិវ.
- A: ស្វាក និវ ?អើ នាត?
- B: និវ សុនាំអី បោយ យុប.
- A: ?អើ សាច ពវេះ ?អី ក្លាហ និវ សិំរីេប?
- B: សាច ពិវ សារាំមុេន្តី, និវ មេះ ព្រាសាត.
- A: !ខ្លួន! កាម ស?អី យេះ និវ ចូចែក ក្រីន ពីត.
- B: ស?អី មាន ព្រាម ឥឡី, មួក ព្រោះ កណុម.
- A: Navy, are you going to Siem Reap next month?
- B: Yes, I am. In April, I am free for one week.
- B: Rany, which day do you want to go?
- B: We are leaving on April the 10th, if that works?
- A: How will we get there?
- B: I am driving.
- A: Where are we staying?
- B: We will stay at a hotel for three nights.
- A: What would you like to do in Siem Reap?
- B: I want to go to museums and visit temples.
- A: Good! Just wait until tomorrow and we will discuss it more.
- B: Tomorrow at 5:00 pm, come to my house.



Vocabulary

k ^h ae meesaa nīr	ខែមេសា បីៗង	this month of April
k ^h aan s?aeik	ខាន ស្អែក	day after tomorrow
cən dəmnaə	ចេញជីណើរ	to depart for a trip
baək laan	បើកឡាន	to drive the car
tñay tii dap k ^h ae meesaa	ថ្ងៃទី១០ ខែមេសា	the 10th of April
snaak	ស្វាក	to stay, to dwell
sont ^h aakie	សណ្ឌាការ	hotel
saara?məuentii	សារមន្ត្រីរ	museum
praasaat	ប្រាសាគ	temples
cam	ចាំ	to wait (until)
cocceek	ជិដិក	to discuss

Language points



Future and past time expressions

Verbs in Cambodian don't change their form to indicate past or future tenses, which are indicated by temporal words or expressions such as s?aeik សៅក 'tomorrow,' k^haan s?aeik ខាន សៅក 'day after tomorrow,' and msel mij មិលមិញ 'yesterday.' To indicate a more specific period of time, expressions such as s?aeik lñiec សៅកល្លោច 'tomorrow afternoon,' or s?aeik yup សៅកយប់ 'tomorrow night,' are used. Another way to convey past or future tenses is to add mun មុន or kraoy ក្រោយ to the temporal marker. The following are some of these expressions: tñay mun ថ្ងៃមុន 'in the past or the other day,' k^hae mun ខែមុន 'last month,' and cnam mun ឆ្នាំមុន 'last year,' tñay kraoy ថ្ងៃក្រោយ 'next time or in days ahead,' ?aatit kraoy អាតិត្យក្រោយ 'next week,' and ឆ្នាំក្រោយ cnam kraoy 'next year.' The word niñ នីង can also be used as a future tense marker when placed in front of a verb (for example, yøøñ niñ cœeek knie 'we will chat together'). Most often niñ is omitted when the context is clear.

The expression haøy ហេីយ, baan haøy បានហេីយ, or ruæc haøy រួចហេីយ indicates the action is finished and completed.

tñay niñ, yøøñ tiv psaa.

Today we go to the market.

k^hae kraoy, yøøñ tiv pteah mak.

Next month we will go to mother's house.

msel mij, kee tvøø kaa haøy.

Yesterday they worked.

k^hae mun, yøøñ tiv kaari?yaalay.

Last month she went to the office.

s?aeik yup, yøøñ tij k^hao ?aav.

Tomorrow night we will buy clothes.

?aatit kraoy, kñom (niñ) tij laan.

Next week, I will buy a car.

cnam kraoy, koat mœök srok kmae.

Next year, s/he will come to Cambodia.

baay haøy, kee riøn tiøt.

After eating, they study again.

riøn ruøc haøy, kee coceøk knie.

After studying, they are chatting.



Months (Audio 1.33)

The official names of the 12 months are listed in the table below. However, the simplest way of saying the months at this beginner level is to use the word k^hae + tii + number, as in k^hae tii muøy ខែទី១ ‘first month,’ k^hae tii bøy ខែទី៣ ‘third month,’ k^hae tii buen ខែទី៤ ‘fourth month,’ k^hae tii pram muøy ខែទី៦ ‘sixth month,’ k^hae tii dap ខែទី៩០ ‘tenth month,’ or k^hae tii dap pii ខែទី១២ ‘twelfth month.’

Table 6 Names of the 12 months

mea?ka?raa	ម៉ោករា	January	kakka?daa	កក្រដា	July
komp ^h eak	កុំហេក	February	søyhaa	សិយា	August
minaah	មិនា	March	kajnaa	កាញា	September
meesaa	មិសា	April	to?laa	តូលា	October
?u?sa?p ^h ie	ឃសិរី	May	vicc ^h e?kaa	វិគិថី	November
mi?t ^h o?naa	មិថុនា	June	tnuu	ពួ	December



Numbers លំប់ (Audio 1.34)

In the last unit you learned the numbers from one to 20. The following table is a list from number 20 to one million. Notice that from saamsøp សាមសិប ‘thirty,’ to kavøøp កាវសិប ‘ninety,’ the ending /-øøp/ is dropped from the colloquial speech. The number 100, muøy rooy, is shortened to merooy; and muøy poan to mepoan, and so on.

mp ^h ey	២០	ពីរ	twenty
saamsəp	៣០	សុមាមិប	thirty
sae(səp)	៤០	សែប(សិប)	forty
haa(səp)	៥០	ហាត(សិប)	fifty
hok(səp)	៦០	ហុក(សិប)	sixty
cət(səp)	៧០	ចិត(សិប)	seventy
paet(səp)	៨០	បែត(សិប)	eighty
kav(səp)	៩០	កោ(សិប)	ninety
muəy rɔoy/mərɔoy	៩០០	មួយរូយ	one hundred
muəy poan/məpoan	៩.០០០	មួយពាន់	one thousand
muəy məən/məməən	៩០.០០០	មួយម៉ោន	ten thousand
muəy saen/məsaen	៩០០.០០០	មួយសេន	one hundred thousand
muəy lien/məlien	៩០០០.០០០	មួយលាន	one million

Exercise 4

Match the numbers with the Cambodian figures below.



- | | |
|--------------------------|--------|
| 1 hoksəp pram bəy | a ៣៤ |
| 2 pii rɔoy dap | b ៣០៤ |
| 3 paet səp | c ៤០០ |
| 4 mp ^h ey bəy | d ៦៤ |
| 5 məpoan buən rɔoy | e ៤១០ |
| 6 bəy rɔoy pii | f ៨០ |
| 7 cət səp pram | g ៤៣ |
| 8 buən poan | i ១៤០០ |

Exercise 5 (Audio 1.35)

How would you answer these questions in Cambodian?



- ត្រូវ nih ត្រូវ ?រួនី, s?aeik ត្រូវ ?ឱយ?
- k^hae tii dap pii, kii cie k^hae ?ឱយ?
- k^hae tii pram, kii cie k^hae ?ឱយ?
- ត្រូវ nih ត្រូវ sok, msəl mijn ត្រូវ ?ឱយ?
- cnam nih cnam 2014, cnam kraoy cnam ?ឱយ?





Reading and writing Cambodian scripts

Listen to, read, and write the first series consonants and their combination with all vowels.

1	ក	kaa	+	អ	aa	កា	caa
2	ខ	k ^h aa	+	ឃ	e	ខោ	k ^h e
3	ច	caa	+	ឃ	ey	ចោ	c ^h ey
4	ឆ	c ^h aa	+	ឃ	ə	ឆោ	c ^h ə
5	ដ	daa	+	ឃ	əi	ដោ	dəi
6	ប	t ^h aa	+	ឃ	o	បោ	t ^h o
7	ព	taa	+	ឃ	oo	ពោ	too
8	ម	t ^h aa	+	ឃ	uə	មោ	t ^h uə
9	ប	baa	+	ឃ	aə	បោះ	baə
10	ផ	p ^h aa	+	ឃ	iə	ផោះ	p ^h iə
11	ស	saa	+	ឃ	iə	សោះ	siə
12	ហ	haa	+	ឃ	ee	ហោ	hee
13	ឡ	laa	+	ឃ	ae	ឡោ	lae
14	អ	?aa	+	ឃ	ay	អោ	?ay
15	ក	kaa	+	ឃ	ao	កោ	k ^h ao
16	ខ	k ^h aa	+	ឃ	av	ខោ	k ^h av
17	ច	caa	+	ឃ	om	ចោំ	com
18	ឆ	c ^h aa	+	ឃ	əm	ឆោំ	c ^h am
19	ដ	daa	+	ឃ	əm	ដោំ	dam
20	ព	taa	+	ឃ	ah	ពោំ	tah
21	ម	t ^h aa	+	ឃ	oh	មោំ	t ^h oh
22	ប	baa	+	ឃ	eh	បោំ	beh
23	ផ	p ^h aa	+	ឃ	əh	ផោំ	p ^h eh

Listen to, read, and write the second series consonants and their combination with all vowels.

1	គ	koo	+	ឃ	ie	គី	kie
2	យ	k ^h oo	+	ឃ	i	យិ	k ^h i
3	ង	ŋoo	+	ឃ	ii	យី	ŋii
4	ជ	coo	+	ឃ	ɛ	យើ	cɛ
5	ធម្ម	c ^h oo	+	ឃ	ɛ	ធម្មី	c ^h ɛ
6	ុ	cuu	+	ឃ	u	ុី	nu
7	ទ	tuu	+	ឃ	uu	ទូី	tuu
8	ធ	t ^h oo	+	ឃ	əə	ុំ	t ^h uə
9	ន	noo	+	ឃ	əə	ុំ	nəə
10	ម	moo	+	ឃ	ə	ុំ	niə
11	ល	cuu	+	ឃ	ə	ុំ	niə
12	ព	coo	+	ឃ	ee	ុំ	pee
13	ម	coo	+	ឃ	ɛɛ	ុំ	meɛ
14	ក	p ^h oo	+	ឃ	ey	ុំ	p ^h ey
15	យ	cey	+	ឃ	oo	ុំ	yoo
16	ន	coo	+	ឃ	iv	ុំ	niv
17	ល	ci	+	ឃ	um	ុំ	lum
18	យ	coy	+	ឃ	um	ុំ	yum
19	គ	koo	+	ឃ	oam	ុំ	koam
20	ធម្ម	coo	+	ឃ	eah	ុំ	reah
21	ព	coo	+	ឃ	uh	ុំ	puh
22	ន	coo	+	ឃ	ih	ុំ	nih
23	ជ	coo	+	ឃ	ih	ុំ	cih
24	ទ	tuu	+	ឃ	əə	ុំ	tuəh



Exercise 6 (Audio 1.36)



Use the audio to help you practice listening and writing these ten words (combination of first series consonant and vowel, CV). Write them in your notebook.

- | | |
|-------|---------------------|
| 1 cav | 6 som |
| 2 bəy | 7 dam |
| 3 kah | 8 p ^h ae |
| 4 naa | 9 hav |
| 5 loo | 10 taə |



Exercise 7 (Audio 1.37)

Use the audio to help you practice listening and writing these ten words (combination of second series consonant and vowel). Write them in your notebook.

- | | |
|--------|---------------------|
| 1 lie | 6 yum |
| 2 pii | 7 t ^h um |
| 3 puəh | 8 p ^h ee |
| 4 nie | 9 tiv |
| 5 luu | 10 tee |



Exercise 8

Read these words and write them in Cambodian script.

- 1 kadoo
- 2 c^hii puəh
- 3 nietii
- 4 pii nih
- 5 tiv nuh



Exercise 9

Read these words in Cambodian script.

- | | |
|-------|--------|
| 1 បី | 6 ជា |
| 2 តា | 7 គិច |
| 3 នៅ | 8 ពុំ |
| 4 មេះ | 9 បាត់ |
| 5 ពួ | 10 ដែ |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 1.38; Bonus audio 9)

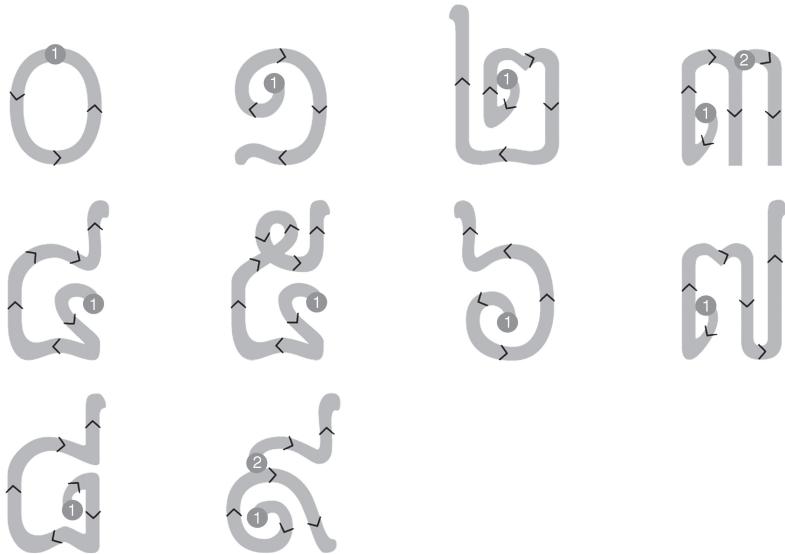


Play the audio. Listen to the information about these people who are going shopping at the Central Market and the Soriya Mall. Identify and circle the consonants, vowels, or their combinations that you can read.

ស្ថិកត្រូវអាមេរិក នៅម៉ោងប្រាំបីពេលខ្លួន ខ្លួចជាគោនដៃនៅ
ផ្ទាល់ពី ហេយនិងខោការនៅផ្សារទៅឱបសិរិយា នៅម៉ោងដំបូង ព្រាយពី
ខ្លួចបានដើរ ខ្លួចដើរ នៅផ្សារទៅឱបសិរិយា ពីផ្សារពី ដើរទៅប្រែបាល
៩០នាទី។ ទិញខោការរួចហើយ នៅម៉ោង១២ថ្ងៃគ្រាប់ ខ្លួចមកដួរវិញ។

s?aeik tñay ?aatit. niv maøj pram buøen prik kñom tumnee. kñom cañ tñj kadoo niv psaa tmøy haøy niø kñao ?aav niv psaa tumnæøp soriya. niv maøj dap kanlah, kraoy pii tñj kadoo haøy, kñom daø tñv psaa tumnæøp soriya. pii psaa tmøy daø tñv prahael dap nietii. tñj kñao ?aav ruæc haøy, niv maøj dap pii tñay traø, kñom kaa moøk pteah vijn.

Table 7 How to write Cambodian numbers



Learn to write these numbers from 0 to 9. Start from the dot numbered 1 (or 2) and follow the arrow.

Unit Four

kaa nat cuəp nīŋ kəc pracam tñay

ការណែត់ដ្ឋបនិងកិច្ចប្រចាំថ្ងៃ

Appointments and daily routines



In this unit you will learn how to:

- make appointments with specific people, organizations, or institutions in the public and private sector
- address government officials by their various titles and positions
- use the words **kampunj**, **coap rɔvuel**, and **nat**
- use specific timeframe terms **coŋ**, **daem**, **peak kandaal**
- ask and answer questions using **tumnee**, **cam**, **taam cət**, **bon kamnaət**
- use expressions related to daily routine
- read and write combinations of consonant, vowel, and consonant (CVC)



Dialogue 1



Making a dentist's appointment (**Audio 1.39**)

This morning, Navy (A) wakes up with a terrible toothache. She calls the dental clinic and talks to the receptionist (B) to make an appointment. Listen to their conversation.

- A: ណាលូ ត្រួត ពីរ សុខ សាន្ត មែនទេ?
- B: គុម្ភរៀប សុខ. លើក សរោះ ចាយ គ្រូរុ ត្រួត នាម មុខ?
- A: ត្រួត មុខ នាម កុង បាន. ក្រុម កាំបុរិយ៍ ចិន ពីរ សុខ នាម នាម.
- A: ប្រហែល ការិន មុខ ពីរ ក្រុម នាម គ្រូរុ ត្រួត បាន ទី?
- B: សូម ធូន, គ្រូរុ ត្រួត កាំបុរិយ៍ គាប់រវិះ.
- A: ក្រុម ត្រូវ មិន បាន ទី.
- B: បាន, សូម អាច ដល់ ក្រុម មុខ បែង រឹង ទៅ រួសិះ.
- A: ?ដឹង កុង, គ្រូរុ ពីរ មុខ ពីរ.
- B: ឬ, គុម្ភរៀប ឲ្យ.

- A: អាស្សី ពេឡូ ផ្ទៃ សុខ សាន្ត មែនទេ?
- B: ជំរុញ សុខ ទៅ លោក ស្រី ចំណុច ដូច បគ្គ ពេឡូ ឈាម យ៉ា?
- A: ពេឡូ ឈាម ឈាម កំណើន បាន ទៅ ខ្លួន កំណើន ឈាម ឈាម ឈាម ឈាម ឈាម?
- A: ប្រហែល ការិន មែន ម៉ោង ឡើត ខ្លួន ឈាម កំណើន បគ្គ ពេឡូ បាន ទេ?
- B: សូម ទោស លោក គគ្គ ពេឡូ កំណើន បាន ទេ.
- A: ខ្លួន កំណើន បាន ទេ.
- B: បាន សូម មក ដល់ តី និ ច មុន ម៉ោង បី រ សេរី ល។
- A: អរគុណ ដូច តី និ ច ម៉ោង ឡើត ។
- B: ថា ជំរុញ លាត។

Translation of Dialogue 1

- A: Hello, is this Soksan Dental Clinic?
- B: Hello, which dentist do you want to see?
- A: Any dentist, I am having a bad toothache.
- A: In half an hour, can I have an appointment to see the dentist?
- B: The dentists are all busy today.
- A: No, I can't endure any more.
- B: OK, please come before 3 pm.
- A: Thanks. See you in two hours.
- B: Goodbye.



Vocabulary

peet tmij	ពេទ្យធ្លេញ	dental clinic
kruu peet tmij	គ្រូពេទ្យធ្លេញ	dentist
naa muəy	ណាមួយ	which one
kompunj	កំពុង	to be in the process of doing something
cʰii tmij	ឃើញធ្លេញ	to have toothache
klan	ខ្សំង	strongly
prahael	ប្រហែល	about, approximately
nat	ណាត់	set an appointment
coap ṫvusəl or ៥vusəl	ជាប់រំល់	to be preoccupied; to be busy; tied-up
kliinic	ស្តីនិច	clinic
troam	ត្រាំ	to endure
bantəc	បន្ទីច	a little, small, somewhat; to be few



Language points

In general the word **peet** ពេទ្យ in Cambodian refers to hospital, doctor, nurse, or most of the people providing medical treatment or service. To refer to a specific position, words are added to **peet**, such as: **kruu peet tmij** គ្រូពេទ្យធ្លេញ ‘dentist,’ **kruu peet pneek** គ្រូពេទ្យភ្លើក ‘eye doctor,’ **kruu peet sat** គ្រូពេទ្យស៊ិត្ត ‘veterinarian.’ The word **muəntii** មួនីរ is added to **peet** ពេទ្យ to specifically refer to a hospital, or health facility. **kliinic** ស្តីនិច ‘clinic’ is a loanword from French and English referring to private, specialized health facilities that are smaller than hospitals.

The use of words **kampunj** កំពុង and **coap** ជាប់

kampunj កំពុង is always used in front of any main verb to denote continuation of an action and happening at that moment. It is equivalent to the ‘ing’ form in English. While **coap** ជាប់ has a primary meaning

as ‘to link together, to be attached’, it can also be used with a noun or an action verb. When placed in front of a main action verb, it implies connection or continuation of that main verb, and has a similar function to kampunj កំពុង.

Exercise 1 (Audio 1.40)

Here are the answers to this week’s schedule. What were the questions?



- 1 tñay can tiv pëet tmijñ.
- 2 tñay ?anjkie cuëp mak paa.
- 3 tñay put mien nat pii moaj.
- 4 tñay prahoaah coap røvuø.
- 5 tñay sok riøn ?anjkleeah.
- 6 tñay sav trøv tijn kadoo.



Exercise 2



Read these statements, and then use them with the expression kampunj?

- 1 mak ni?yiey cie muøy knom.
- 2 koat nam baay niv haanj.
- 3 puu ch'ii tmijñ klanj nah.
- 4 kruu coap bañriøn nihsøt.
- 5 kruu pëet røvuø nah niv kliinic.
- 6 kee nat knie moøk kaari?yaalay.

Dialogue 2



Invitation to a party (Audio 1.41)



Vanna (A) is calling Sophal (B) and inviting him to his daughter’s birthday party. Listen to their conversation.

-
- A: suësdøy, coj saapdaa nih, moøk baay pteah knom baan tee?
- B: som mæøl taaraaq peel veelie søn.
- B: krav pii kækcaa prøcam tñay knom mien nat craøn, røvuøl bantœc, tae min ?øy tee.

- A: kñom hav moɔk cup lieŋ bon kamnaet koon srøy kñom.
 B: ?iicøŋ, tñay naa kʰuəp kamnaet koon srøy?
 A: tñay sav tii døp pram cap pii moaŋ pram kanlah røhoot dal
 moaŋ døp yup.
 B: kñom noam mit srøy mneak moɔk cie muøy pʰaaŋ baan tee?
 A: taam cøt, ?aoy tae moɔk, kñom sapbaay cøt nah.
 B: ?ookʰee, cuəp knie peel lñiec tñay sav.
- A: សូស្តី ចុងសត្តាប័នេះ មកបាយដ្ឋានខ្លះ?
 B: សូមើលាការដែលអេសិន។
 B: ក្រោតីកិច្ចការប្រចាំថ្ងៃខ្លួនណាត់ត្រីនរំលែបនិច
 តែមិនអើទេ។
 A: ខ្លួយបាយកដល់លោះបុណ្យកំណើតក្នុងស្រីខ្លួយ។
 B: អូចិះន ថ្ងៃណាមួយកំណើតក្នុងស្រី?
 A: ថ្ងៃសែវ៖ ទី១៥ ចាប់ពីម៉ោង៥កន្លែង: ល្ងាច
 រហូតដល់ម៉ោង១០យប់។
 B: ខ្លួយមិត្តស្រីម្នាក់មកជាមួយដងជានេះ?
 A: តាមចិត្ត ឱ្យតែមក ខ្លួយបាយចិត្តណាស់។
 B: អូខេ ដូចត្រូវពេលល្ងាចថ្ងៃសែវ។

Translation of Dialogue 2

- A: Hello, this weekend, can you come for dinner?
 B: I have an appointment, I'm a bit busy, but it'll be all right.
 A: I am hosting a party to celebrate my daughter's birthday.
 B: What day is her birthday?
 A: Saturday the 15th; starting from 5:30 pm until 10:00 pm.
 B: Can I bring a girlfriend along?
 A: As you wish, I am happy as long as you come.
 B: OK, see you on Saturday afternoon.

Vocabulary

A
B

coŋ saapdaa	ចូងស្អាតាំប៉ា	weekend
sən	សិន	now, first
taaraan̄	តារាង	list, chart
taaraan̄ peel veelie	តារាងពេលវេលា	schedule
krav pii	ក្រោតី	beside, in addition
kækkaa	កិច្ចការ	work, homework
kœc(kaa) pracam tñay	កិច្ច(ការ)ប្រចាំថ្ងៃ	daily routine
craən	ត្រីន	much, many
cup lieŋ	ជំឡើង	to have a party, banquet
bon kamnaet	ឬណក្រោះណ៍ត	birthday celebration
kʰuəp kamnaet	ឱ្យកំណ៍ត	birthday
cap pii	ចាប់ពី	starting from
r̄hooth dal	រហូតដល	until
mit sr̄ey	មិត្តស្រី	girlfriend
nih haəy	ហើងហើយ	that's right, certainly, of course
taam cət	តាមចិត្ត	according to one's desire or wishes
?aoy tae	ឱ្យតែ	as long as
sapbaay cət	សប្បាយចិត្ត	happy; to be content; to enjoy

Language points



The words saapdaa ស្អាតាំប៉ា and ?aatit អាតិត្យ are interchangeable. The words daəm ដោម, peak kondaal ពាក់កណ្តាល, and coŋ ចូង, respectively ‘beginning, middle, and end,’ are always placed in front of the words for week, month, and year. For example:

koat mook leŋ niv daəm kʰae nih.

She comes to visit at the beginning of the month.

coŋ cnam noh paa tiv srok kmae.

The end of that year, father went to Cambodia.

peak kondaal ?aatit nih vie rovuel.

At the middle of this week, she's busy.

The word rovuel វេល់ means 'to be tied-up or engaged with work' while ?at tumnee អតិថិជន៍ implies 'not available; not free.'

In this unit the word nat ណាំត 'to set (schedule)' is used as a verb and as a noun with mien nat មាន ណាំត 'to have appointment.'

knom nat cuəp koat niv moan pram.

I make an appointment to meet her at 5:00.

yəəŋ nat knie tiv psaa.

We set a schedule to go to the market.

koat mien nat hat kəylaa.

He has an appointment to exercise.

nisət mien nat cie muəy kruu.

The student has an appointment with the teacher.

The word baay បាយ 'cooked rice,' proceeded by a verb means 'to have meal,' such as:

?aeŋ niv baay pteah kruu.

You have a meal at your teacher's house.

yəəŋ ñam baay cie muəy knie.

We eat (a meal) together.

koat tiv baay krav.

He eats out.

The terms tṇay kamnaət ត្រូវកំណែត and k^huəp kamnaət ខ្សោចកំណែត are interchangeable. bon kamnaət បុណ្យកំណែត 'birthday anniversary' is increasingly being celebrated by Cambodians, especially the wealthy ones.

The word mit មិត្ត 'friend, pal' is used interchangeably with puək maak ពួកមាក; when followed by srəy or proh 'female' or 'male,' the meaning implies 'girlfriend' or 'boyfriend' respectively.

Exercise 3



Read these statements and then make them into questions to ask someone.

- 1 koat hav mit srøy tiv cup lieñ.
- 2 kñom tiv min baan prøeh ?ot tumnee.
- 3 look mien nat cie muøy nieyuøk saalaa.
- 4 tñay nih cie bon kamnaæt mit proh koat.
- 5 koat nam baay taam cøt koat.
- 6 tñay sav mak røvuøl niv saalaa.

Exercise 4



This is your daily routine of activities. How would you say it in Cambodian, using this pattern: cap pii moañ pram bøy røhoot dal moañ pram buø prik, kñom tvøø kaa?

- 1 From 8:00 to 9:00 am, I work.
- 2 From 9:00 to 12:00 noon, I study.
- 3 From 12 noon to 1:00 pm, I eat out.
- 4 From 2:00 to 4:00 pm, I teach.
- 5 From 5:00 to 6:00 pm, I exercise.
- 6 From 8:00 to 10:00 pm, I go to a party.

Dialogue 3



Making an appointment with a government official
(Audio 1.42)



This is a conversation between a foreign businessman, John Smith (A), the secretary of a local government official (B) and a government official (C).

-
- A: cumriep suø. kñom cmuøh John Smith, ñamnaaj krom hun katdee sa.ha. som cuøp look prat'ien nieyuøk?tñaan poadømien.
 - B: cumriep suø look. caa cam møpleet søn, kñom niñ bantoo ksae tiv look ?aek?otdam cuun.
 - C: suøsdøy, look tuurea?sap moøk mien kaa ?øy dae?
 - A: baat, kñom caø baøk rooñcak katdee. taø trøv bampij sambot snaam ?øy klah?

- C: ?oo, soom nat peel cie muəy lëekaa kñom haøy mook cuəp
kñom niv kaari?yalay.
- B: tñay can ?aatit kraoy, moaj dap prik, look tumnee tee?
- A: baat kñom ?aac mook baan. ?aa kun.
- B: cumriep lie look. cuəp knie lëek kraoy.
- A: ជំរើលស្តី ខ្ញុំណែនាំ: John Smith តំណាងក្រុមហ៊ុនភាគចំដោះ
ស.ប.។ ស្តីពីលោកប្រធាននាយកដ្ឋានពីតមាន។
- B: ជំរើលស្តីរលាក់ ថាចាំម្លាយត្រួតសិន
ខ្លួនឯងបន្ទាប់ខ្លួនទៅលោកជកខត្តម្លាស ។
- C: ស្តីស្តី លោកទូទៅសំពុមានភារអីដើរ?
- A: បាន ខ្ញុំចង់បើកពេងចំក្រកាត់ដោយ តើត្រូវបំពេញសំបុត្រ
ស្ថាមអ្វីខ្លះ?
- C: អ្នែ សូមណាត់ពេលជាម្លាយលេខាដី ហើយមកដ្ឋាប
ខ្លួនការិយាល័យ។
- B: ថ្មីថ្ងៃអាទិត្យក្រោយ ម៉ោងដប់ព្រឹក លោកទាំនេរទេ?
- A: បាន ខ្ញុំអាចមកបាន។ អរគុណ ។
- B: ជំរើលសាលាក់។ ដូចត្រូវបាន។

Translation of Dialogue 3

- A: Hello, my name is John Smith, I am a representative of S.H. garment factory. I'd like to meet the head of the information department.
- B: Hello, sir. Just a moment please. I will connect you to his excellency.
- C: Hello, what can I do for you?
- A: I would like to set up a garment factory. What are the documents that I need to provide?
- C: Please make an appointment with my secretary to meet me at the office.
- B: Monday next week at 10:00 am, are you available?
- A: Yes, I can make it. Thanks.
- B: Goodbye, sir. See you next time.

Vocabulary

A
B

domnaaj	តំណាង	representative
krom hun	ក្រុមហ៊ុន	company
katdee	កាត់ដេរ	to make clothing
look prat ^h ien	ប្រធាន	director
nieybaek?taan	នាយកដ្ឋាន	office of a ministry
poadəmien	ព័តមាន	information
məpleet	មួយវត្ថុតិ	for a moment
bantoo ksae	បន្ទូលឱ្យ	to connect the line
look ?aek?otdam	លោកអ្នកខ័ត្តម	his excellency
cuun	ផ្តល	to give, to present to; for, to
baek	បើក	open
roonjacak katdee	លោងចំក្រកាត់ដេរ	garment factory
bampij	បំពេញ	complete
sambot snaam	សំបុត្រស្មាម	document
nat peel	ណាក់ពេល	to fix (a time/date for appointment)
leekaa	លោខា	secretary
kaari?yalay	ការិយាល័យ	office
?aac moek baan	អាចមកបាន	able to come

Language points



The following terms are some government official titles: samdac សំម្រច 'his highness, his majesty' is the highest honorific title used for royal and non-royals usually in recognition of their great service to the nation. look ?aek?otdam លោកអ្នកខ័ត្តម 'his excellency' is a title reserved for high-ranking government officials, usually from the rank of minister upward, whose female counterpart is look cumtiev លោកដ្ឋាន.

The following are government officials at ministerial level: roatt^ha-?məntrəy ដ្ឋីមន្ត្រី 'state minister,' roatt^ha?leek^haat^hikaa នឹងលោខាជាតិការ, 'state secretary, deputy minister,' ?a?nu?roatt^ha?leek^haat^hikaa អនុនឹងលោខាជាតិការ 'under state secretary.'

The word **damnaaj** ដំណាង ‘to represent; representative’ can be used as a verb and a noun when placed in front of an organization or a person. For example:

koat cie damnaaj rieh.

He is a people’s representative/parliament member.

look cie damnaaj roatt̄a?mbəntrəy.

You are the prime ministerial representative.

The word **prathien** ប្រធាន់ ‘chief, head’ is used in front of a person or an institution. In many instances **prathien** can be replaced by **nieyseok** នីយសេក. Both words can be placed in front of a person or an institution.

Exercise 5 (Audio 1.43)

Look at your appointment book and tell us your busy weekly schedule. This is the sample pattern: **tṇay can moan pram buen prik, riən p̄hiesaa kmae.**

<i>Time</i>	<i>Monday</i>	<i>Wednesday</i>	<i>Friday</i>
9:00 am	study Cambodian	meet with the eye doctor	teach English
12 noon	go to market	stay at the museum	lunch with the secretary
2:00 pm	meet student representative	appointment with chief of a factory	calling the information department

Exercise 6

Reorder these words/expressions to make correct sentences.

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1 koat tuurea?sap | kaari?yalay | tiv |
| 2 cup liej | knom | niv pteah |
| 3 kruu baŋriən | cie muəy damnaaj | look nat cuəp |
| 4 look srəy | krom hun | cie damnaaj |
| 5 ?aenj | niv kliinic | coap rɔvuel |



Read and write words with CVC

In this section we will focus on learning how to read and write Cambodian words that have combinations of a consonant, vowel, and consonant (CVC).

Phonologically, the consonants that can occur in final position in Cambodian syllables are: p, t, c, k, ?, l, h, m, n, η, ɲ, v, and y; and those that never occur in final position are: b, d, f, s, and r. Cambodian words that are spelled with a final r are not pronounced, as in: pii ពី ‘from,’ pii ពីឱ ‘two,’ kuu គូ ‘pair,’ kuu គូវិ ‘to draw.’

Go back to page 13, to review [Table 1](#), and pay attention to how each Cambodian consonant symbol is represented and how it is transcribed and pronounced in the initial and final position.

When kaa កា, k^haa កោ, kao កែ, or k^hao កោូ occur in the final position, the pronunciation and transcription is **-k**, as in: caak ចាក់ ‘to depart,’ muk មុក ‘face,’ sok សុក ‘peaceful,’ niek នីក ‘dragon,’ and meek មីក ‘sky.’

When daa ដា, t^haa ថា, d^hao ឌោ, t^hao ថោ, taa តា, t^haa ថា, too ទា, or t^hoo ធា, occur in the final position, the pronunciation transcription is **-t**, as in: kaat កាត់ ‘card’ and baat បាត់ ‘yes.’

When caa ចា or coo ចោ occur in the final position, the pronunciation and transcription is **-c**, as in: ?aac អាច ‘able to,’ puuc ូុធបុ ‘race,’ and riec រីជា ‘royal.’

When baa បា, p^haa ផា, pooh បូ, or p^hoo ហូ occur in the final position, the pronunciation and transcription is **-p**, as in: saap សាប់ ‘tasteless’ and p^hiep ភាប់ ‘status.’

When naa ណា and noo នោ occur in the final position, the pronunciation and transcription is **-n**, as in: bo?raan បូរានណា ‘ancient,’ caan ចាន់ ‘plate,’ and riən រីន់ ‘to study.’

For the first group of words, even though there is no symbol of a vowel between these two consonants, the words are usually pronounced according to the inherent sound of the first consonant. For the second group of words, the pronunciation will sound according to the combination of the consonant and the vowel and could end with one of the consonants (p, t, c, k, ?, l, h, m, n, η, ɲ, v, y).

Table 8 Examples of first group of words with no written vowel (inherent sound) symbol

1	kaa	+	kaa	kaak	កែក	to become coagulated
2	caa	+	t̄o	caat	ចោត	to park
3	taa	+	ȳo	taay	ពិយ	jug
4	saa	+	η̄o	saan̄	សិង	to pay back
5	t̄aa	+	t̄o	t̄aat	ថែត	to photograph
6	koo	+	η̄o	kooŋ	គុង	gong
7	yoo	+	k̄o	yook	យុក	to take
8	η̄oo	+	ȳo	η̄ooŋ	ពូយ	often
9	c̄hoo	+	m̄o	c̄hoom	លូម	to confront

Table 9 Examples of second group of words with regular vowel symbols

1	t̄o	+	i	co	t̄iŋ	ទិញ	to buy
2	moo	+	ee	ci	mœel	ម៉ីល	to read
3	moo	+	uəy	cy	muəy	មួយ	one
4	cy	+	ee	ŋ̄o	yəən̄	យើង	we/us
5	laa	+	aa	laan	laan	ឡាន	car
6	lo	+	oo	koo	look	លោក	Mr.



Exercise 7 (Audio 1.44)

Read these words and then write them in Cambodian script.



- | | |
|-----------|---------|
| 1 ?aac | 11 mœel |
| 2 baan | 12 peel |
| 3 daem | 13 cuəp |
| 4 p̄hooŋ | 14 muəy |
| 5 caan | 15 tiət |
| 6 kaet | 16 tooh |
| 7 koon | 17 look |
| 8 baek | 18 cuun |
| 9 k̄hooep | 19 mœen |
| 10 sən | 20 t̄iŋ |

Exercise 8



Read these Cambodian words.

- | | |
|----------|----------|
| 1 ປັກ | 5 ເໜັກ |
| 2 ບັກ | 6 ມານີ |
| 3 ຖາຍ | 7 ຜັບ |
| 4 ເງົ້າກ | 8 ເກົ່າຍ |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 1.45; Bonus audio 10)



First listen to this passage. Second look at the Cambodian text to see how many words (with combination of CV or CVC) you can recognize. Draw a circle around words with CV in red, and CVC in blue. Practice rewriting them in your notebook.



ព្រៀកនេះ ខ្ញុំឈើផ្ទេរឆ្នាំងណាស់។ ខ្ញុំត្រាំមិនបានក៏ទូរសព្ទទៅ
សំណាត់ជួលគ្រោពទេ តែត្រូវចំកន្លែងម៉ោង។ អាណិត្យនេះ ខ្ញុំមាន
ណាត់ប្រើន ហើយនៅលាស់។ ខ្ញុំធ្វើដំឡាក់នាយកពេងចំក្រាត់
ដែរ ហើយនិងតំណាងនីស្សិតសាលា។ នៅថ្ងៃសប្តាហ៍នេះ
ខ្ញុំទៅដំឡើងបុណ្យកំណើតមិត្តភ្លើខ្ញុំ។ ខ្ញុំអាចឆ្លាប់បានតាមចិត្ត
ចាប់ពី ម៉ោង៨យប់ ហើយដល់ម៉ោង១០យប់។

prik nih knom c'hi tmij klaj nah. knom troam min baan kaa
tuurea? sap tiv som nat cuop kruu peet, tae trev cam konlah moaj.
?aatit nih knom mien nat craen haey rovvel nah. knom trev cuop
nieyuek rooncak katdee haey niij damnaaj nisat saalaa. niv con
saapdaa nih, knom tiv cup liej bon komnaet mit srej knom. knom
?aac nam baan taam cet, cap pii moaj pram bey yup rhooot dal
moaj dap yup.

Unit Five

niv psaa kmae

នៅផ្សារខ្ពស់

At the open market



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and say what to buy at the open market
- ask, tell, and bargain for prices with **taa tlay**
- use the expressions ‘yet,’ ‘not yet,’ and ‘how about’
- say some names of fruits and vegetables
- use appropriate classifiers
- refer to qualities and units of measurement
- read and write CV and CVC combinations



Dialogue 1



Grocery shopping (Audio 1.46)

Listen to the conversation between a seller A (neak lsek) and a buyer B (neak tij) at an open market (psaa thoommadaa) in Phnom Penh.

-
- A: look srøy trøv kaa tij ?ey dae?
- B: knom cañ tij ?aŋkaa, skaa, niñ tik trøy.
- B: ?aŋkaa məkiiłoo tlay ponmaan?
- A: bəy poan pram rɔoy riəl. yɔɔk ponmaan kiiloo?
- B: pii kiiloo kanlah. haey ?aoy skaa məkajcap niñ tik trøy mədaap pʰaaŋ.

- A: look srəy trəv kaa ?əy tiət tee?
- B: tik sot pii yuə tiət. kit luy teaŋ ?əh ponmaan?
- A: ?əh məməən pram buən poan riəl.
- B: nih pii məən riəl. luy sal min bac ?ap tee.
- A: ?aa kun. tñay kraoy ?əŋcəəŋ mɔok tñj tiət.
- A: លោកស្រីត្រូវការទិញអ្វីដែរ?
- B: ខ្ញុំចង់ទិញអង្គរ ស្ថុ និងទិកត្រី។
- B: អង្គរនេះម្នាយតីឡើងបុន្ទាន?
- A: ៣៥០០ រៀល។ យកបុន្ទានតីឡើ?
- B: មតិឡ្ងកន្នុះ។ ហើយស្ថុរម្នាយកញ្ចប់ និងទិកត្រីម្នាយដបដង។
- A: លោកស្រីត្រូវការអ្វីឡៀតទេ?
- B: ទិកសុទ្ធតីរយ្យទៀត។ គឺតុលុយទាំងអស់បុន្ទាន?
- A: អស់១៥០០រៀល។
- B: នេះ ២មីនរៀល។ លួយសល់មិនបានអាប់ទេ។
- A: អរគុណ។ ថ្ងៃក្រោយអព្វីល្អមកទិញឡើត។

Translation of Dialogue 1

- A: *What would you like to buy, madam?*
- B: *I want to buy rice, sugar, and fish sauce.*
- B: *How much is a kilo of rice?*
- A: *3,000 Riel. How many kilos would you like?*
- B: *Two and a half kilos. And give me a packet of sugar, and one bottle of fish sauce, please.*
- A: *Do you need anything else?*
- B: *Two packs of drinking water as well. Add it up; how much is it altogether?*
- A: *All together it is 19,900 Riel.*
- B: *Here, 20,000 Riel; keep the change.*
- A: *Thank you. Please come again.*



Vocabulary

?ankaa	អង្គា	rice (uncooked)
skaa	សក់	sugar
tik trey	ទីកត្តិ	fish sauce
kiiloo	គិឡូ	kilogram
tilay	ព្រៃ	price, cost
yock	យក	to take, bring, receive
kanlah	កន្លែង	half
kajcap	កញ្ចប់	pack, package
daap	ដប	bottle
tik sot	ទីកសុទ្ធស័យ	drinking water
pii yue	ពីរយោរ	two packs (12 bottles)
kit luy	គិតលួយ	total up
taən ?ah	ទាំងអស់	altogether, all
?ah	អស់	all, the whole; to use up
luy sal	លួយសល់	left over money
?ap luy	អាប់លួយ	to give change
min bac ?ap tee	មិនបាទអាប់ទេ	keep the change



Language points

A variety of terms are used to indicate an amount of goods sold in markets. The following are the main ones:

- kiiloo គិឡូ, short for ‘kilogram,’ is the most commonly used term for a weight unit for a variety of goods generally in solid form, including grain
- k^ham ខំ ‘one-tenth of a kilo,’ used for goods required in smaller amounts than half a kilo
- braam ប្រាម ‘gram,’ a smaller unit used for a smaller amount of goods in powder form or a variety of processed foodstuffs such as meat
- kajcap កញ្ចប់ ‘packet(s),’ used for salt, refined sugar, and an assortment of goods

- daap ដៃបី ‘bottle,’ large or small, generally used for goods in liquid form, including wine
- liit លីត្រិតិ ‘liter,’ a unit for liquid, mostly used for gasoline
- kampon កំបុង ‘can,’ often used for soft drink and beer
- kaeh កែវតិបិ ‘case,’ usually a dozen cans or packets inside a box, mostly with reference to beer and an assortment of soft drinks
- kbaal ក្បាលលូ ‘head,’ used mostly for livestock or books
- muk មុខ ‘kind, type,’ mostly used for a dish or a course (of a meal)
- daem ដើម ‘stick, trunk,’ mostly used for trees, plants, poles, stalks, or guns
- dom ដូ ‘piece, chunk, group of,’ used for stone, candy, sugar, or wood
- bac បច្ចុបិ ‘bunch, bundle,’ used for vegetables, flowers, or firewood
- snet ស្ទើតិ ‘hands of bananas,’ used for bananas
- plae ផ្តួច ‘fruit,’ used to count fruit
- loo ឡូ ‘a dozen,’ used for eggs
- t'ah ចិង ‘pouch, small bag’ and sbaon ស៊ិប្បានុង ‘bag,’ used for liquids and an assortment of goods with small quantities
- t'hun ធិនុ ‘container,’ used for barrels of goods
- baav បាប់វិ ‘sack,’ bigger than kaaror ការូវង់ ‘sack, small bag,’ used for grain, in large amounts, and an assortment of goods in large quantities with specific weight

Notice that the order in this pattern is: **noun + number of units + classifier or specifier** (size, shape, amount, or kind of unit being counted). Also in Cambodian the specifier or classifier is optional. For example:

- biiyee pii kaeh
បីយើរ៉ែកេសប
2 cases of beer
- sac koo bəy kʰam
សាច់គោលខាំ
1/3 kilogram of beef
- siəvpʰiv bəy (kbaal)
សៀវភៀវបោយ(ក្បាល)
3 (volumes) of books or 3 books

pkaa ko?laap mēbac

ផ្លកុលាបម្បយបាត់

1 bouquet of roses

?aŋkaa mēbaav

អង្គរម្បយបាន់

1 sack of rice (about 100kg)

tik plae cʰəə kralok mētʰan

ទីកដ្ឋោលើក្រឡូកម្បយចង់

1 pouch of fruit shake



Exercise 1

Select the appropriate amount of these products that you will buy at the market. Using these words: kampon, liit, kiiloo, bac, koŋcap, and daap.

1 sraa (wine) pii _____

2 kookaa (coke) bəy _____

3 saŋ (gasoline) pram _____

4 sac koo (beef) muəy _____

5 banlæe (vegetable) muəy _____

6 skaa (sugar) pii _____



Exercise 2

Select the appropriate price in Cambodian script (from the second list) of these products that you will buy at the market. Notice that the contraction of muəy 'one' is mə.

1 tik sot məyuə tlay ponmaan?

2 ?aŋkaa məkiilo tlay ponmaan?

3 sac koo məkiilo tlay ponmaan?

4 saŋ məliit tlay ponmaan?

5 sraa mədāp tlay ponmaan?

6 biiyee məkaeh tlay ponmaan?

a ៣៥០ រ/គីឡូ

b \$៥.០០/ដប

c ៥០០០ រ/១ដប

d \$១៥/គីឡូ

e \$១.៥០/លីត្រិ

f \$៥.០០/គីឡូ

Exercise 3



Listen to Dialogue 1 again. Answer these following questions.

- 1 krav pii ?aŋkaa niŋ skaa, tae look srəy trəv kaa tijn ?ey tiət?
- 2 koat tijn ?aŋkaa ponmaan kilo? haøy taøø ?oh tlay ponmaan?
- 3 koat tijn skaa ponmaan kɔŋcap? haøy tik trəy ponmaan daap dae?
- 4 coh tik sot koat trəv kaa ponmaan yuø?
- 5 koat ?aoy luy tiv neak lœk ponmaan?
- 6 neak lœk baan ?ap luy tee?

Dialogue 2



(Audio 1.47)



This is another typical conversation between a regular customer A (neak tijn) and a seller B (neak lœk) at an open market. There is a fruit stand (toop lœk plae cʰøø) and a butcher stand (toop lœk sac). Several words that were needed in Dialogue 1 are no longer needed because they are already provided by the context.

At the fruit stand niv toop plae cʰøø

- A: knom yøøk ceek mæsnæt niŋ svaay mælo.
- B: ceek min toan tum, haøy svaay kaa niv kcøy dae.
- A: ?at ?ey tee. coh krooc noh p?æem tee?
- B: ?aa toc toc p?æem, tae ?aa tʰom cuu.
- A: yøøk ?aa p?æem pii kiiloo. teaj ?oh tlay ponmaan?
- B: pii mæen pram poan riø.
- A: nih luy raop mæøl krup tee?
- B: ?aa kun krup haøy.
- A: toop lœk sac niv naa?
- B: niv kanleanj ?uu?aa noh.
- A: ខ្លួនបានទៅលើមួយស្ថិតិនិងស្តាយមួយឡើ។
- B: ចេកចិនទាន់ខ្លួន ហើយស្តាយកែវឡើដើរ។
- A: អត់អីទេ។ ឬ៖ ត្រូវបានដោះដូចណា?
- B: អាតុចុងដោះ តើអាចជីជុរៈ។

- A: យកអារីដ្ឋមពីគីឡូ ទាំងអស់ថ្មីបុន្ណាន?
 B: ៤៥០០០រៀល។
 A: នេះលួយា រប់មិនត្រូវបែកទេ?
 B: អរគុណត្រូវបែកហើយ។
 A: តូចលក់សាច់នៅឯណា?
 B: នៅកន្លែងអ្នកនោះ។

At the butcher stand niv toop lsek sac

- A: som tləəŋ sac cruuk məkiiloo niŋ sac koo kanlah kiiloo moɔk!
 B: tñay nih sac moan niŋ sac tie srah srah nah. cuøy tñj pʰaaŋ.
 A: lsek yaan mæc dae?
 B: tlay dooc knie niŋ sac cruuk.
 A: coh klah moɔk, baan tee?
 B: baan mooy pi?saeh.
 A: ?iicəŋ kcáp tie məkuu tiət moɔk!
 B: knom ?ap luy ?aoy neak haøy. ?aa kun.

- A: សុំថ្មីនឹង សាច់ផ្លូវកម្មយឬឡូ និងសាច់គោកន្ទៃ៖គីឡូមក!
 B: ថ្មីនេះសាច់មាន់ និងសាច់ទាប្រសស់ ណាស់។ ដូយទិញដង?
 A: លក់យ៉ាងម៉ែបដើរ?
 B: ថ្មីដូច្នានឹងសាច់ផ្លូវ
 A: ចុំខ្លះមក បានទេ?
 B: បាន មួយពិសេស។
 A: អូចិំងខ្លួចទាមយក្ខុទៀងមក!
 B: ខ្លួចអាប់លុយអោយអ្នកហើយ។ អរគុណ។

Translation of Dialogue 2

At the fruit stand

- A: I will take a bunch of bananas and a dozen mangoes.
 B: The bananas are not ripe yet, and the mangoes are still green.
 A: That's OK. Are those oranges sweet?
 B: The small ones are sweet, but the big ones are sour.

- A: Then give me two kilos of the sweet oranges. How much altogether?
- B: 25,000 Riel.
- A: Here is the money. Count it, is that the correct amount?
- B: Thank you, it is correct.
- A: Where is the butcher stand?
- B: It is over near the crowded area over there.

At the butcher stand

- A: Please could you weigh a kilo of pork and half a kilo of beef!
- B: Today's chicken and duck are fresh. Please buy some.
- A: How much do you sell them for?
- B: Same price as pork.
- A: Could you lower the price a bit?
- B: OK, for a regular customer.
- A: Then please wrap up a pair of ducks for me as well!
- B: I gave you the change already. Thanks.

Vocabulary

A
C
B

ceek	ចោក	banana
muəy snət / məsnət	មួយស្តីតិ	a hand of bananas
svaay	ស្មាយ	mango
loo	ឡូ	a dozen
min toan	មិនទាន់	not yet
kcəy # tum	ឱ្យ # ទំ	unripe/to be ripe
krooc	ក្រុច	orange
p?aem # cuu	ផ្លូម # ប្បុរី	sweet/sour
?aa toc	អាតូប	the small one
krup	គ្រប់	complete, all, every
?uu?aa	ដូអា	to be crowded, filled with people, noisy
?iicəŋ	អូចិះង	so, therefore; in this/that way
tləəŋ	លីង	to weigh, to ponder
sac cruuk	សាច់ប្រៀក	pork

sac koo	សាត់គោ	beef
moan	មាន	chicken
sac tie	កា	duck
kuu	គូ	a pair, couple
cuøy	ជួយ	to help
yaarj məc	យ៉ាងមេច	how, why, in what way, in any way
dooc knie	ដួចគ្នា	to be alike, like, just as
coh tlay	ចុះត្រូវ	to reduce price
muey muk / məmuk	មួយមុខ	each kind, type
mooy	មួយ	client who frequently uses the service of a place
pi?saeh	ពិស់សី	special



Language points

Fruits

The word snet is used for fruits in a bunch, especially for bananas. The word tum ទុំ ‘ripe’ is used as opposed to kcəy ខ្សី ‘green’; p?aelem ផ្លូវម៉ឺន ‘sweet’ as opposed to other tastes such as cuu ជួយ ‘sour.’



Names of some fruits (Audio 1.48)

These are some common fruit names that you should know when buying them at the open market in Cambodia: dooŋ ដួង ‘coconut,’ mnoah ម្មានធម្មោះ ‘pineapple,’ lhoŋ ល្អោង ‘papaya,’ ?əvlək ឱ្យទូរកើ ‘watermelon,’ trobaek ត្រូវបែក ‘guava,’ kuuleen គូលែន ‘lychee,’ miən មិៃន ‘logan,’ saavmaaav សាហ៌ម៉ោវ ‘rambutan,’ məənjhut ម៉ោងូត ‘mangosteen,’ and tʰuureen ធ្វូនីន ‘durian.’

plae cʰəə cuu haøy tlay.

The fruit is sour and expensive.

?əvlək tum haøy p?aelem.

The watermelon is ripe and sweet.



Names of some vegetables (Audio 1.49)

These are some common vegetable names that you should know when buying them at the open market in Cambodia: trakuən ត្រកូវ ‘water spinach,’ spey សៀម ‘cabbage,’ kʰatnaa ខាតណាន ‘collard greens,’ sandaeuk ស៊ប់ណុក ‘beans and peas,’ poot ពួក ‘corn,’ trolaac ត្រឡាច ‘winter melon;’ trap ត្រពី ‘eggplant,’ peerjnah បៀរងបៀរង ‘tomato,’ kaarot ការូតិ ‘carrot,’ trasak ត្រីសុក ‘cucumber,’ and saalaad សាលាគុដ ‘lettuce, salad.’

Use of ‘yet’ for question and ‘not yet’ for answer

The question with haəy rii niv ហាយឲ្យនិវ, shortens to haəy niv or rii niv ‘have . . . yet?’ and can generally generate a ‘yes’ or ‘not yet’ answer, as in:

Ihoŋ tum haəy rii niv?
Are the papayas ripe yet?

tum haəy.
Yes, it is already ripe.

?at toan tum tee.
No, it is not ripe, yet.

niv tee.
No, not yet.

Thus the answer using expressions min toan មិនទាន or ?at toan អតិទាន and niv tee និវិទ generally are indicating a process ‘not yet’ completed.

svaay ?at toan tum tee.
The mangoes are not ripe yet.

koat min toan mook.
He has not arrived yet.

knom min toan tijn sandaeuk.
I have not purchased the beans yet.

Use of ‘how about’

The expression coh တဲ့: ‘how about’ is used to switch to a subject or situation related or different to the one being discussed. The common meaning of coh is ‘to reduce, to lower, to move in a downward position.’ For example:

krooc p?ae[m, coh mnoah?

Oranges are sweet, how about the pineapples?

sac koo tlay, coh sac cruu[k?

The beef is expensive, how about the pork?

koat cmuəh Danny, coh ?ae[n?

His name is Danny, how about you?

som coh tlay banlae nih.

Please reduce the price of this vegetable.

Other useful words and expressions used in this dialogue

The word ?aa ဘုရား is a useful and quick way to denote a specific object rather than repeating the name of the object itself, such as ?aa toc ‘the small one,’ ?aa t̄om ‘the big one,’ ?aa tlay ‘the expensive one,’ ?aa t̄aok ‘the cheap one,’ ?aa l?aa ‘the nice (good) one.’

toop ထွေပြီ a covered stall or stand displaying goods for sale, as opposed to a larger structure

haaj ဟာဂါနံ ‘store,’ such as haaj lsək tnam ‘pharmacy,’ haaj lsək siəvp̄liv ‘bookshop’

dooc ထွေပြီ ‘same,’ indicates similarity between two or more different things, while smaə စမှေပြီ is a more precise term indicating ‘equality’

klah ကျေး: ‘some, a portion of a bigger amount’; another common meaning of klah ‘else’ is to try to get a more precise answer when talking about a person or an object

baan tee ပါဝါနီဒ် indicates possibility whether an action can be taken or done

?iicəŋ អើ បី ង់ ‘therefore, so,’ used interchangeably with ?oŋcəŋ អក្ស ង់ depending upon the speaker

yoo ~ yoo យូ ពិ ‘to take, to bring’ when combined with another verb indicates the direction of the action, as in yoo tiv
យកទៅ ‘to take,’ yoo mook យូ មក ពិ ‘to bring’

When tiv ទៅ ‘to go’ and mook មក ‘to come’ are placed at the end of a sentence or clause they mark an imperative as in:

tləəŋ sac məkiiloo mook.
ត្រីងសាត់មួយគីឡូមក។
Weigh me one kilo of meat!

nam skao pii dom tiv.
នាំសក់ពីរដុំទៅ។
Eat two pieces of sugar!

coh tlay klah mook.
ចូះត្រួល៖មក។
Go down on price!

ləek ?aoy t^hoak t^hoat tiv.
លក់អោយថាការទៅ។
Sell it cheap!

Exercise 4 (Audio 1.50)

How would you use these statements with miən toan ‘not yet’?



- 1 ceek məsnət nih tum haəy.
- 2 svaay t^hom p?aem haəy.
- 3 krooc toc ləek ?ah haəy.
- 4 puu yook ?əvlək tum tiv ?aoy koon haəy.
- 5 knom coh tlay k^hatnaa ?aoy koat haəy.
- 6 spey nih yook tiv nam baan haəy.



Exercise 5



First, read these statements aloud. Second, use them to ask questions with haəjy riə niv ‘yet’.

- 1 look yiey nam ceek tum.
- 2 koat tləəŋ sac moan.
- 3 baaŋ ləek ?oŋkaa ?ah.
- 4 knom ?aoy luy tiv neak ləek.
- 5 neak ləek kit luy.
- 6 koat ?ap luy ?aoy neak tij.



Exercise 6

Using the appropriate expressions on the left side to complete these statements.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1 som _____ plae c ^h øø knom. | a srah |
| 2 knom lœk _____ ?aoy. | b p?aem |
| 3 svaay tum haøy _____ nah. | c tiv c ^h aa |
| 4 sac moan koat _____ nah. | d min toan |
| 5 ceek _____ tum tee. | e coh tlay |
| 6 yœk banlae _____ tiv. | f cuøy tijn |



Review reading and writing CV and CVC

In this unit, we are reviewing the reading and writing of Cambodian script with the combination of consonant and vowel (CV), and consonant, vowel, and consonant (CVC).



Exercise 7

Read these words aloud. Write the script again in your note book and tell us their appropriate meaning in English.

១ ទា	២ ខុំ	៣ ចុះ	៤ គោ	៥ សំ
៦ ឡើ	៧ ដូរ	៨ ជំ	៩ នៅ	១០ តីឡ្ស



Exercise 8

Read the words in Cambodian script aloud. Match them with the transliteration forms.

- | | | | | |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 លោក | 2 ទិញ | 3 និង | 4 ដូច | 5 ទីក |
| 6 រៀល | 7 ហើយ | 8 លូយ | 9 ចេក | 10 ជួយ |
| a haøy | b tik | c ceek | d cuøy | e tijn |
| f riøl | g look | h nirj | i dooc | j luy |

Exercise 9 (Audio 1.51)

Draw this slant line / to mark the separate words in these expressions.
Read them aloud.



- | | | | |
|---|--------|----|---------|
| ១ | យកមក | ៦ | មិនសល់ |
| ២ | ធ្វើយក | ៧ | ទិញទាន់ |
| ៣ | លម៉ែល | ៨ | លក់សាច់ |
| ៤ | បានទេ | ៩ | មិនទាន់ |
| ៥ | មែនហើយ | ១០ | មួយមុខ |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 1.52; Bonus audio 11)



First, use the audio to listen to this passage. Second, read the passage in Cambodian script. Third, draw a circle around words or expressions that you know. Fourth, match the CV and the CVC combinations in Cambodian script with the transcription below.

ទីក្រុងភ្នំពេញមានជ្រាវធ្មតា និងជ្រាវទំនើបនៅត្រូវបានដោះស្រាយឡើង។
ជ្រាវនិមួយៗមានមនុស្សអូរដែរទិញអីវាត់តាំងព្រឹកព្រលិមហ៊ុត
ដល់យប់។ ជ្រាវទំនើបជំរាប់មានមាត្រាស្ថិនគ្របាក់ ហើយមានអីវាត់ផ្លូវ
ភាគច្រើនមកពីបរទេស។ ត្រូវបានសច្ចាលចិត្តទៅជ្រាវទំនើប
ណាស់។ កល់ផ្លូវ ខ្លួចប៉ែងភ្នាពេទិញអីវាត់នៅជ្រាវធ្មតា។ ខ្លួច
ចិត្តចិត្តចិញ្ញាប៉ែងលើឆ្លាត់។ បន្ទាន់ស្រស់។ និងអីវាត់ល្អប៉ែក។ នៅ
ជ្រាវធ្មតា ប្រាជៈនៅទីនោះ ខ្លួចចាត់ផ្លូវបានឡើង។

ti kroj pnum pij mien psaa thoammədaa, niŋ psaa tumnəep niv krup tii karjlean. psaa ni?muəy ni?muəy mien monuh ?uu?oo dae tij ?eyvan, tan pii prik prōlím rhooot dal yup. psaa tumnəep thom thom mien maasiin traceak, haey mien ?eyvan tlay, p^hieck craen mook pii barəteeh. pniev barəteeh cool cət tiv psaa tumnəep nah. roal tñay, kmae krup krup knie, cool cət tiv tij ?eyvan niv psaa thoammədaa. kñom cool cət tij plae c^hee cñaj cñaj, banlae srah srah, niŋ ?eyvan l?oo thaok thaok, niv psaa thoammədaa, prueh niv tii noh, kñom ?aac too tlay baan tiët.

Unit Six

rəbah ?a?nuhsaava?rii nīj samliek bampeak

របស់អនុស្សារីយ៍និងសំលោកបំពាក់

Souvenirs and clothing



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about buying and selling clothes, shoes, and souvenirs
- use expressions relating to ‘price,’ ‘to try or test,’ and saying ‘please’
- talk about and ask for color and sizes for your clothing
- use the verbs **sliek** and **peak** on wearing garments/things
- use appropriate classifiers
- read and write subscripts



Dialogue 1



At a souvenir shop (**Audio 1.53**)

Listen to the conversation between a seller (A) and a tourist, pniəv teehsa?caa (B), at a museum souvenir shop in Siem Reap.

-
- A: suəsdəy! soom ?aŋcəən cool look.
B: knom caŋ tīj ?əmnaoy cuun kee peel tiv vīj.
A: samrap mənuh srəy riː proh?
B: ?aoj saŋsaa, mdaay niːj cav vaay.
A: nih kramaa sot, sampūət hool, pʰaa muəj riː ruup camlak.
B: l?aa camnap! taə rəbah teaj nih tvəə niv srok kmae riː?

- A: caa. look caŋ baan ?əy klah?
 B: yɔɔk kramaα sot pii, sampuət hool muəy, ruup camlak
 ?apsa?raa pii, niŋ pteŋ kumnuu nih.
 A: rɔbah ?a?nuhsaava?rii teŋ nih mien tamlay nah prɔəh tvəə pii day.
 B: som kcáp cie kaŋcap pseəŋ pseəŋ knie.
 A: yəəŋ tʰaem ?aav yiit ruup ?aŋkɔɔ cuun cie ?a?nuhsaava?rii.
 B: ?aa kun.

- A: សូស្តី! សូមអាចើញចូលលោក។
 B: ខ្ញុចង់ទិញអំណោយដូនគេពេលទៅវិញ។
 A: សំរាប់មនុស្សប្រើប្រាស់?
 B: អោយសង្ការ ម្នាយ នឹងថែហ្មាយ។
 A: នេះក្រុមស្តីត្រូវ សំព័ត៌ម្លៃ ជាមួន ឲ្យបច្ចាក់។
 B: ឯុទ្ធទាំងប់! តើបេស់ទាំងនេះធ្វើត្រូវខ្លួនប្រើ?
 A: ថា លោកចង់បានអីខ្លះ?
 B: យកក្រុមស្តីត្រូវ សំព័ត៌ម្លៃម្នាយ ឲ្យបច្ចាក់អប្បរោគទី
 និងផ្ទាំងគំនួននេះ។
 A: បេស់អនុស្សារីយ៉ែយ៉ែទាំងនេះមានតម្លៃណាស់ព្រោះធ្វើតីដោយ។
 B: សុខុមាភជាកញ្ញាប់ដេញទៅត្រូវ។
 A: យើងថែមអារីយ៉ែត្រូវបានដូនជាអនុស្សារីយ៉ែ។
 B: អគគុណ។

Vocabulary

A
C
B

?aŋcəəŋ cool	អាចើញចូល	please come in
?amnaoy	អំណោយ	present, gift
kramaα sot	ក្រុមស្តីត្រូវ	silk scarf
sampuət	សំព័ត៌	skirt
sampuət hool	សំព័ត៌ម្លៃ	hand-woven silk fabric (skirt) with intricate pattern
pʰaa muəŋ	ជាមួន	plain silk fabric
ruup camlak	ឲ្យបច្ចាក់	sculpture

pteaj kumnuu	ផ្សំងគំនែរ	wall painting
I?aa camnap	ល្អឥណទាន	superb, wonderful
tvøe pii day	ធ្វើពីដៃ	handmade
tamlay	តម្លៃ	value, price
pseerj pseerj	ផ្សំងង់	separately, various
tʰaem	ថែម	to add to
?aav yiit	អារីយីត	T-shirt
robah ?a?nuhsaava?rii	របស់អនុសាត្រវីយេ	souvenir items
voattʰo? bo?raan	វត្ថុបរាណណា	antiques



Language points

Cambodians are famous for making handicrafts and hand-woven silk textiles with unique and intricate patterns. At cultural ceremonies, Cambodian people wear their traditional costumes made of these silk fabrics. Women wear long traditional skirts, sampuat hool or sampuat pʰaa muən, with matching silk blouses or embroidered blouses that are fitted to the body and shortened to waist length. Both men and women wear sampuat can kben. The men usually wear long-sleeved shirts with mandarin collars. The kromaa, or Cambodian scarf, is either woven from cotton or silk. Everyone owns a kromaa. At work, people wear European-style clothing, but most Cambodian women at a certain age prefer to wear a sampuat made of cotton or synthetic fabric for easy care. At home or in the countryside, people wear saaron, a sarong or long skirt.

The word soom សូម ‘please’ is a polite term used to introduce a sentence and functions as an auxiliary. Sometimes, in rapid speech, it is shortened to become homophonous with som សំ. But som សំ ‘to ask for, to request; to ask to (do something)’ is a verb. For example:

soom meel siəvpʰiv.

សូមមើលសៀវភៅ។

Please read the book.

soom saasee cmuəh koat.

សូមសិរីស៊ិរីណូចាត់។

Please write his name.

soom tuurea?sap mook vijn.

សូមទូរសព្ទមកវិញ។

Please call back.

som tiv ban̄kuən.

សំឡើបងុន់។

Can I go to the toilet.

som tiv psaa cie muəy pʰaaŋ.

សំឡើដ្ឋាមួយដឹង។

Can I go to the market with you.

knom som luy paa.

ខ្ញុំសំណូលយក្តា។

I ask dad for money.

The word cuun ផ្តល់ ‘to give, present, offer to; to, for’ is used as a polite and respectful form of ?aoy អោយ as in: cuun pteaŋ kumnuu tiv look nieuək ‘give the painting to the director.’

Cambodian has many noun words that are derived from their original root verbs. The following examples are from this unit: ?omnaoy អំណោយ ‘gift’ is from the verb ?aoy អោយ ‘to give,’ kajcap ការព័ត៌មាន ‘package’ is from kcap ឱ្យប់ ‘to wrap,’ tamlay តម្លៃ ‘price, value’ is from tlay តម្លៃ ‘to cost, be worth,’ camlak ចំណាត់កិច្ច ‘sculpture, carving’ is from the verb clak ឆ្លាក់ ‘to carve, to sculpt,’ kumnuu គិន្ទី ‘painting, drawing’ is from the verb kuu គិរី ‘to draw, to sketch, to paint.’ អោយ was written originally with the independent vowel, as in ឃីឃី.

Exercise 1



First, read the expressions on the right-hand side. Second, use them to complete these statements.

1 ____ kcap plae cʰea nih.

2 sampuət hool mien ____ nah.

3 yoōk svaay tʰom tiv ____ look taa.

4 ____ som coh tlay tiət baan tee.

5 ____ ?aŋcəəŋ ?aŋkuy look kruu.

6 ?aəŋ tij ____ ?aoy neak naa?

a cuun

b soom

c tamlay

d kramaa sot

e som

f kom



Exercise 2 (Audio 1.54)

Listen to the first dialogue again, and then answer these questions.



- 1 pniəv teehsa?caa niv ?ae naa?
- 2 koat caŋ tij ?əy yɔɔk tiv srok koat?
- 3 tij ?aoj neak naa klah?
- 4 koat tij kramma sot ponmaan?
- 5 neak lək təv kcap cie ponmaan kajcap?
- 6 kee baan tʰaem ?əy ?aoj koat?



Dialogue 2



At a clothing store (Audio 1.55)

Listen to the conversation between neak lək (A) and a young couple neak tij (B and C) at a clothing store in Soriya Mall in Phnom Penh.

- A: suəsdəy, neak tearj pii caŋ tij ?əy?
- B: pəək yəəŋ caŋ tij kʰao ?aav məsamrap mneak.
- A: neak tearj pii təv kaa leek ponmaan?
- C: ?aav day kləy leek tooc, sampuət leek kandaal.
- B: ?ot dəŋ tee, som cuəy voah prəəh tʰoat cieŋ mun.
- A: caa ?aav niŋ kʰao leek tʰom. neak tearj pii caŋ baan poa ?əy?
- B: knom yɔɔk ?aav day vəəŋ poa saa, kʰao poa prəpʰeh.
- C: som ?aav poa krəhaam niŋ sampuət poa kmav. mien bantup ləo kʰao ?aav tee?
- A: mien. nih kʰao ?aav samrap ləo.
- B: ?aav lmoom, tae kʰao nih caŋ?ət bantəc. mien leek tʰom cieŋ nih tee?
- A: kʰao leek XL mien tae poa kmav.
- C: yii kʰao ?aav nih sam niŋ pəək yəəŋ məən.
- B: tij tearj ?oh tiv, knom coh tlay ?aoj dap pʰiek rooy.
- C: ?aa kun craən.
- A: សូស្តី អ្នកទាំងពីរចង់ទិញអី?
- B: ពួកយើងចង់ទិញខាងម្រែយសំរាប់ម្នាក់។
- A: អ្នកទាំងពីរត្រូវការលេខបុន្ញាន?

- C: អារ៉ាដីឡូលេខត្បូច សំពត់លេខកណ្តាល។
- B: អតិថិជនទៅ សំដួយភាស់ ព្រោះធាតុជាងមុន។
- A: ថា អារ៉ានិងខោលេខជា អ្នកទាំងពីរចង់បានពណ៌អី?
- B: ខ្ញុំយកអារ៉ាដីឡើងពណ៌ស ខោពាក្យប្រធែៗ។
- C: សំអារពណ៌ក្រហមនិងសំពត់ពណ៌ខ្មែរ។ មានបន្ទូប់លខោអារ៉ាទេ?
- A: មាន។ នេះខោភាសំកប់ល។
- B: អារ៉ាលូម តើខោនេះចង់គូតបន្ទិច។ មានលេខជាំជាងនេះទេ?
- A: ខោលេខអិចអិលមានតែពណ៌ខ្មែរ។
- C: យើខោអារ៉ានេះសមនិងពួកយើងមែន។
- B: ទិញទាំងអស់ទៅ ខ្ញុំចុះត្រួតខ្សោយៗ០១០ភាគរយ។
- C: អគ្គុណាប្រើនៅ។

Vocabulary

**A
C
B**

?aav yiit	អារ៉ាយើត	T-shirt
k ^h ao ?aav	ខោអារ៉ា	clothing (pants and shirt)
məsamrap	សំកប់	one set of clothing
trəv kaa	ក្រុំការ	to want, must have
leek ponmaan	លេខបុរុន្ណាន	what size
kləy # vəeŋ	ខី # វិង	short/long
dəŋ	ដឹង	to know; to understand, to comprehend
voah	វាស់	to measure
t ^h oat	ធាតុ	to be fat, chubby
cieŋ	ជាង	more than; exceeding
leek kandaal	លេខកណ្តាល	medium size
poa kmav	ពណ៌ខ្មែរ	black color
bantup lɔɔ k ^h ao ?aav	បន្ទូប់លខោអារ៉ា	dressing room
lɔɔ mœl	លម៉ឺល	to try, to make an attempt
baan tee	បានទេ	is it OK

lmoom	ល្អម	perfect fit
tae	តែតិ	but
caŋ?iət	ចង្វាត់តិ	tight
leek tʰom	លេខធាំ	large size
leek XL	លេខអិចអិល	size XL
sam	សិម	fit, go well with
mœen	ម៉ែន	sure, correct, right
coh tlay	ចុះផ្សោះ	reduce the price
pʰiek	ភាតិ	part; section; division
pʰiek rɔøy	ភាតិរយៈ	percentage
moot s?aat	ម៉ែត់កណ្តាត់	style; fancy; beautiful
toan sa?may	ទាន់សំម័យ	fashionable, trendy



Language points

Size

Current terms used when referring to the size of garment are: leek លេខ ‘number’ or tumhum ទីបាំ ‘size, dimension.’

The most common terms in use for garment sizes are a set of letters: S for small, M for medium, L for large and XL for extra-large. leek toc លេខតិច ‘small size,’ leek kandaal លេខកណ្តាល ‘medium size,’ and leek tʰom លេខធាំ ‘large size’ are also used.

?aav leek toc

small size shirt

sbaek cœəŋ leek sam pram bəy

shoes, size 38

kʰao leek tʰom

large size pants

Other terms referring to size are: តិច toc, ‘small or narrow’; ទី tʰom, ‘large’; ចង្វាត់តិ caŋ?iət, ‘tight’; តិចិង្វាន់ rəlunj, ‘not fitting well (oversize), or loose’; and ចិញ្ចិវិ tʰuu, ‘loose for pants/skirt’ for lower garments.

List of main colors (Audio 1.56)



1 poa	ពណ៌	color
2 poa krahaam	ពណ៌ក្រហម	red
3 poa k ^h iəv	ពណ៌ខ្សោរ	blue
4 poa svaay	ពណ៌ស្វាយ	purple
5 poa saa	ពណ៌ស	white
6 poa kmav	ពណ៌ខ្ចុាវ	black
7 poa baytaaq	ពណ៌បែតង	green
8 poa prap ^h eh	ពណ៌ប្រធេះ	gray
9 poa tnaot (poa sokolaa)	ពណ៌ត្រូត (ពណ៌សុភុទ្ធភាព)	brown
10 poa liəŋ	ពណ៌លើង	yellow
11 poa liəŋ tum	ពណ៌លើងទុំ	orange
12 poa mieh	ពណ៌មាស	gold
13 poa c ^h iem cruuk	ពណ៌លិមជ្រួក	burgundy
14 poa sii cumpuu	ពណ៌សីចុំពុំ	pink

The words cah ចាស់ ‘dark’ and kcøy ខ្សី ‘light’ placed immediately after a color makes that particular color darker or lighter. For example: krahaam cah ក្រហមចាស់ ‘deep red,’ liəŋ kcøy លើងខ្សី ‘light yellow,’ khiəv kcøy ខ្សោរខ្សី ‘light blue.’ Even though the latter color is now predominantly considered to be ‘blue,’ traditionally khiəv refers to ‘green.’

Wearing garments with sliek and peak (Audio 1.57)



With reference to garments, sliek តិច្ឆិក is ‘to put on a lower garment,’ while peak ពាក់ក្រោក is ‘to put on an upper garment’ or ‘put something on.’ For example: peak ?aav ពាក់អារ៉ា ‘to put on a shirt,’ sliek k^hao តិច្ឆិកខោ ‘to wear pants;’ when combined together – sliek peak តិច្ឆិកពាក់ – means ‘wearing clothes in general.’

The expression loo mœel លើមីលើ means ‘to try or to test’ something or someone; but for tasting or sampling food, the preferred word is plusek ឆ្លួយក្តី.

koat peak muək lɔɔ mɔɔl.

She tries on the hat.

sliek kʰao lɔɔ mɔɔl.

Try on the pants.

som pluek mhoop knom.

Please taste my food.

pluek num nih tiv, cŋaj nah.

Try this cake, it is delicious.

A ‘set of clothes’ is samliek bampeak muəy somrap or muəy kamplee មួយកំប្លែ. The expressions samliek bampeak សំលោកបំពាក់ and kʰao ?aav ខាងក្រោម are interchangeable, referring to ‘a set of clothing,’ the former being formal and the latter colloquial.

It’s common practice in many places to bargain for a lower price; the expression used for this action is taa tlay តាត្វូរ ‘to debate the price’ or ‘to haggle over the price.’ The goal is to get the seller ‘to reduce/lower the price,’ coh tlay ចូល្វ៊ូរ. For the seller the goal is kat tlay kpueh កាត់ត្វូរខ្ពស់ ‘to set high price,’ laen tlay ឡើងត្វូរ ‘to become more expensive,’ versus ban tlay បង់ត្វូរ ‘to pay the cost,’ ?aoy tlay នរាយត្វូរ ‘to fix a price before paying’, as in:

tlay nah! som coh bantac mook.

Expensive! Please reduce the price.

tʰaok nah! min bac taa tlay tee.

Very cheap! No need to haggle for the price.

tʰaok haey, coh tlay ?ot baan tee.

That’s already cheap, cannot reduce the price.

som taa tlay baan tee?

Can (I) bargain for the price?

som kit tlay tean ?oh baan tee?

Can you total up all together?

neak ?aoy tlay tʰaok peek.

You’ve started with too low a price.

haŋ nih kat tlay kpueh nah.

This store sets high prices.

Exercise 3



How would you answer these questions? Select the correct expression on the right-hand side for each answer.

- | | |
|---|-------------------|
| 1 look piek ?aav leek ponmaan? | a canj?iet bantec |
| 2 baaj srəy sliek sampuet poa ?əy? | b trəv haəy |
| 3 k ^h ao nih lmoom tee? | c ?aav yiit |
| 4 ?aav nih sam niŋ k ^h ao tee? | d poa khmav |
| 5 neak t ^h aem ?əy ?aoy knom? | e leek toc |
| 6 koat baŋ tlay trəv tee? | f ?at sam tee |

Exercise 4 (Audio 1.58)



Ask questions to someone based on the following statements:

- 1 ?aav nih mien poa krahaam niŋ poa k^hiəv.
- 2 k^hao ?aav məsdmrəp nih canj?iet bantec.
- 3 ?aav saa koat s?aat nah.
- 4 ?aav yiit nih mien tae leek t^hom tee.
- 5 peel t^hin muək koat cool cət taa tlay.
- 6 koat som loo vaen taa kmav muəy nih.

Exercise 5



You are at a clothing store speaking to a clerk. Your task is to use these verbs: trəv kaa, canj t^hin, som loo, to make six sentences with the appropriate information from the columns. For example: knom trəv kaa ?aav day khlay poa saa leek toc.

<i>clothing</i>	<i>length</i>	<i>colors</i>	<i>sizes</i>
1 ?aav	?at day / day kləy	k ^h iəv / saa	toc
2 sampuet	kləy / vəeŋ	kmav / baytaŋ	kandaal
3 k ^h ao	kləy / cəəŋ vəeŋ	sokolaa / prap ^h eh	t ^h om

Reading and writing Cambodian subscripts



When two consonant sounds occur together in a word, the second consonant symbol is written underneath the initial consonant in its subscript symbol. Each consonant has its own subscript or ដីផ្លូវ

Table 10 Consonants and subscript symbols

ក	ក	ក	ក	ក
kaa	k ^h aa	ko	k ^h o	ky ^h a
caa	c ^h aa	co	c ^h o	cy ^h a
daa	t ^h aa	cp	c ^h a	ta ^h a
taa	d ^h aa	ca	c ^h a	ta ^h a
baa	p ^h a	cd	c ^h d	bi ^h a
cy	ci	ca	ca	ci
saa	haa	di	da	di

Table 10 shows Cambodian consonants and their subscript symbols.

Exercise 6



Look at these consonant subscripts. Use [Table 10](#) to help identify their ‘parents.’

- | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|----|----|----|----|----|----|
| 1 | ၂ | 6 | ၇ | 11 | ၁၂ | 16 | ၁၇ |
| 2 | ၃ | 7 | ၄ | 12 | ၁၃ | 17 | ၁၈ |
| 3 | ၅ | 8 | ၉ | 13 | ၁၄ | 18 | ၁၉ |
| 4 | ၆ | 9 | ၁၀ | 14 | ၁၅ | 19 | ၂၀ |
| 5 | ၇ | 10 | ၈ | 15 | ၁၆ | | |

Exercise 7



Draw this slant line / to mark the separate words in these expressions.

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|-----------|----------|
| ១ ចុះថ្វី | តិច្ចេ | ទ្វីងថ្វី | កាត់ថ្វី |
| ២ ចេញលូយ | គិតលូយ | អាប់លូយ | មានលូយ |
| ៣ លេខគួច | លេខកណ្តាល | លេខធំ | លេខពិសេស |
| ៤ ខោចដ្ឋីត | ខោលូង | ស្រួកខោ | ខោខ្សី |

Listening and reading passage



(Audio 1.59; Bonus audio 12)



Use the audio to listen to this passage about the market in Cambodia. Draw a circle around the words or expressions that you know. Identify the subscript symbols.

ហាងលក់គួគបុរាណ និងរបស់អនុស្សារីយ៉ាមាននៅតាមពេញ
នៅក្នុងទីក្រុង និងនៅក្នុងទេសចរណ៍។ ត្រូវបានទេសចរណ៍
ដើម្បីបានរបស់អនុស្សារីយ៉ាមីយ៉ែងទៅជួរឡើងទៅក្នុងប្រាក់នៅជួរ
នោះគេអាចតាមដ្ឋាន ហើយតម្លៃកំណត់ដោយតម្លៃកំណត់ដោយ។
នៅក្នុងពេញ គេអាចទិញសំណែកបំពាក់នៅតាមហាងទាំងនេះ។
នៅជួរទីផ្សារអូរឡូក ឬជួរភ្នំពេញ នៅទីនោះអ្នកលក់ប្រើបាន
កាត់ថ្វីខ្ពស់ ហើយអ្នកទិញសម្រាយនឹងតម្លៃ។ ខោអារនៅហាង
ទាំងនេះត្រូវបានបង្ហាញ តែមានមួយតម្លៃ ទាន់សម្រាយ ហើយមនុស្សកំ
នៅតែទិញ។

haaj lsek voatt^ho? bo?raan niŋ rɔbah ?a?nuhsaava?rii mien niv pieh
piŋ tii kroŋ niŋ niv konleanj teehso?caa. pniəv boreeəh cool cət daə tijn
rɔbah ?a?nuhsaava?rii pseerj pseerj, niv psaa tuul tumpuuŋ, prsəh niv
psaa noh kee ?aac taa tlay baan, haəy tamlay koo tʰaok kuə sam dae.

niv pn̩um piŋ kee ?aac tijn samliek bompeak niv haaj tumnəəp
tumnəəp, niv psaa tməy, psaa ?oolampik riŋ psaa rietrəy. niv tii noh
neak lsek craən kat tlay kpəəh, haəy neak tijn sapbaay niŋ taa tlay.
kʰao ?aav niv haaj tumnəəp tlay nah, tae mien moot s?aat toan
sa?may haəy məənuh koo niv tae tijn.

Unit Seven

mhoop ?aahaa nīŋ
p^hoocea?niyea?t^haan

មហោបារនិងក្រាសនីយដ្ឋាន

Food and restaurants



In this unit you will learn how to:

- say what Cambodians eat for breakfast, lunch, and dinner
- invite someone to eat out
- order food and drinks at a restaurant
- express like and dislike
- use expressions **rīi**, **tumnee**, **hav**, **yōok**, **?aoy**, and **cie muəy**
- read and write words with subscripts



Dialogue 1



Eating breakfast at a friend's house (**Audio 1.60**)

Phanna (A) invites Danny (B) to have breakfast at his house. Listen to them talking about having a typical Cambodian breakfast.

-
- A: ?aeŋ caŋ nam ?ey klah prik nih?
B: som kaafee mōok sən.
A: kaafee kmav rīi kaafew tik dah koo?
B: kaafee kmav haøy dak skaə ?aoy craən mōok.
A: yōok babaa rīi mi koncap?
B: ?aeŋ mien babaa trøy tee?
A: mien tae babaa saa cie muəy trøy njət rīi pōcə tie ciən.
B: kñom cool cət babaa saa cie muəy pōcə tie ciən. coh ?aeŋ?

A: ក្រុម cool ចោរបាយការកីឡាមួយទ្វេរូត់.

B: ?ខ្សោយលេវក្រុមតិនាន.

A: ឯងចង់ប្រាំអីខ្លះ៖ត្រីកនេះ៖?

B: សុំកាប្រឈមកសិន។

A: កាប្រឈមខ្លួន ឬកាប្រឈមថែរោះគោរ?

B: កាប្រឈមខ្លួន ហើយដាក់ស្តូរអោយត្រីន។

A: យកបបរ ឬមិនពួរប៉ុណ្ណោះ?

B: ឯងមានបបត្រីទេ?

A: មានតែបបសប្រាំជាមួយត្រីដៃត ឬពងទាថ្ងៃន។

B: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តបបសជាមួយពងទាថ្ងៃន។ ចុំឯងណា?

A: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តបាយកកជាមួយត្រីដៃត។

B: តុល្យខ្ញុំយុនណាស់។

Vocabulary

A
C
B

kaafee	កាប្រឈ	coffee
kaafee kmav	កាប្រឈខ្លួន	black coffee
tik dah koo	ទីកដោះគោ	milk
kaafee tik dah koo	កាប្រឈទីកដោះគោ	coffee with milk
dak	ដាក់	to put
?aoy craen	អោយត្រីន	to give a lot
ycook tae	យកតែ	to take only
babaa	បបរ	rice soup, porridge
babaa trèy	បបរត្រី	fish rice soup
trèy ឯត់	ត្រីដៃត	dried salted fish
baow moan (baow tie)	ពងមាន់ (ពងទាហ)	chicken egg (duck egg)
cien	ធ្វែន	to fry something
?anj	អាំង	to grill, to roast, to barbecue
cool cət	ចូលចិត្ត	to like, to prefer
baay kooak	បាយកកិ	cold rice, leftover rice (from a previous meal)
klien	យុនាន	to be hungry



Language points

The word baay បាយ primarily means ‘cooked rice,’ as opposed to ?aaŋkaa អាយកា ‘uncooked rice grain.’ dam baay ដំបាយ implies to cook rice, but tvøe baay means to make food similar to tvøe mhoop ត្រួយប៉ប. Colloquially, haanj baay ហានជាបាយ is ‘restaurant,’ as opposed to the formal word p^hoocea?niiyea?t^haan ភាគធីនឹមីយដ្ឋាន. Cambodians must have baay បាយ ‘rice,’ but not num p?an នីមិប៉ង ‘bread,’ for their meal in order to be satisfied with what they are eating.

The expression kaafee tik dah koo កាហើឱកដោះគោ ‘coffee with cow’s milk’ refers to prepared coffee with condensed milk, as opposed to fresh milk.

Traditionally the word babaa បបាត់ denotes the social class of the person consuming it. In the past, rich people regularly had cooked rice, while poor people could afford only rice soup, but nowadays, it just means ‘rice soup’ and its various dishes, such as babaa saa បបាត់សាត់ ‘plain rice soup,’ babaa trey បបាត់ត្រូវ ‘plain rice soup with fish meat,’ and babaa moan បបាត់មានឯក ‘plain rice porridge with chicken meat.’

The term kuy tiev គូយទោវ primarily means ‘uncooked rice noodle.’ Its colloquial form here refers to ‘freshly prepared rice noodle’ with assorted condiments, a favorite breakfast dish of many Cambodians.

The word mii មី primarily means ‘uncooked egg noodle.’ Here the word refers to the freshly prepared, ready-to-eat type. The expression mii kancap មីកញ៉ប៊ ‘packaged dried noodle’ here refers to the already prepared ‘ramen noodles’ and not the fresh one.

The word ciен ចៀន ‘to fry something’ is different than c^haa ឆា ‘to fry with some mixed vegetable or meat,’ however, when used after meat, fish, or vegetable it implies the dish itself, such as trey ciен ត្រូវចៀន ‘fried fish,’ sac moan ciен សាច់មានចៀន ‘fried chicken,’ versus mii c^haa sac koo មីឆាសាច់គោ ‘stir-fried noodle with beef,’ moan c^haa knay មានឆានាក្សី ‘stir-fried chicken with ginger,’ or bnlae c^haa បន្លេឆា ‘stir-fried vegetable.’

Cambodians normally eat with a slaap priе ស្វោប្រឈរ ‘spoon,’ rather than a saam សំម ‘fork’ and kambet កំបិត ‘knife,’ because most of their meat is well-chopped or cut into small pieces already. They will use cankəh ចំណុះ or ចំណុះ៖ ‘chopsticks’ if they eat noodles.

Exercise 1 (Audio 1.61)

Read these statements. Make them into question statements with *rīi* and the word in parentheses. Sample answer: ?aeŋ cool cət kaafee rīi tae?



- 1 ?aeŋ cool cət kaafee. (tae)
- 2 knom ñam sac. (?at)
- 3 saŋsaa yɔɔk baay. (num p?an)
- 4 paa dak skaa. (tik dah koo)
- 5 prapvən koat tñj kuy tiev. (babaa)
- 6 mak ciən trøy. (sac moan)
- 7 kuu dñdñŋ koat hav baay cʰaa. (kuy tiev cʰaa)
- 8 koat ñam baay niŋ çanjkəh. (slaap prie)

Exercise 2



Select the correct words from the right-hand list and complete these statements.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 ?aeŋ cool cət babaa saa cie muəy _____. | a koon koat |
| 2 miŋ yɔɔk kaafee cie muəy _____. | b pɔɔŋ tie ciən |
| 3 look taa ñam _____ niŋ çanjkəh. | c kuy tiev |
| 4 kruəsaa koat ñam baay niŋ _____. | d kruu pæt |
| 5 baŋŋ srøy tiv psaa cie muəy _____. | e slaap prie |
| 6 koat mien nat cie muəy _____. | f tik dah koo |

Dialogue 2



Choosing a restaurant (Audio 1.62)



Ann (A) is visiting her friend, Phanna (B) in Phnom Penh. It is dinner time and they are talking about eating out. Listen to their conversation.

-
- A: Phanna klien tee?
- B: klien klanj, prueh ?ot ñam ?ey taŋ pii prik.
- A: caŋ ñam niv pteah rīi tiv krav? ñam mhoop ?ey klah?
- A: mhoop cen, mhoop tʰay, rīi mhoop ?iitaalii?
- B: niŋ caŋ mhoop ?iitaalii.
- A: tae knom cool cət mhoop tʰay. cie pi?saeh ñoam kriəŋ sa?mot.

- B: mhoop t^hay h^ol tv^he ?ao^h k^hnom c^hii p^hoeh.
A: ?iic^h tiv haan baay kmae vijn. min tlay haey c^hajan ti^het.
B: tiv! tae ?aen paav.
- A: ជាន់ណាយ្ញានទេ?
B: យ្ញានខ្លាំង ប្រាង៖អត់ញ្ចាំងអីតាំងពីព្រឹក។
A: ចង់ញ្ចាំនៅផ្ទះ បុទ្ទិករោគ? ញ្ចាំមួបអីខ្លះ?
A: មួបចិន មួបថែ បុមុជាអីតាមី?
B: និកចង់មួបអីតាមី។
A: តើខ្លួលចិត្តមួបថែ ជាតិសេសញ្ចាំគ្រឹងសមុទ្រ។
B: មួបថែហើល ធ្វើអោយខ្លួយឱ្យពេះ។
A: អីដឹងទៅហាងបាយខ្មែរវិញ។ មិនធ្វើហើយឆ្លាត់ទេតារោ។
B: ទេ! តើជួរដាក់រោ។



Vocabulary

klien	យ្ញាន	to be hungry
pruəh	ប្រាង៖	because
taŋ pii	តាំងពី	since
haan baay ?iitaalii/t ^h ay	ហាង(បាយ)អីតាមី/ថែ	Italian restaurant/ Thai restaurant
p ^h oocea?niiyea?t ^h aan	ភោជនីយដ្ឋាន	restaurant (formal)
nik caŋ	និកចង់	to desire
mhoop	មួប	meal, food
cie pi?saeh	ជាតិសេស	especially
ŋoam kriəŋ sa?mot	ញ្ចាំគ្រឹងសមុទ្រ	seafood salad
h ^o l	ហើល(ហើល)	burning hot (as in the taste of hot pepper)
c ^h ii p ^h oeh	ឈើពេះ	to have a stomachache
c ^h ajan	ឆ្លាត់	tasty, delicious
paav	ដាក់រោ	to volunteer to pay for the meal

Exercise 3



Read these statements aloud. Make them into questions to ask someone.

- 1 knom ?at toan þam baay prik tee.
- 2 vie tiv baay cie muøy knom.
- 3 mhoop ?iitaalii ?at tlay tee.
- 4 koat tvøø mhoop cøn niø mhoop kmae.
- 5 baay cʰaa niv haao nih cñaj nah.
- 6 koat ník cñj þam kriøø sa?mot.

Exercise 4



Select the correct words from the second list and complete these statements.

- | | |
|---|-----------------|
| 1 knom hav _____ dak sac koo mæcaan. | a kmae |
| 2 mak cool cøt þam tae mhoop _____ tee. | b tvøø ?aoy |
| 3 vie tiv baay ?iitaalii cie muøy _____. | c kuy tiev cʰaa |
| 4 kruøsa koat _____ baay knom. | d hav |
| 5 þoam kriøø sa?mot _____ knom cʰii pøeh. | e paav |
| 6 kmeerø nih _____ moan ?aø mæcaan. | f knom |

Dialogue 3



Ordering food (**Audio 1.63**)



At lunchtime, Ann (A) who doesn't like to cook, is taking her friend, Phanna (B) to a Cambodian restaurant. They are ordering food.

Listen to their conversation with the waiter (C).

-
- A: mien tok tumnee samrap pii neak tee?
- B: som mæøl bøncii mhoop.
- C: look cñj hav mhoop ?øy klah?
- A: Phanna ?aø cuøy hav mhoop ?aoy knie pʰaan.
- B: yœø moan ?aø, þoam sac trœy haøy niø samlaa mcuu.
- C: samlaa mcuu sac ?øy?
- B: sac cruuk, haøy yœø banlae cʰaa mæcaan tiøt.
- C: yœø baay saa riøt baay cʰaa.
- A: mien baay ?aøkaa samroop tee?

- C: mien. coh yɔɔk pʰeehsaccea? ʔəy?
- B: yɔɔk biə məkampon, niŋ sraa səa məkaev.
- B: baŋ?aeŋ yəəŋ yɔɔk plae cʰəə niŋ kaareem.
- A: som yɔɔk mhoop ?aoŋ cʰap mook. yeŋ ?at mien peel crean tee. ?aa kun.
- A: មានគុំនេរសប្តាប់ពីនាក់ទេ?
- B: សុំមែលបញ្ជីមួយ។
- C: លោកចង់ហៅមួយអីខ្លះ?
- A: ជាន់ណា ឯងដូយហៅមួយអាយត្រាចង។
- B: យកមាន់អាំង ញ្ចាំសាច់ត្រី ហៅឱយនិងសម្បម្ពរ។
- C: សម្បម្ពសាច់អី?
- B: សាច់ដ្ឋីក ហៅឱយយកបន្ទាម្នានឡើត។
- C: យកបាយសប្បបាយនា?
- A: មានបាយអង្គសំរួលទេ?
- C: មាន។ ចុះយកកេសដ្ឋានអី?
- B: យកបៀវមួយកំបុង និងស្រាសមួយកំរ។
- B: បង្កើមយើងយកដ្ឋីយើងនិងការឃម។
- A: សុំយកមួយអាយត្រាប់មក។ យើងអត់មានពេលប្រើនទេ។
អវគុណ។



Vocabulary

tok	តុ	table
baŋcii mhoop	បញ្ជីមួយ	menu
caŋ hav	ចង់ហៅ	to want to order food
cuəy hav	ជូយហៅ	to help order food
moan ?aŋ	មាន់អាំង	grilled chicken
ŋoam sac trøy	ញ្ចាំសាច់ត្រី	fish salad
samlao mceuu	សម្បម្ពរ	sour soup
sac koo cʰaa	សាច់គោត្រា	stir-fried beef

mecaan (muəy caan)	ម្វាន (មួយចាន)	a plate, bowl, dish
baay saa	បាយសា	plain cooked rice
baay c ^h aa	បាយឆា	fried rice
baay ?onkaa samroop	បាយអង្គរសំរួប	brown rice
p ^h eehsaccea?	តើស្តី:	drink, beverage
biə, biiyee	បូរ, បិយេរ	beer
sraa krahaam	ស្រាក្រហាម	red wine
mekaev (muəy kaev)	ម្វោរ (មួយកោរ)	one glass
baŋ?aeem	បង្គោម	dessert
c ^h ap	ភាប់	quickly
kaareem	ការ៉ែម	ice cream

Language points



In Unit 4, the expression tumnee ទំនើន់ ‘free,’ when used with people, could mean to be free (not working), available, or single; however, when used with a thing or a place, it implies it is unoccupied or empty, as in:

pteah nih niv tumnee.

ផ្ទះនេះនៅទំនើន់។

This house is still unoccupied.

t^hejay traŋ ?aeŋ tumnee tee?

ថ្ងៃគ្រោងនៅទំនើន់ទេ?

Are you free at noon time?

koat niv tumnee.

គាត់នៅទំនើន់។

She is single or available.

The use of verb hav ហែវ ‘to call, name, to order’ could be used with a thing or a person:

nih hav ?ey?

នេះហែវអី?

What do you call this?

mae hav knom tiv pteah.

មែបោក្នុងទៅផ្ទះ។

Mother calls me to go home.

koat hav kuy tiev.

តាត់បោកឲ្យទាក់។

He orders noodle soup.

The use of the verb *yɔok* យូក ‘to take, bring, to need’ could be used in various ways:

koat yɔok koon tiv saalaa.

តាត់យកកូនទៅសាលា។

She takes the kids to school.

koat yɔok cət knom.

តាត់យកចិត្តខ្សោះ។

She tries to please me.

koat yɔok sraa məkaev.

តាត់យកស្រាមួយក់។

He takes a glass of wine.

The use of verb *mien* មិន ‘to have, own, to exist, there are’ could be used after a subject, or without a subject:

look mien koon craən.

លោកមានកូនប្រើន។

You have many children.

koat mien mhoop cñaj.

តាត់មានមួបឆ្ងាត់។

She has delicious food.

mien num niŋ plae cʰəə.

មាននំនិងដ្ឋែលើ។

There are cakes and fruit.

mien num p?an̥ ləək.

មានលក់នំបីង។

There is bread for sale.

The word ?aoy ເກົ່າຍ້ (ເຖິງ) could be used as a verb, ‘to give, allow,’ or as a preposition to mean ‘for’:

koat ?aoy luy neak bamraeø.

ຄ້າຕໍ່ເກົ່າຍ້ລູ່ຍໍ້ຮູ້ກົບເນື້າ

She pays the waitress.

?aoy moan ?aŋ koat.

ເກົ່າຍ້ມານີ້ກຳຈັດຄ້າຕໍ່າ

Give him grilled chicken.

som c^haa baay ?aoy knom.

ສົ່ງສາຫະຍ້ເກົ່າຍ້ຫຼຸ້າ

Please stir-fry the rice for me.

som hav mhoop ?aoy koat.

ສົ່ງເບົາຜູ້ບໍລິບເກົ່າຍ້ຄ້າຕໍ່າ

Please order food for him.

Exercise 5



Read these statements aloud. Make them into questions to ask someone.

1 som cam dap pram nietii.

2 sac koo c^haa nih pray nah.

3 vie ?aoy sraa saa mədqap tiv koat.

4 koat yɔɔk baay saa məcaan.

5 tñay nih koat ?aoy ?aen tumnee.

6 koat rɔɔk kanleaŋ ?aŋkuy.

Exercise 6 (Audio 1.64)



Read these question statements aloud. How would you answer them?

1 yɔɔk sac moan ?aŋ riø sac koo ?aŋ?

2 samla mcuu nih høl tee?

3 haaj nuh lœk mhoop cœn tlay tee?

4 look srøy ?ot pi?sa sac mœen tee?

5 yiey tñj baŋ?aem ?aoy cav riø?

6 yɔɔk num baaran riø yɔɔk plae c^høø?





Exercise 7

You are at a restaurant with your American friend. This is a set menu for today's lunch. Tell your friend the name of the dishes you have ordered and their prices (#3, #5, #9, #11, and #13).

1	baay c ^h aa sac moan	\$၂၀.၀၀
2	mii c ^h aa kriəŋ sa?mot	\$၅.၀၀
3	lok-lak	\$၄.၀၀
4	trəy ciən	\$၂၀.၀၀
5	bənlæe c ^h aa	\$၂.၀၀
6	moan ?arj rii sac koo ?arj	\$၂၀.၀၀
7	noam sac trəy rii sac moan	\$၂၀.၅၀
8	moan c ^h aa kṇəy	\$၂.၅၀
9	samlāa mcuu sac trəy	\$၂၀.၅၀
10	samlāa mcuu kriəŋ sac koo	\$၅.၀၀
11	baay saa	\$၉.၀၀
12	coka-cola	\$၉.၀၀
13	?aŋkɔɔ bie məkampoŋ (buy 1 get 1 free)*	\$၉.၅၀

* tjin muəy t^haem muəy ទិញម្មៃយ៉ាចម្មៃយ៉ា ‘buy one get one free’.

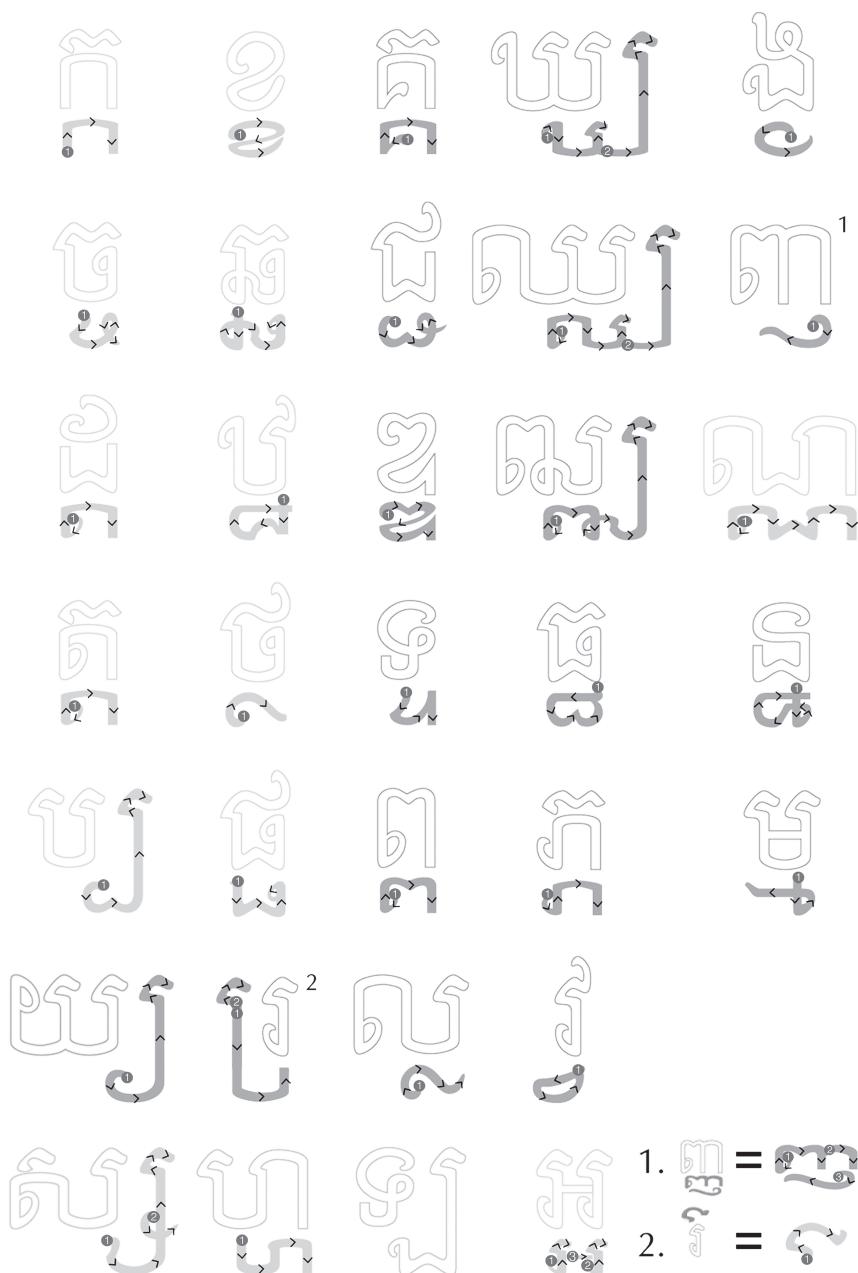


Reading and writing Cambodian subscripts

In this unit you will continue learning to write and read Cambodian subscripts. These subscripts are called *ceen* ?aksaa ជីងអក្សារ ‘consonant feet.’ Some of these subscript symbols resemble their superscript counterpart ‘parents’ and some are different: ឃុំ ឃូុំ សុំ ផុំ ដុំ បុំ ផុំ ឡុំ នុំ មុំ បុំ លុំ ពុំ.

Practice writing the subscript starting from the dot numbered 1, 2, 3, and so on (see [Table 11](#)).

Table 11 How to write subscript symbols





Exercise 8

Write the Cambodian subscript of the first register consonants (1–10) and the second register consonants (11–20).

1 c ^h aa	11 k ^o o
2 paa	12 p ^h oo
3 daa	13 yoo
4 saa	14 voo
5 kaa	15 moo
6 ?aa	16 t ^o o
7 k ^h aa	17 r ^o o
8 p ^h aa	18 c ^h oo
9 naa	19 cuu
10 haa	20 coo



Excercise 9 (Audio 1.65)

These are words with subscripts that you have learned in this unit. Practice writing them in Cambodian script.



1 krav	6 c ^h muəh
2 pruəh	7 pray
3 kney	8 cnam
4 pdəy	9 kruu
5 mcuu	10 l?aa



Exercise 10 (Audio 1.66)



Identify words with subscripts from this unit. Draw a circle around the subscripts. Match the meaning of the Cambodian words in group 1 with the transliteration words in group 2.

a ឃី	b ឃ្លេះ	c ឃ្លឹវិ	d ឃ្លុម	e ឃ្លូប
f ស្រីបា	g ស្រីកិ	h ស្រីត	i ស្វាយ	j ស្រីប់
1 p?aem	2 tlay	3 cruuk	4 srah	5 svaay
6 kcey	7 pteah	8 mhoop	9 kmae	10 sraa

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.1; Bonus audio 13)



Use the audio to listen to this passage. Draw a circle around the words with subscripts. Rewrite those subscripts in your notebook.

យប់នេះ ខ្ញុំឱ្យលាតាំងបាយអីចិនយើងទៅហាងបាយខ្មែរ ខ្ញុំ
ធ្វើឯកសារមួយខ្លួន ត្រូវបានដោះស្រាយពីការបង្ហាញ
មានសម្រាប់បាយអីចិនសម្រាប់សាថ់គោ។ បង្ហាញស្រីខ្ញុំអាត់ព្យារៈសាថ់។ តាត់
ហេរិយកណុជាទាមចំណែកនៃបន្ទាន់ និងបាយអង្គរសំរួលមួយចាន់។
ខ្ញុំព្យាយកសារបន្ទាន់ មួយកំបុង ហេរិយកាត់កំព្យាយក្រហមមួយ។
យើងព្យាយកសារបន្ទាន់ បង្ហាញស្រីខ្ញុំមានលុយប្រើប្រាស់
ហេរិយកចិត្តណ្ឌ។ តាត់បានខ្ញុំ។

yup nih, knom kcil dom baay, ?iicəŋ yəəŋ tiv haaj baay kmae.
knom cool cət mhoop kmae, prəəh vie miñ tlay haəy cñaj tıet. knom
hav yoɔk maon cʰaa knəy niñ samlaa mcuu sac koo. baaj knom ?at
nam sac. koat hav yoɔk pɔɔŋ tie ciən, banlae cʰaa, niñ baay ?aŋkaa
samroop məcaan. knom jaam sraa biə məkəmponj haəy koat jaam
sraa krahaam məkaev. yəəŋ jaam baaj?aem kaareem ciet svaay. baaj
srəy knom mien luy craən haəy cət l?aa. koat paav knom.

Unit Eight

robbaa rook sii niŋ kaanje

រប់រកស្ថិនិងការជារ

Vocations and employment



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about certain occupations
- apply for a job
- use expressions related to professions and employments
- use words and expressions with **neak**, **cien**, **rook sii**, **baek**, **kaanje**, **pii mun . . . kraoy**, or **pii damboon . . . kraoy**
- read and write words or expressions related to vocations
- read and write monosyllabic words with subscripts CCV or CCVC



Dialogue 1



Discussion about work (**Audio 2.2**)

Vireak (A) ran into Vanna (B), whom he has not seen for many years. They exchange information about their family and current employment. Listen to their conversation.

A: eh, yəəŋ tloap cuəp knie pii mun məən tee?

B: niŋ haəy, niv saalaa cumnuəŋ pram cnaam mun.

A: ?ah Vanna, som nae noam ?oay skoal prapuən knom.

- c: ក្រុម cmuh Sokhom. riikriey daoy baan cuəp look. krom cie day kuu rəbah koat dae.
- B: ?សំគាល់ mien muk rəbaa ?vəy dae?
- A: យេរោន baan baek haan katdee samliek bambaek.
- B: ?សំគាល់ rəbaa rəok sii nih yaan məc dae?
- A: ?oo! rəok sii kaap nah, pruh Sokhom cie cien katdee lbey mneak. coh ?aen viñ?
- B: ch'up tvəə kaa ?aoy roat, haey baan baek haan lsək plae c'həə niv k'haan kraoy psaa soriya.
- A: lsək baan yaan məc dae?
- B: lsək dac nah. rəok luy baan craən cie tvəə kaa ?aoy kee.
- A: məen haey yəer təv tvəə kaanje naa dael yəer cool cət.
- B: krom cool cət niñ kaanje nih nah.
- A: អេ យើងត្រាប់ដូបត្តាតីមុនមែនទេ?
- B: ហើងហើយ នៅសាលាជំនួញប្រាំឆ្នាំមុន។
- A: ការណ្ឌាត សុវត្ថិភាពរាយស្អាល់ប្រពន្ធដឹង។
- C: ខ្មែះសុខុមាត វិកាយដោយបានដូបលោក។
ខ្ញុំជាដែចុរស់តាត់ដើរ។
- B: អត្ថិថិជ មានមុខរបរអ្នីដើរ?
- A: យើងបានបើកហាងកាត់ដែរសំណោះកំពង់ពាក់។
- B: អត្ថិថិជរកស្តីនេះយើងម៉ែចដើរ?
- A: អ្នកសិកបណ្តាល់ ព្រោះសុខុមជាទាងកាត់ដែរលីម្ពាក់។
ចុះឯងវិញ?
- B: ឈប់ធ្វើការអោយដូ ហើយបានបើកហាង
លក់ផ្លូវយើងនៅខាងក្រោមផ្លូវស្តីឃើញ។
- A: លក់បានយើងម៉ែចដើរ?
- B: លក់ដាច់ណាស់។ កែលូយបានប្រើបានធ្វើការអោយតែ។
- A: មែនហើយយើងត្រូវធ្វើការដោរណាដែលយើងចូលចិត្ត។
- B: ខ្ញុំចូលចិត្តនឹងការដោរនេះណាស់។



Vocabulary

saalaa cumnuəŋ	សាលាជាត់នូវព្រៃ	commercial school
?oay skoal	អោយ ស្នាល់	to get to know
day kuu	ដៅគូ	partner
rəbaa rook sii	រប់រក សិរី	occupation, profession
muk rəbaa	មុខរបា	type of jobs, professions
haan katdee	ហាងកាត់ដែរ	tailor shop
rook sii kaap	រកសិរីកប	to succeed in business
cien	ជាង	artisan
katdee	កាត់ដែរ	to cut and sew
lbey	លូយី	popular, famous
lsek dac	លក់ជាប់	selling so well
rook luy	រកលូយ	earn money
rxəh niv srəəl	សំនេរត្រួសល	to live comfortably
kaanje	ការងារ	work, job



Language points

The expression *rəbaa rook sii* រប់រក សិរី ‘job, profession’ is mostly used with the verb *prakaap* ប្រកាប ‘to do something,’ meaning ‘to be involved in a profession.’ But the shortened form *rook sii* រក សិរី ‘to make/earn a living’ is used a lot more often, especially in conversation.

The following combinations are common expressions relating to doing business: *rook sii cool knie* រក សិរី ចូលគ្មាន ‘to do business together, to be in joint business,’ *rook sii kaap* រក សិរី កប ‘to be successful, to succeed in business,’ *rook sii k^haat* រក សិរី ខាត and *rook sii cool daəm* រក សិរី លើដើម have similar meanings: ‘to incur loss, to lose/fail in business.’

neak អ្នក and *cien* ជាង are commonly used in combination with nouns or verbs to define professions in which people are involved. Although very close in meaning, compounds formed with *neak* អ្នក simply denote a job done by a person. For example: *neak srae* អ្នក ត្រួសប្រើ ‘peasant, farmer,’ *neak cumnuəŋ* អ្នក ជាតិនូវព្រៃ ‘trader, merchant,’ *neak*

roatt^ha?kaa or neak rieckaa អ្នករៀប្ដារ៉ា 'the civil servant, government official,' neak lsək doo អ្នកលីកកុងវេ 'salesperson,' neak baek taksii អ្នកបើកតាក់សិរី 'taxi driver,' neak neesaat អ្នកនេសាតិ 'fisherman,' neak tombaan អ្នកពម្ពាបូ 'weaver,' and neak riən អ្នករៀន 'student.'

Compounds formed with cien ជាង generally imply a certain level of technical skill required of the person performing the action, and also specific materials involved in the job. For example: cien katdee ជាងកាត់ដៅវេ 'tailor,' cien c^həə ជាងតិះ 'carpenter,' cien daek ជាងដែក 'ironsmith,' cien mieh ជាងមាតិ 'goldsmith,' cien laan ជាងឡាន 'auto mechanic,' cien maasiin ជាងម៉ាសិន 'mechanic,' cien kat sak ជាងកាត់សក 'barber,' cien tvəə pteah ជាងត្រួចុះ 'construction worker,' cien kumnuu ជាងគំនួរ 'painter,' and cien camlak ជាងចម្លាក់ 'sculptor.' A homonym of ជាង 'artisan, craftsman' is the particle ជាន់ used in expressions to make comparison, as in:

Ihoŋ nih p?aem cien kee.

ឈ្មោះនឹង ថ្មីមជាងគេ ។

This papaya is the sweetest.

?aeŋ k^hbaeh cien knom.

ជាងខ្ពស់ជាងខ្ពស់ ។

You are taller than me.

vie mien luy craən cien ?aeŋ.

កម្មានលូយប្រចិនជាងជាង ។

She has more money than you.

The word baek បើក 'open' combined with other words has different meanings. For example:

knom baek prak k^hae.

ខ្ពស់បើកប្រាក់ខ្លា ។

I get the monthly salary.

som baek pləəŋ p^haoŋ.

សូមបើកត្រួចុះជាង ។

Please turn on the light.

koat baek day ?aoy knom tiv pteah.

គាត់បើកដោឃ្លួចខ្លោច្ចោម្ចោះ ។

He allows me to go home.



Exercise 1

Suppose someone asks you these questions (in column 1). How would you respond, using the correct words or expressions in column 2?

Column 1

- 1 haaj cieŋ kat sak neak niv ?ae naa?
- 2 koat yɔ̄ok mootoo tiv ?aoy neak naa cuəh cul?
- 3 baŋŋ ?aeŋ rɔ̄ok sii tvəə ?ey ?aoy krom hun nih?
- 4 paa koat rɔ̄ok sii tvəə ?ey niv srok srae?
- 5 look srəy niv knoŋ haaj cafee nih cie neak naa?

Column 2

- | |
|--------------|
| cəmkaa |
| tvəə cumnuəŋ |
| vihsva?kaa |
| psaa tməy |
| cieŋ maasiin |



Exercise 2

Read these questions aloud. Then write the questions to fit the statements, and also make them into negation statements.

- 1 knom cie cieŋ camlak.
- 2 baék haaj cafee niv kraoy saa?rakmuntii ciet.
- 3 ruup camlak knom ləuk dac nah.
- 4 mien teehsa?caa mook tij roal tñay.
- 5 kee cool cat ruup camlak ?apsa?raa nah.



Dialogue 2



Part-time jobs (**Audio 2.3**)

This is a conversation between friends Vanna (A) and Sophal (B) who are talking about their jobs.

-
- A: suəsdəy səmlaj k̄aan cuəp knie yuu haey, ?aeŋ sok sapbaay cie tee?
- B: knie sok sapbaay cie tee. ?eyləv Vanna tvəə kaa niv ?ae naa?
- A: knie tvəə cie vihsva?kaa ?aoy krom hun ?aekcɔ̄on muəy. coh Sophal ?aeŋ?
- B: niv tae tvəə cie kruu baŋriən dodael tae prak k̄ae təc peek, trəv rɔ̄ok sii krav bantʰaem.

- A: ?Qajcəəj kaanje bant^haem tvəə ?œy dae?
- B: knie baæk taksii haœy baœ kmien pñiœv, knie cuœy mae lœk kriœj sañhaarœm.
- A: coh rœbaa baæk taksii yaœj mœc dae?
- B: cool cœt nah, prœh ?aac noam pñiœv daœ lœœj, haœy baan hat niyiey ?Qajkleeh tiœt p^hœœj.
- A: ?Qajcəəj mœc kaa min c^hup tvəə kruu tiv?
- B: rœbaa baæk taksii sapbaay tae baan tae mœrœh.
- B: cie vihsva?kaa, ?œœj pit cie baan prak k^hae craœn haœy, mœœn tee?
- A: baan prak k^hae craœn mœœn, tae hot nah.
- A: សូស្តីសម្ងាត់ នានដួបត្បាយូរហើយ ឯងសុខសប្បាយជាទេ?
- B: ត្បាសុខសប្បាយទេ តុល្យវិណ្ឌាណធ្វើការនៅឯណា?
- A: ត្បាណធ្វើជាសិស្សករអោយក្រុមហ៊ុនឯកជនមួយ។ ចុះសុជលឯង?
- B: នៅតែវើជាគ្រុបង្រៀនដិជល តែប្រាក់ខេតិចពេក គ្រុរកសុវត្ថិភាពនៅមួយ។
- A: អញ្ញីនការងារបន្ថែមធ្វើអីដើរ?
- B: ត្បាបើកតាក់សី ហើយបើត្បានត្រូវ ត្បាបីយ ិចលក់គ្រឹងសង្គមិម។
- A: ចុះរបរបើកតាក់សីវិញ្ញូយានមេចដើរ?
- B: ចូលចិត្តឯណាស់ ព្រោះនាំត្រូវដើរលេង ហើយបានហាត់និយាយអន់ត្រូសទ្រូតដង។
- A: អញ្ញីនមេចកំមិនលយប់វើគ្រុទេ?
- B: បរបើកតាក់សីសប្បាយតែបានតម្លៃយស់។
- B: ជាសិស្សករ ឯងពិតជាបានប្រាក់ខេតិចនៅហើយ មនទេ?
- A: បានប្រាក់ខេតិចនៅមេន តែហាត់ឯណាស់។



Vocabulary

prak k ^h ae	ប្រាក់ខែ	salary
təc	តិច	little, few, small
?aeka?coon	ឯកជន	private
kaanje ?aeka?coon	ការងារឯកជន	private job
krom hun ?aeka?coon	ក្រុមហ៊ុនឯកជន	private company
riok sii krav	រកស្តីក្រោះ / ការងារបន្ថែម	to have a part-time job, to moonlight
kriəŋ sonhaarem	គ្រឿងសង្ឃារិម	furniture
hat	ហាត់	to practice
mərʊəh	មួយសំរាប់	just to survive, barely live
hat	ហាត់	to be tired



Language point

The following elements combined with kaanje ការងារ refer to specific jobs: kaanje ?aeka?coon ការងារឯកជន ‘private employment,’ kaanje roat ការងាររដ្ឋិស ‘civil or government service.’ kaanje krav ការងារក្រោះ ‘outside [office] job’ has a similar meaning to kaanje bant^heam ការងារបន្ថែម ‘additional job,’ when an individual already has a full-time job.

koat mien kaanje krav tvəə.

She has an outside job.

peel yup, knom tvəə kaanje bant^heam.

At night, I do a part-time job.

The expression baan tae mərʊəh បានតែមួយសំរាប់ ‘just enough to survive, enough to live on’ means the earnings are not much, or only enough to pay for food. The opposite is rəəh niv srəəl សំនៅត្រូវបាន ‘to live comfortably, to have a comfortable life.’

tvəə srae baan tae mərʊəh.

Growing rice provides just enough to live.

tvəə kruu pəet rəəh niv baan srəəl.

Working as doctor provides a comfortable life.

Exercise 3



Read the Cambodian words below. Use them to answer these questions.

- | | |
|---|----------------|
| 1 neak tvəə kaanje ɻəy niv haarj
kʰao ɻaa v noh? | a អ្នកលោកទ្រពន |
| 2 paa koat rɔɔk sii tvəə ɻəy niv
krom hun nih? | b មេដ្ឋែះ |
| 3 ɻəyləv neak tvəə kaanje ɻəy? | c អ្នកភាពជំរើ |
| 4 pdəy koat cie cieŋ ɻəy? | d ជំនួញ |
| 5 prapwən ɻaeŋ tvəə ɻəy? | e ជាងជំនួរ |

Exercise 4 (Audio 2.4)



Listen to Dialogue 2 again. Answer the following questions.



- 1 Vanna tvəə kaanje ɻəy? niv ɻae naa?
- 2 neak naa tvəə kaanje bantʰeam? haəy tvəə ɻəy klah?
- 3 kaanje Vanna yaan məc klah?
- 4 Sophal cuəy neak naa ləek kriəy sañhaarəm?
- 5 Sophal cool cət rɔbaa baək taksii tee. haet ɻəy?
- 6 rɔbaa baək taksii yaan məc klah?



Dialogue 3



Applying for a job (Audio 2.5)

Listen to the conversation between an applicant (A) who is interested in applying for a job and the secretary (B) of a school.

- A: ɻaaloo, saalaa nih rɔɔk kruu bañriən pʰiesaa ɻaŋkleh mœen tee?
- B: mœen haəy.
- A: taə trəv kaa kruu ponmaan neak?
- B: yəəŋ trəv kaa pii neak.
- A: trəv miən sañnaabot ɻəy dae?
- B: pa?rəŋnaabot ri? ɻanu?bandit kʰaaŋ pʰiesaa ɻaŋkleeh.
- A: coh bat pi?saot?
- B: trəv mien bat pi?saot bañriən yaan təc pii cnam.
- A: cʰup tɔtuəl piek niv tʃay naa dae?

- B: niv t̄ajay can kraoy.
- B: som yook pravoat ruup sañkʰaep niŋ ruup t̄aat məsanlək pʰaaŋ.
- A: ?aa kun craən. cumriep liə.
- B: cumriep liə.
- A: អាស្សី សាលានេះវិញត្រូវបានភាសាអង់ស៊ិមនទេ?
- B: មែនហើយ។
- A: តើត្រូវការគ្រប់ខ្លាននាក់?
- B: យើងត្រូវការពីនាក់។
- A: ត្រូវមានសញ្ញាបត្រដីដោរ?
- B: បើសញ្ញាបត្របុអនុបណ្ឌិតខាងភាសាអង់គ្លេស។
- A: ចុះបទពិសោធន៍?
- B: ត្រូវមានបទពិសោធន៍បានយើងតិចពីរឆ្នាំ។
- A: ឈប់ទួលពាក្យនៅថ្ងៃណាដី?
- B: នៅថ្ងៃចន្ទ្រក្រាយ។
- B: សុំយកប្រភើរបស់ខ្លួនបញ្ចូលយសនឹក និងរបចំពម្លេយសនឹកជង។
- A: អរគុណប្រើន ។ ដម្រាបលាតា។
- B: ដម្រាបលាតា។



Vocabulary

រូក	វិក	to look for, search for
sañkhaabot	សញ្ញាបត្រ	degree
pa?rəŋñaabot	បើសញ្ញាបត្រ	Bachelor's degree
?anu?bandit	អនុបណ្ឌិត	Master's degree
bat pi?saot	បទពិសោធន៍	experience
cʰup	ឈប់	to stop; to be absent; stop
cʰup t̄otuəl piek	ឈប់ទួលពាក្យ	deadline
ruup t̄aat məsanlək	របចំពម្លេយសនឹក	one picture
pravoat ruup sañkʰaep	ប្រភើរបស់ផ្ទុក	curriculum vitae

Language point



The word neak អ្នក ‘you, person’ has many functions. Cambodians use this term neak ‘you’ as a neutral personal pronoun to indicate and show respect when they are not quite sure how to address their interlocutor. For example: neak tiv naa អ្នកទិនា ‘where are you going?’, neak naa moek អ្នកណាមក ‘who is coming?’

The connotation of neak អ្នក as ‘female’ has survived from middle Cambodian in the following two expressions: neak mdaay អ្នកម្តាយ ‘mother,’ neak kruu អ្នកគ្រូ ‘female teacher/instructor.’ neak also denotes politeness as in néak baan អ្នកបាន ‘elder sister,’ neak miñ អ្នកមីន់ ‘aunt.’

neak is also used in compounds with place names to indicate the area a person comes from, ‘a native/resident of.’ For example: neak siem riep អ្នកសៀមរ឵ ‘native of Siem Riep,’ neak pnum piñ អ្នកភ្នំពេញ ‘resident of Phnom Penh,’ neak takaev អ្នកតាកៅវ ‘native of Takeo province,’ neak kampoot អ្នកកំពត ‘native of Kampot province.’

neak srae អ្នកស្រោះ, literally ‘peasants,’ in some circumstances – especially as opposed to neak kron អ្នកក្រុង ‘city/town, urban dwellers’ – is used to convey a certain level of condescension.

Exercise 5



Suppose someone asks you the questions in column 1. How would you respond, using the correct words or expressions in column 2?

Column 1

- 1 neak cañ tvøø kaanje ?øy?
- 2 koat mien sqñnaabat ?øy?
- 3 kruu ?aenj mien bat pi?saot banriøn ponmaan cnam?
- 4 kee c^hup totuøl piek niv tñay naa?
- 5 peel dak piek roøk kaanje trøv mien ?øy?

Column 2

- | |
|------------------------------------|
| bøy cnam |
| pravoat ruup sañk ^h aep |
| tñay sok kraoy |
| neak kaasaet |
| pa?røñnaabat |



Exercise 6 (Audio 2.6)

Read these statements aloud, and turn them into negation statements.



- 1 som nae noam knom ?oay skoal neak cumnuəŋ nih.
- 2 vihsva?kaa noh tvøe kaa ?aoy krom hun nih mœen.
- 3 neak baek taksii mien bat pi?saot craen.
- 4 cieŋ tvøe pteah cool cøt kaanje nih nah.
- 5 cieŋ laan trøv røok sii krav banthaem tiøt.



Reading and writing words with subscripts

How to write monosyllabic words with subscripts

Words with subscripts are handwritten and typed on a computer keyboard using different processes. Here we focus on how a cluster is written by hand using this pattern: C₁C₂V (C₃) where C₁ is the initial consonant, C₂ the subscript consonant, V the vowel, and (C₃) the final consonant.

Start with the initial consonant, followed by the subscript, the vowel, and then the final consonant as shown in [Table 12](#).

Table 12 How to write C₁C₂V or C₁C₂VC₃ clusters

1	ក	+	ក		ក	kraa	to be poor
2	ត	+	ត	េ	តី	trøy	fish
3	ជ	+	ជ	េះ	ជោះ	pteah	house
4	លយ	+	ល	េះ	លើោះ	cmuəh	to be named
6	ច	ជ	ច	េ	ចង់	cbaŋ	to make war
7	ម	ន	ន	ឃ	មឃុប	mhoop	food
8	ក	ជ	ក	ឃ	កេកិក	pneek	eye
9	គ	ប	គ	ឃ	គ្រឹង	kriøŋ	tool

How to read and pronounce the C₁C₂V or C₁C₂VC₃ clusters

Because of the two existing series of sounds in the Cambodian language, here referred to as first series and second series (or voiceless and voiced by other linguists), it is not always easy to determine how the cluster should be pronounced.

For monosyllabic words, with both C₁ (initial consonant) and C₂ (subscript consonant) belonging to the same series, there is no problem with the pronunciation. For example: first series, s?aat ស្វាត់ ‘pretty,’ c?aeat ឆ្លើត ‘hungry,’ psaa ផ្សារ ‘market’; second series, krueh គ្រោះ ‘accident,’ klein ប្រាន ‘hungry,’ mnoah ម្បាង ‘pineapple.’

For monosyllabic words, when both C₁C₂ belong to different series, there are guidelines to determine the consonant that is the dominant one in the cluster. Once the dominant consonant is identified, the vowel in the cluster will follow the series to which the dominant consonant belongs.

When C₁, initial consonant, is in the first series and C₂ is one of the following consonants m, n, ñ, ñ, v, r, l, y, the vowel takes the first series pronunciation: tlay ត្រួល ‘price,’ cmaa ក្រោម ‘cat,’ krav ក្រោវ ‘outside,’ svaay ស្វាយ ‘mango.’

When subscript consonant C₂ is one of the following group of consonants m, n, ñ, ñ, v, r, l, y, the vowels in the cluster will always be pronounced with first series value, even though C₁, initial consonant, belongs to the second series: l?aa ល្អ ‘good,’ cmaa ម្បាង ‘cat,’ msaov ម្មោរ ‘powder,’ lk?ao ល្អាន ‘drama,’ pnæk ព្រៃក ‘eye,’ tvøe ព្រឹ ‘to do,’ p?ien ក្រុង ‘rain,’ knie ក្រុង ‘together.’

Table 13 summarizes how the clusters should be pronounced.

Table 13 Pronunciation of clusters

C ₁ , initial consonant	C ₂ , subscript consonant	Vowel value
first series	first series	first series
second series	second series	second series
first series	second series	first series
first series	second series	second series
second series	first series	first series



Exercise 7 (Bonus audio 14)

Read these words aloud and then say what they mean in English.



- | | | | |
|---|------------|----|-----------|
| 1 | ត្នោន | 6 | ស្លាល់ |
| 2 | ក្រុម | 7 | ខ្ពស់ |
| 3 | ព្រោះ | 8 | ក្នុង |
| 4 | ប្រើប្រាស់ | 9 | ក្រុវ៉ារ់ |
| 5 | ម្នាក់ | 10 | ធ្វើបំ |



Exercise 8

Draw the slant line / to mark the separate words in these expressions.
Then rearrange the order to make a correct statement.

- | | | | |
|---|----------------------|------------|-------------|
| 1 | ជាងភាគត់ដេរ | កុបណ្ឌាស់ | រកសីវិ |
| 2 | មានអ្នកទិញប្រើប្រាស់ | ហាងលក់ | ផ្លូវយីនេះ |
| 3 | តាត់ប្រាំរៀ | ប្រាបន្ទូម | ផ្លូវការងារ |



Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.7; Bonus audio 15)



Use the audio to listen to this passage. It is about my family and their employment. Draw a circle around the words with subscripts. Read them aloud and write them in your notebook.

kruəsaa kñom mien kaanjie tvəə krup krup knie. ?əpuk mdaay kñom cie kruu banriən. baan proh kñom riən cap baan sajnnaabot k^haan cumnuən ?əyləv tvəə kaa ?aoy krom hun baarəteeh. baan srəy tii muəy cie cierj kumnuu. baan srəy tii pii puukae k^haan p^hiesaa. koat cie neak baak prae nrj cie neak kaasaet. kñom cie niset, caŋ tvəə cie mee t^hievii. puu kñom cie ka?se?kaa tvəə srae camkaa. propuən koat cie neak tambaaj. hool koat luek dac nah. pniəv teehsaa?caa moɔk tij dal pteah. kruəsaa yəər ruəh niv cum knie yaan sapbaay.

Unit Nine

tiī kanlaen̄ nīñ tīh dav

ទីកន្លែងនិងទិសជំ

Locations and directions



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about the location of things
- ask and give directions
- use expressions related to distances, and ordinal and cardinal points
- use the progressive form with **kampon̄**
- use expressions **pii . . . + motion verb**; **pii . . . + rohoot dæl**
- use the word **dæl** in front of a verb
- read and write Cambodian locational and directional expressions
- read and write cluster words with C₁C₂V(C₃), C₁C₂C₃V(C₄), and C₁C₂C₃ C₄V(C₅)



Dialogue 1



Asking about a location (**Audio 2.8**)

Sokha (A) cleaned the house this morning. Dara (B) has misplaced her belongings, and is also looking for a laundromat. Listen to their conversation.

A: ?ee Dara ?aeñ kampon̄ rook ?ey nīñ?

B: Sokha, ?aeñ mien k'øøñ sampiey knom tee?

- A: oh som tooh, knom yoōk sampiey tiv haal kyol niv k^haaŋ krav pteah.
 B: coh tsəhsa?naavatdəy niv ləə tok nih?
 A: knom baan bəh caol tiv knoŋ t^huŋ samraam haəy.
 B: ni?yiey ?əŋcəŋ ?aeŋ mien skoal haan̄ boak k^hao ?aav tee?
 A: mien muəy niv c̄it c̄it nih, tae tlay. kii niv coop haan̄ lsək siəvp̄hiv ABC.
 B: coh ?aa haan̄ t^haok niv naa dae?
 A: niv c̄jaay, niv k^haaŋ kraoy haan̄ san TOTAL.
 B: ?aa kun. knom tiv ?aa haan̄ t^haok niŋ.
- A: អេដាក ឯងកំពង់រកអើយីង?
 B: សុខា ឯងមានយើញសំចាយខ្ញុំទេ?
 A: អូសុំទោស ខ្ញុំយកតែបាលខ្សោលនៅខាងក្រោម្ពៃះ។
 B: ចុះទស្សនាដីនៅលើគុណៈ?
 A: ខ្ញុំបានធ្វោះចាលទៅក្នុងធួនសំរាប់ហើយ។
 B: នីយាយអញ្ញីង ឯងមានត្បាលបែងចោកខោអារ៉ែ?
 A: មានមួយនឹងនិត្យនេះ តែផ្ទះ តីនៅជាប់បានលក់សៀវភៅ ABC។
 B: ចុះអាហានចោកនៅលាតាដី?
 A: នៅឆ្នាំយោ នៅខាងក្រោមយហាងសាំង TOTAL។
 B: អគគុណា ខ្ញុំទោសបានចោកបើីង។

Vocabulary



kampong rook	កំពង់រក	searching for
k ^h eeŋ	យើញ	to see; to perceive; to understand
tsəhsa?naavatdəy	ទស្សនាដី	magazine
sampiey or kaaboop speiy	សំចាយ	shoulder bag
	បូកាបុបស្ថាយ	
ləə	លើ	on top, at the top, above
haal kyol	បាលខ្សោល	to air out, to be exposed to wind
k ^h aaŋ krav	ខាងក្រោម	out, outside

bah caol	បោះចោល	to throw (away)
knorj	ក្នុង	inside
tʰunj sumraam	ធ្វើដីសំរាម	garbage bin, waste basket
haan̥ boak kʰao ?aav	ហាត់បោកខោអាហ៍	laundromat
haar̥ saŋ	ហាត់សំង	gas station
cit	ជិត់	close, near, next to
coap	ជាប់	next to, adjacent to; to hold on
cnaay	ឆ្លាយ	far away, distant; to be far
kroay	ក្រាយ	behind, back, at the back

Language points

Locational expressions

In normal speech the locational expressions លេខែែ ‘top,’ kroam ក្រាម ‘bottom,’ krav ក្រោវ ‘outside,’ knorj ក្នុង ‘interior,’ kraoy ក្រាយ ‘back part,’ muk មុខ ‘face, front’ can be used with or without the locational verb niv នៅ ‘to be located.’ They are also frequently used as part of a compound noun kʰaan̥ ខាង ‘side, part.’

kom tiv kʰaan̥ kraoy psaa.

កំឡើងក្រាយផ្ទាល់។

Don't go to the back of the market.

knorj tʰunj mien tik.

ក្នុងធ្វើដីមីនិក។

In the container there is water.

kroam pteah mien koo.

ក្រាមធ្វួន៖មានគោ។

Under the house there are cows.

luy niv knorj kaaboop.

លូយនៅក្នុងកាបូប។

The money is in the wallet.

laan koat niv kʰaan̥ krav.

ឡានគាត់នៅខាងក្រោវ។

Her car is outside.

The expressions *cit* ជីតិ ‘near,’ *coap* ជាប់ ‘adjacent to,’ and *cxaay* ឆ្លាយ ‘far’ are mostly used with the verb *niv* នឹវ to mark the locational distance of certain entities.

kom tiv cxaay pii pteah.

កំឡើឆ្លាយពីផ្ទះ។

Don’t go far away from the house.

cit nih mien haaj baay.

ជីតិនេះមានហាងបាយ។

Near here, there is a restaurant.

pteah niv coap psaa.

ផ្ទះនេះជាប់ផ្សារ។

The house is adjacent to the market.

Exercise 1



Listen to these statements and use them in the progressive form (with កំពុង kampon).

- 1 koat ?aŋkuy cam niv knoŋ laan.
- 2 cav vaay ?aen cʰɔɔ niv muk kaari?yaalay.
- 3 ckae deek niv kroam pteah.
- 4 knom dak kaasaet niv ləə tok ɻam baay.
- 5 look taa cʰɔɔ niv muk haaj saŋ.
- 6 nihsət riən niv coan tii pii.

Exercise 2



Read these statements aloud and then make them into questions to ask someone.

- 1 kom plic tiv haaj baay niv coan tii bəy.
- 2 koat tuk tuəhsa?naavatdəy niv knoŋ sampiey.
- 3 som caol somraam niv knoŋ tʰun nih.
- 4 haaj ləək siəvpʰiv niv kraoy haaj saŋ.
- 5 siəvpʰiv riən pʰiesaa niv knoŋ laan.
- 6 kanleaŋ tvəə kaa niv coap saalaa.



Dialogue 2



Giving directions (Audio 2.9)

A young teacher (A) from Kampong Cham province is walking around and is asking a middle-age man (B) for directions to go to the Central Market.

- A: ?ot tooh puu, knom caŋ tiv psaa tməy, tiv taam pləv naa?
- B: pii saara?məøntii, kmuøy bat cveøj, haøy daø tiv tih k'haaŋ lic taam pləv leek mərcɔy cətsəp pram bøy.
- B: dol kac cruj məhaavit^hey preah nɔɔroodam, kmuøy bat sdam, haøy daø traŋ tiv tih k'haaŋ cəøj cpusəh tiv vat phnom.
- B: dol kac cruj pləv leek mərcɔy saamsəp, bat sdam niv pləøn stop.
- A: huəh prahael ponmaan pləv tiv?
- B: prahael bøy pləv.
- A: třev daø ponmaan nietii dae?
- B: baø daø lién prahael dqp pram nietii. baø daø yiit prahael konlah maøj.
- A: psaa tməy niv k'haaŋ naa.
- B: psaa tməy niv k'haaŋ muk.
- A: ?aa kun puu. cumriep lie.
- A: អត់ទោស ឬ ខ្លួចចង់ទៅផ្សារដើម្បី ទៅតាមផ្លូវណា?
- B: ពីសារមន្ត្រី ក្នុយបត់ផ្សេងៗ
ហើយដើរទៅទិន្នន័យលិចតាមផ្លូវលេខ១៧។
- B: ធនល់កាត់ប្រជុំមហាវិថីព្រះនរោត្តម ក្នុយបត់ស្តាំ
ហើយដើរក្រៅចង់ទៅទិន្នន័យដើងឆ្លោះទៅត្រូវត្រូវ។
- B: ធនល់កាត់ប្រជុំផ្លូវលេខ១៣០ បត់ស្តាំនៅត្រឹមស្តុប។
- A: ហ្មសប្បែលបុរីនានផ្លូវទៅ?
- B: ប្បែលពាងវា
- A: គ្រួរដើរបុរីនាននាទីដើរ?
- B: បើដើរលើនៃប្បែល១៥នាទី។ បើដើរយើតប្បែលកន្លែង៖ ម៉ោង។

- A: ធនាគារនៅខាងណាម?
 B: ធនាគារនៅខាងមុខ។
 A: អវត្ថុណាត្វា ដម្រាបល។

Vocabulary

A
C
B

?at tooh	អត់ទោស	excuse me
dae taam	ធេរតាម	walk along, go along
pləv	ផ្លូវ	street, route, path, way
bat	បត់	to turn
bat cveen	បត់ឆ្លង	turn left
tih k ^h aan ^g lic	ទិសខាងលើច	west
tranj	ត្រួច	straight
bat sdam	បត់ស្តាំ	turn right
tih k ^h aan ^g ceoŋ	ទិសខាងជើង	north
cpueh	ឆ្លាជ់	facing, toward
dal	ដល់	to arrive (at)
kac cruj	កាត់ប្រជុំ	street corner, corner
pləv leek	ផ្លូវលេខ	street number
kanlaen	កំនើង	place
pləəŋ stop	ត្រីងសុប	traffic light
huəh	ហ្មសុ	to go past
prahael	ប្រហែល	approximately, about, around, or so
dae lien	លេរីន	fast; to be fast
dae yiit	យើគ	slow; to be slow
təep	ទីប	then
dae tranj	ធេរត្រួច	walk straight, go straight
niv k ^h aan ^g muk	នៅខាងមុខ	in front of, facing
k ^h aan ^g sdam day	ខាងស្តាំដៃ	on the right-hand side, at right
pii . . . tiv	ពី . . . ទៅ	from . . . to



Language points



Directional terms (Audio 2.10–2.11)

When providing information on direction to and location of a place, the four principal points of the compass are indicated by the following Cambodian terms: *tih k^haanj kaet* ទិសខាងកើត ‘east,’ *tih k^haanj lic* ទិសខាងលើចំ ‘west,’ *tih k^haanj cœəŋ* ទិសខាងជើង ‘north,’ and *tih k^haanj tboonj* ទិសខាងត្បូង ‘south.’

The following set of terms is the most frequently used nowadays to refer to the other four points of the compass:

Northeast *k^haanj cœəŋ c^hiəŋ k^haanj kaet / k^haanj kaet c^hiəŋ k^haanj cœəŋ*

Northwest *k^haanj cœəŋ c^hiəŋ k^haanj lic / k^haanj lic c^hiəŋ k^haanj cœəŋ*

Southeast *k^haanj kaet c^hiəŋ k^haanj tboonj / k^haanj tboonj c^hiəŋ k^haanj kaet*

Southwest *k^haanj tboonj c^hiəŋ k^haanj lic / k^haanj lic c^hiəŋ k^haanj tboonj*

Here is another set of terms providing relative positions: *kandaal* កណ្តាល ‘center, central, middle,’ *k^haanj sdam* ខាងក្រោម ‘at the right, to the right, right side,’ *k^haanj cveen* ខាងឆ្លេង ‘at the left, to the left, left side,’ *k^haanj muk* ខាងមុខ ‘in front of, at the front, ahead,’ *tuel muk* ខលបមុខ ‘opposite, face-to-face,’ *k^haanj kraoy* ខាងក្រោបី ‘at the back, behind,’ *c^hiəŋ ផ្សែង* ‘inclined toward, oblique.’

pteah niv tih k^haanj tboonj.

The house is in the north.

koat cam niv k^haanj kaet psaa.

She waits on the east side of the market.

srok viet naam niv k^haanj kaet srok kmae.

Vietnam is to the east of Cambodia.

srok t^hay niv k^haanj cœəŋ c^hiəŋ k^haanj lic srok kmae.

Thailand is to the northwest of Cambodia.

When asking for or giving directions to someone, combining *k^haanj* ខាង ‘side’ with the verbs *niv* នឹវ ‘to be at’ or *tiv* ទូវ ‘to go to’ make the statement clearer and more precise.

tiv k^haan kraoy pteah.

ទៅខាងក្រោមផ្ទះ។

Go behind the house.

haan niv k^haan muk psaa.

ហាងនៅខាងមុខផ្សារ។

The store is in front of the market.

Adding pii muk ពីមុខ ‘in front of’ and pii kraoy ពីក្រោម ‘behind’ to a verb to indicate movement provides a precise position of the person(s) involved in the movement.

dae pii muk k^hnom.

ដើរពីមុខខ្ញុំ។

Walk in front of me.

rsat pii kroay k^hnom.

រត់ពីក្រោមខ្ញុំ។

Run behind me.

Other useful terms to indicate location are nih នឹង: ‘here or this,’ nuh នេះ: ‘there, over there, or that,’ noŋ បាន់ ‘that, there, or those,’ and niŋ បីនាំង ‘this, that, here, there, these or so on.’ These can also add more emphasis to a statement/question.

cam niv tii nih.

ចាំនៅទីនេះ។

Wait (here) at this place.

som c^hup tii nih.

តុំណូយចំនួននេះ។

Please stop (here) at this place.

coh niv konlaen niŋ.

ចុះនៅកំន្លែងបីនាំង។

Get off at that place.

The expression pii . . . tiv ពី . . . ទៅ ‘from . . . to’ is useful for giving an idea of distance between two places. For example: pii nih tiv kac cruŋ pləv ‘from here to the corner of the street.’



Exercise 3

Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 pii pteah knom baek _____ tiv psaa.
- 2 niv kac crun psaa, bat _____.
- 3 som chup niv k'haarj _____ saara?muentii pram nietii.
- 4 baek pii pløv ruæc bat cveerj niv pløerj _____.
- 5 kaari?yaalay niv _____ muk haarj baay.

- a ពីរប
- b ត្រួតដំឡើង
- c ទិន្នន័យ
- d ស្តាំ
- e មុខ



Exercise 4

Read these statements. Say what they mean in English while trying to draw a map of these places.

- 1 psaa niv kondaal tii kroñ.
- 2 saalaa niv k'haarj lic psaa.
- 3 haarj baay niv canloh saalaa niñ psaa.
- 4 muentii peet niv k'haarj kaet psaa.
- 5 pteah niv k'haarj cœerj psaa.
- 6 kaari?yaalay niv k'haarj tboorj psaa.



Dialogue 3



Giving location and directions (**Audio 2.12**)

Your friend (A) has a map in his hand and is trying to give instructions to a tuktuk driver (B) in Phnom Penh about where both of you want to go. Listen carefully to this conversation.

-
- A: ?at tooh, cuel tuktuk cih bœy moan yœok tlay ponmaan?
 B: tlay dap pram dollaa look.

- A: baan, yəəŋ caŋ cʰup craən kanlaeŋ daəmbəy tʰaat ruup.
- B: baat, look caŋ cih tiv naa klah?
- A: pii nih som tiv vi?mein ?aek riec. cʰup tʰaat ruup ruəc baək kat taam suən cbaa ney mohaavith'ey preah seyanok.
- A: som baək yiit yiit taam pləv moat tuənlee. cʰup kanlah moaŋ niv muk veaŋ.
- A: bantaa tiət tiv voat pnum. knom caŋ laəŋ tʰaat ruup kanlah moaŋ tiət. cam baan tee?
- B: baat look. bantoap moək tiv naa tiət?
- A: yəəŋ caŋ tiv psaa tməy.
- A: som cʰup niv tvie kʰaan kaət, haəy tiv cam puək yəəŋ niv tvie kʰaan lic.
- B: baat look. knom niŋ cam niv tii noh. bantoap moək knom dək look tiv saonthaakie vijn.
- A: l?aa toh yəəŋ laəŋ tuktuk cəŋ damnaə tiv.

- A: អត់ទោស ដូលទុកទុកដី៖ នម៉ោងយកផ្លូវប៉ុន្មាន?
- B: ផ្លូវដីល្អារលោក។
- A: បាន យើងចង់ណូយប់ប្រើនកវន្តិថ្នូរដីម្នូរចុរួប។
- B: បាន លោកចង់ដី៖ ទៅណាយ៖?
- A: ពីនេះ ស្តីទីវិមានឯករាជ្យ។ យប់ចុរួប
រួចបឹកភាគតាមស្បនបញ្ហានៃមហាថ្មីប្រែ៖ សិល្បោន។
- A: ស្តីបឹកយើតុងតាមផ្លូវរមាតិទន្លេ។
យប់កន្លែ៖ ម៉ោងនៅមុខវំជោ។
- A: បន្ទឡើតទៅតែត្រូវត្រូវ។ ខ្សែងចង់ទ្វីងចុរួបកន្លែ៖ ម៉ោង ឡើត។ ចាំបាច់ទេ?
- B: បានលោក បន្ទាប់មកទៅណាយឡើត?
- A: យើងចង់ទៅផ្សារម្លូយ។
- A: ស្តីយប់នៅទីនានាខាងកំពើ
កំពើយទៅចំពុកយើងនៅទីនានាខាងលិច។
- B: បានលោក ខ្សែងចង់នៅទីនាន់នោះ។
បន្ទាប់មកខ្សែងដីកលោកទៅសណ្ឌាគារិញ។
- A: ល្អ តោះ យើងទ្វីងទុកទុកចេញដំណើរទោ។



Vocabulary

cuəl	ជួល	to rent
tuktuk	ទុកទុក	three-wheel taxi, tricycle
cih	ជីវិះ	to ride
cʰup	បូរិ	to stop
daəmbəy	ដើម្បី	for the purpose of, in order to
tʰaat ruup	ថត្យប	to take picture
vi?mein ?aek riec	វិមានឯកភាគី	Independence Monument
baek cat	បៀកកាត់	to drive by or pass by
suən cbaa	ស្វែនច្បារ	garden, park
ney	នៅ	of
mohaavitʰey preah seyhanok	មហាហិរិយប្រែងសីហនុ	Preah Sihanouk Boulevard
moat tuənlee	មាត់ទេន	river bank
bantaa	បន្ទាត់	to continue, to go on
voat pnun	វត្ថុផ្លូវ	Wat Phnom
laən	ឡើង	to climb (up)
bantoap moɔk	បន្ទាប់មក	after that, then
puək yəən	ពួកយើង	we, us (as a group)
tvie kʰaanj kaət	ទ្វារខាងកើត	eastern entrance/gate
tvie kʰaanj lic	ទ្វារខាងលិច	western entrance/gate
dək	ដឹក	to transport, to take



Exercise 5 (Bonus audio 16)



Practice reading the Cambodian script. Match the opposite directional expressions from the top list with the appropriate expressions from the bottom list.

- | | | | |
|---------|-------------|---------|-------------|
| 1 លើ | 2 ក្រោ | 3 ឆ្នាយ | 4 ក្រាយ |
| 5 ឃ្លោង | 6 ទិសខាងកើត | 7 បត់ | 8 យើត |
| a ស្តាំ | b មុខ | c លេរីន | d ទិសខាងលិច |
| e ជីត | f ក្រោម | g កុង | h ទៅក្រោង |

Exercise 6



Read the Cambodian script in both columns. Match the missing word in column 1 with the appropriate word from column 2 to form a complete expression in giving instruction to a tuktuk driver about what to do.

Column 1

- 1 សំចុះនៅខាង _____ ស្រាវជ្រាវ
- 2 សំដើរ _____ ទាំង
- 3 សំបត់ _____ ។
- 4 សំ _____ ទីនេះ។
- 5 សំ _____ យើតទាំង

Column 2

- a ឆ្លង
- b លូប់
- c លើន
- d បើក
- e មួល

Reading and writing medial and final clusters



We have learned how to read and write monosyllabic words $C_1C_2V(C_3)$ with initial clusters, when C_1 is the superscript and C_2 is the subscript. Here we focus on medial cluster and final cluster words that are disyllables. A disyllable is word that has two syllables.

Medial clusters with one subscript $C_1C_2C_3V(C_4)$



A word with medial cluster $C_1C_2C_3V(C_4)$, is used when C_1 and C_2 are superscripts and C_3 is the subscript. There are some limitations to what symbols occur as subscripts only when the C_2 are nasal consonants η , ŋ , n .

When the superscript C_2 is ង , then the subscripts can only be k , r , h , v , k^h , as in: *caŋkak* ចោងកក់ ‘skewer,’ *caŋ?ol* ចោងលូ ‘to point out,’ *caŋkiəŋ* ចោងឃឹង ‘lamp,’ *baŋhat* បង្ហាគត ‘to teach,’ *caŋkuək* ចោងឯង ‘knee,’ *ruŋvaol* រង្កាបល ‘instrument of measurement,’ *baŋ?aem* បង្កើម ‘dessert,’ *baŋkaət* បង្កើត ‘to produce, to give birth to,’ *saŋkat* សំង្គាត់ ‘district,’ and *?oŋkuyk* អង្គូយ ‘to sit.’

When the superscript C₂ is ញ, then the subscript can only be d, t, t^h, l, y, s, as in: សេងceaំ ជ ញ្ចាំង ‘wall,’ សេងciឃ ជ ញ្ចីង ‘scale,’ banck បញ្ញកំ ‘to hand-feed,’ ?anccəən អ ញ្ជើញ ‘to invite,’ banch^hup បញ្ញូប ‘to stop; to discontinue,’ and saŋnya សិបញ្ញា ‘signal.’

When the superscript C₂ is ស and ល, then the subscripts can only be /d, t, t^h, l, y, s/, as in: kandəən កណ្តាន់ ‘bell,’ kontuy កណ្តួយ ‘tail,’ kanteel កណ្តេល ‘mat,’ សេនដោែ ជ ណ្តីវុរៈ ‘stair, ladder,’ dandam ជ ណ្តាំ ‘to cook,’ tuənlee ទុន្ទឹន ‘river,’ bantup បន្ទូប់ ‘room,’ banlae បន្ទូល់ ‘vegetable,’ puənlīi ពុន្ទីី ‘light,’ santuuc សិបន្ទូច ‘fishing pole,’ saŋnya សិបន្ទូរ ‘to promise,’ sansaem សិបន្ទូរីម ‘dew,’ ?andoon អណ្តាន់ ‘well,’ and sant^haakie សិបណ្តាការ់ ‘hotel.’

When the superscript C₂ is ម, then there are no limitations on the subscripts, as in: kumriem គុម្រោម ‘to threaten,’ camlaey ចំម៉ីយ ‘answer,’ cumrij ជ មី ‘illness,’ tambaaŋ ពិម្យាមុ ឬ ‘weaving,’ tumhəən ទុម្យន់ ‘weight,’ and samŋat សិម្យាតី ‘hidden.’



Medial clusters with two subscripts

C₁C₂C₃ C₄V(C₅) (Audio 2.14)

There are a few words with this form, when the superscript C₁ and C₂ are superscripts and C₃ and C₄ are subscripts, as in: camlaey ចំម៉ីយ ‘answer,’ caŋkraan ចំង្វាន់ ‘stove,’ saŋkrəəh សិក្រោះ ‘to rescue,’ kajcraen កាំង្វាន់ ‘basket,’ and saŋkriem សិក្រីម ‘war.’

Final clusters

Many loanwords are spelled with subscripts that are not pronounced in the final cluster position, as in: cət ចិត្ត ‘heart,’ roat វិជ្ជា ‘state, nation,’ peet ពិទិន្ទុ ‘doctor; hospital,’ k^haet ខិត្ត or ខិត្តិ ‘province,’ saŋ សិង្វែរ ‘monk,’ propusən ប្រពិន្ទុ ‘wife,’ sambot សិបុប្រតិ ‘letter,’ mənuh មនិសូប ‘human being,’ and saʔmot សិម្យប្រទិ ‘ocean.’

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.15; Bonus audio 17)



Use the audio to listen to and read along with this passage about location and direction. Circle the expressions that have locational and directional meaning.

យប់ថ្វីសេវនេះ មែនជានៅដំឡើងបុណ្យកំណើតពួកម៉ាក
គាត់នៅជាន់ទី៤ ភូមិដ្ឋានខេត្តសៀមរាប។ គាត់បានទូរសព្ទហេតុខ្លួន
អោយទៅឆ្នាំលេច្ចាស់នឹងគេ។ ខ្លួនត្រូវយកការដូចតើអាមេរិ
ធន។ គាត់បានប្រាប់ទិន្នន័យអោយខ្លួនទៅកន្លែងដំឡើងហើយ
ខ្លួនត្រូវបើកឡានចេញពីផ្ទះ៖ ហើយបត់ធ្លាននៅកាត់ប្រជុំហាននំបីជាន់
បើកដល់ កាត់ប្រជុំមហាវិថីព្រះនៃពេជ្ជម ត្រូវបត់ធ្លានទៀត។
បើករហ៊តទៅ ដល់កាត់ប្រជុំ ផ្លូវ ៩ ផ្លូវ ៧ ហើយត្រូវបត់ស្តាំ។
ធម្មរាធនំនឹងសុវត្ថិភាពនៅខាងធ្លេដោយ។

yup t̪hay sav nih mae k̪nom tr̪ev tiv cup liə̄n bon komnaet puə̄k
maak koat niv coan tii buə̄n, knoŋ psaa tumnəəp soriya. koat baan
tuurea?sap hav k̪nom ?aoy tiv ñam liə̄n niŋ kee. k̪nom tr̪ev yoōk kaado
niv lə̄e tok tiv cie muə̄y p̪hɑ̄aŋ. koat baan prap t̪ih dav ?aoy k̪nom tiv
kanlaen cup liə̄n niŋ. k̪nom tr̪ev baek laan cə̄n pii pteah haə̄y bot
cveen niv kac c̪hruŋ haanum p̪?aŋ. baek dal kac cruŋ mohaavit̪hə̄y
preah noɔ̄roodam tr̪ev bot cveen tiə̄t. baek r̪hoot tiv dal kac cruŋ
plə̄v leek mə̄rooy haabuə̄n, ruə̄c haə̄y tr̪ev bot sdam. psaa tumnəəp
soriya niv k̪haaŋ cveen day.

Unit Ten

?aakaasa?t^hiet nih rōdəv

អាកាសធាតុនិងរដ្ឋវេស្សា

Weather and seasons



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about weather and seasons in various places
- use expressions related to the weather and seasons
- ask and answer with the expression **haet ?ey baan cie**
- use expressions **steah, rean, tleak, tnal lic tik, canh noap, min . . . ponmaan**, and **kuə tae**
- read and write expressions and sentences related to the weather and seasons
- read and write Cambodian independent vowels



Dialogue 1



Weather in Cambodia and England (**Audio 2.16**)

Listen to Vanna (A, in Cambodia) and Bill (B, in England) who are talking about the weather and seasons in their own country.

-
- A: ?aakaasa?t^hiet niv nih ?eyləv kdav nah. niv srok ?aen yaan məc dae?
- B: niv aŋkleeh ?aakaasa?t^hiet l?aa nah prsəh cie rōdəv pkaa riik.
- B: taə niv srok kmae mien ponmaan rōdəv?
- A: mien pii rōdəv kii rōdəv praj niŋ rōdəv voahsaa.

- A: coh nīv srok aŋkleeh mien ponmaan rōdəv dae?
 B: mien buen rōdəv kī̄ rōdəv slēk cʰəə cruh, rōdəv rōŋie, rōdəv
 pkaa riik, nīj rōdəv kdav.
 A: rōdəv rōŋie yaaŋ məc dae?
 B: rōdəv rōŋie mien pril tleak haøy truceak nah.
 A: ?oo pi?saeh mæen! knom mīn dael kʰəøŋ pril tee.
 B: coh rōdəv voahsaa yaaŋ məc dae?
 A: mien pliø̄j tleak craø̄n, cuen kaal pliø̄j pīj mætñay, haøy neak
 srae cap tvø̄e srae camkaa dae.
- A: អាកាសធាតុនេះតើរបស់ណា
 នៅត្រីសកិច្ចយ៉ាងម៉ែចដីរ?
 B: នៅអង់គ្លេស អាកាសធាតុល្អណាស់ ព្រោះជារដ្ឋរដ្ឋរីក។
 B: តើនៅត្រីសកិច្ចមានរដ្ឋរបីនាន?
 A: មានពីរដ្ឋគី រដ្ឋរបាំង និងរដ្ឋរស្សារ។
 A: ចុះនៅត្រីសកិច្ចមានបីនានរដ្ឋរដីរ?
 B: មានបួនរដ្ឋគី គីរដ្ឋស្សីកលើប្រឈឺ រដ្ឋរងា រដ្ឋរដ្ឋរីក និងរដ្ឋរត្រី។
 A: រដ្ឋរងាយ៉ាងម៉ែចដីរ?
 B: រដ្ឋរងាមានព្រិលផ្តាក់ហើយត្រជាក់ណាស់។
 A: អូ ពិសេសមេន! ខ្ញុំមិនដែលយើងព្រិលទេ។
 B: ចុះរដ្ឋរស្សារ យ៉ាងម៉ែចដីរ?
 A: មានភ្លៀងផ្តាក់ប្រើន ផ្តុនកាលភ្លៀងពេញមួយថ្ងៃ
 ហើយអ្នកប្រើបាបធ្វើប្រចាំការដីរ។

Vocabulary

**A
C
B**

?aakaasa?tʰiet	អាកាសធាតុ	weather
rōdəv	រដ្ឋវា	season
truceak	ត្រជាក់	to be cold
rōdəv voahsaa	រដ្ឋរស្សារ	rainy season
pliø̄j	ភ្លៀង	rain; to rain
pīj mætñay	ពេញមួយថ្ងៃ	one full day

rđdəv praj	រដោែវប្រាំឆ្នាំ	dry season
rđdəv pkaa riik	រដោែវផ្លាហ៍កុំ	spring
rđdəv slēk cʰəə cruh	រដោែវស្តីកមួយឱ្យឃ្លេះ	autumn, fall
rđdəv rɔnje	រដោែវខ្មៅ	winter
rđdəv kdav	រដោែវកោត់	summer
tleak	ត្បាក់	to fall down (for snow or rain)
tik kaak	ទីកកកក	snow or ice
pril	ព្រិល	snow or hail
pi?saeh mœen	ពិសេបសម្រេច	it is very special
dael	ដែល	used to; to have ever
kʰəəj	ឱ្យឈ្មោះ	to see, to perceive
neak srae	អ្នកត្រូវបារិក	farmer
tvəə srae camkaa	ធ្វើត្រូវបច្ចេកវិទ្យា	farming (including rice fields, other kinds of vegetable and fruit-growing areas)



Language point

Some Cambodians use the words tik kaak ទីកកកក ‘ice or snow’ and pril ព្រិល ‘snow, ice or hail’ as they are interchangeable. The verb tleak ត្បាក់ ‘to fall, fall down, to come down’ has several meanings depending on its position in a compound: before or after other element(s), which are usually noun(s). For instance: tleak tik kaak ត្បាក់ទីកកកក ‘it is snowing,’ tik tleak ទីកត្បាក់ ‘waterfall.’

The word piñ ពេញ ‘to be full’ or ‘throughout’ is used to express duration of time, for example ពេញមួយខែ ‘for the whole month,’ ពេញមួយឆ្នាំ ‘for the entire year,’ ពេញមួយជីវិត ‘for the entire life.’ In spoken form it can be either before or after the other element.

mien tik kaak piñ pləv.

មានទីកកកកពេញផ្លូវ។

Snow covers the street.

pril tleak piñ məyup.

ព្រិលត្បាក់ពេញមួយយប់។

The snow falls all night long.

pliəŋ tleak klaŋ mœen.

ត្រូវងារធ្លាក់ខ្សោះមែន។

It rains heavily.

vie pralaan̄ teak.

ពាប្រឡង់ងារក៏។

He fails the exam.

The expression pi?saeh mœen ពិសេសប័មន៍ ‘special, exceptional’ or ‘wonderful’ is used to indicate something out of the ordinary with a touch of surprise, similar to ?ohcaa mœen អស្សាយ្យមែន.

sraa nih pi?saeh mœen.

ស្រានេះពិសេសប័មន៍។

This wine is special.

teehsa?pʰiep nih ?ohcaa mœen.

ទេសភាពនេះអស្សាយ្យមែន!

This landscape is exceptional.

?arjkoɔ voat ?ohcaa mœen.

អង្គរវត្ថុអស្សាយ្យមែន។

Angkor Wat is magnificent.

In this unit and the following examples, dael ដែល ‘used to’ and its negative min dael, ‘not used to, never’ are used in front of a verb to indicate whether an action has or has not taken place. dael ដែល and tloap ធ្លាប់ are interchangeable in some cases.

koat dael niv srok kmae.

គាត់ដែលនៅក្រែកខ្មែរ។

She has lived in Cambodia.

vie min dael mien ?aav rɔŋie.

រាជីនឹងដែលមានអារ៉ាង។

He never has a sweater.



Exercise 1

Read these statements aloud and turn them into questions.

- 1 niv srok kmae mien pii rɔdəv kii rɔdəv praj niŋ rɔdəv voahsaa.
- 2 niv srok knom ɻaakaasa?tʰiet kdav nah niv rɔdəv praj.
- 3 knom cool cit rɔdəv pkaa riik cieŋ kee.
- 4 niv ɻaalaaska, peel pril tleak ɻaakaasa?tʰiet traceak nah.
- 5 kmae tvøe srae camkaa niv rɔdəv voahsaa.



Exercise 2

Your friend asks you these questions. How would you answer them? Select the appropriate answers from the second list.

- | | |
|--|------------------|
| 1 niv tii kroŋ see?uul rɔdəv rɔŋje yaŋ məc? | a srəh s?aat nah |
| 2 niv srok kmae rɔdəv praj yaŋ məc? | b min dael tee |
| 3 niv srok ɻaameerik mien ponmaan rɔdəv? | c traceak nah |
| 4 rɔdəv pkaa riik yaŋ məc? | d buən rɔdəv |
| 5 neak dael kʰəŋŋ prił rił tik kaak tleak tee? | e kdav nah |



Dialogue 2



The rain in Phnom Penh (Audio 2.17)

Phanna (A) and Dara (B) are ready to leave the office. They are caught in the rain. Listen to their conversation about the rainy season.

-
- A: pliəŋ tleak klaŋ nah! məŋ meek srəlah sah!
- B: tiv pteah məc tiv knom ?at ?aav pliəŋ ph'aŋ?
- A: tiv cie muəy knie kaa baan, knie mien cʰat niŋ ?aav pliəŋ.
- B: min ?ey tee, cam məpleet sən paa knie moɔk totuəl.
- A: knie min cool cət pliəŋ sah. peel pliəŋ mdaaŋ mdaaŋ tnal líc tik, steah pləv haøy steah luu.
- B: tnay mun mootoo rɔluēt tʰeak min cʰeh daə luy tik dək mootoo hat caŋ ɻoap tumroam dal kanlaen cieŋ.
- A: nuh! paa ?aeŋ moɔk haøy!
- B: ?aa pliəŋ reaŋ lmɔɔm. tiv haøy naa!
- A: ?aa lei haøy, s?eak cuəp knie.

- A: ត្រូវជាក់ខ្សោះណាស់! មិញមេយប្រសិទ្ធនេះសោះ!
- B: ទៅដីម៉ែនទៅ ខ្ញុំអាតអារក្សជាបង?
- A: ទៅជាមួយគ្មានព័ត៌មាននេះត្រូវឱ្យអារក្សជាបង។
- B: មិនអើទេ ចំមួយត្រូវតសិន ថា គ្មានកទូល។
- A: គ្មានចូលចិត្តត្រូវជាបងសោះ! ពេលត្រូវមួង ផ្លូវលិចទីកស្សែងផ្លូវ ហើយស្សែងល្អ។
- B: ថ្វីមុន មួតគ្មានលត់ ធាក់មិនដោះ ដើរលុយទីកដីកម្ពុជាត់ចង់ជាប់ ទម្រាំងលំកន្លឹងជាបង។
- A: នូវ! ជាបងមកហើយ!
- B: អា ត្រូវកំងល្អម៉ា ទៅហើយណា!
- A: អើលាកៅហើយ ត្រូវកដ្ឋាន។

Vocabulary

**A
B
C**

នៅរៀង	មិញ	just now
haet ?øy	ហោតុអី	why
meek srølah	មេយប្រសិទ្ធនេះ	clear sky; excellent weather
lic	លិច	to sink; submerged; to disappear
steah	ស្សែង	to obstruct, block, close up
steah pløv	ស្សែងផ្លូវ	traffic jam, road congestion
luu	លូ	drainage, sewer
røvsøet	រលប់ត់	extinguished, to be off, to die
tʰeak	ធាក់	to kick start, jump start a motor
cʰeh	ឆេះ	to start a motor, burn
luy	លុយ	to wade; money
dæø luy tik	ដើរលុយទីក	to walk through shallow water
tumroam dal	ទម្រាំងលំប់	until reaching
reanj	កំង	to stop raining; absence of rain



Language points

The expression *mijn មិញ* ‘just now’ is the short form of *?amban mijn អំបានមិញ*. The verb *steah ត្រូវ៖* ‘to be obstructed, to be clogged; to be blocked’ is commonly used with other words as in *steah luu ត្រូវលូ ‘clogged drainage, blocked drain’* and *steah cdraacaa ត្រូវចោរចោណា ‘traffic jam, road congestion.’*

The expression *plev lic tik ផ្លូវលិចទីកុំពី* ‘flooded streets’ is a common phenomenon in Cambodia and in Southeast Asia in rainy season.

koat cəŋ mijn.

គាត់ចេញមិញ។

He has just left.

mijn priil teak klaŋ nah.

មិញព្រិលឆ្លាក់ខ្មៅងុយសំ។

Just now, it snowed heavily.

srae lic tik.

ត្រូវបាលិចទីកុំពី។

The rice field got flooded.

The verb *reaj រាគង* ‘to stop’ used in combination with *pliəŋ ផ្តើមង*, indicates the absence of rain. For example: *cnam nih reaj pliəŋ ‘this year, there is no rain.’* In another combination it means ‘to prevent’, as in *rie reaj រាគង*.

The word *rələsət សិបតិ* ‘extinguished, to be out, to be off, to die’ indicates interruption and/or cessation of a normally continuous movement: *rələsət pləəŋ ‘no electricity, to be out of fire’* and *maasin rələsət ‘engine/motor dies’*.

The homonym *luy លូយ*, as a noun, is ‘money’; as a verb it means ‘to wade/go through’ and is normally used with *tik ទីកុំពី ‘water,’ pʰusək ភកុំ ‘mud,’ and pləəŋ ផ្តើមង ‘fire.’*

The expression *caŋ នោះបង់ជាប់* means ‘want to die; almost to the point of dying; inoperative; cease to function’. *ជាប់ នោះបង់*, with the meaning ‘to die, to be dead’ is colloquially used with humans and animals, while the less colloquial form, *slap ពិនិប់*, is reserved for humans.

mootoo rələsət peel lic tik.

The motorcycle breaks down when it is submerged.

laan rōluət prʊəh ?oh saŋ.

The car dies because it runs out of gasoline.

caŋkiəŋ rōluət prʊəh kyal klanj.

The lamp is out because of a strong wind.

knom klien caŋ ḡoap.

I almost died of hunger.

knom rōŋie caŋ ḡoap.

I am freezing.

rīen pʰiesaa kmae pi?baak caŋ ḡoap.

Learning Cambodian is so hard.

Exercise 3 (Bonus audio 18)

Read the question statements in column 1 using haet ?ey baan cie. Then select and match the appropriate answer starting with prʊəh, 'because', in column 2.



Column 1

- 1 haet ?ey baan cie tnal líc tik?
- 2 haet ?ey baan cie mootoo rōluət?
- 3 haet ?ey baan cie neak klien
caŋ ḡoap?
- 4 haet ?ey baan cie rōŋie caŋ ḡoap?
- 5 haet ?ey baan cie srae líc tik?

Column 2

- a prʊəh plíc ?aav rōŋie.
- b prʊəh steah luu.
- c prʊəh pliəŋ tlaek
piŋ məkʰae.
- d prʊəh ?oh saŋ.
- e prʊəh ?at baay mətŋay.

Exercise 4



Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Use them to complete these statements.

1 _____ klanj yaŋ nih tnal líc tik haøy.

a អារ៉ែក្យោង

2 mootoo _____ tʰeak min cʰeh.

b កំងក្យោង

3 peel _____ tæp knom tiv pteah baan.

c ត្រូវក្យាត់

4 niv rōdəv pliəŋ yəən trəv mien _____ riŋ cʰat.

d លិចផ្លូវ

5 tŋay nih tik _____ niv tii kroŋ pnum piŋ.

e នលត់



Dialogue 3



Winter in New York (Audio 2.18)

This dialogue is between two friends who are talking about winter in New York.

- A: prik nih pril tleak craən, knom rɔŋje nah!
- B: min ponmaan tee! knom ban ?aoy tae pril tleak craən pruəh kcil tiv riən.
- A: rɔŋje yaŋ nih haøy niv tʰaa t'oommea?daa tiøt!
- B: ?aatit nih ?aen cøŋ tvøe tiv puun pril leen riø laen pnum leen skii tee?
- A: knom min tiv tee, rɔŋje ñoap haøy.
- B: min ?øy tee, ?aoy tae peak ?aav rɔŋje krah krah, sraom day niŋ sbaek cøøn kaa vøen tiv, vie lœn rɔŋje haøy.
- A: ?at tee, knie min toan soam niŋ ?aakaasa?tʰiet niv tii nih niv laøy tee.
- B: ?aen kuø tae tiv, pruəh cie lœk tii muøy dael ?aen baan leen niŋ pril.
- A: ?aŋcøŋ tiv kaa tiv ?aatit nih.
- A: ព្រីកនេះ ព្រិលផ្តាក់ប្រើន ខ្លួនរាលាស់!
- B: មិនបុញ្ញានទេ! ខ្លួនបានប្រើត្រូវព្រិលផ្តាក់ប្រើន ព្រោះខ្លួនទៅរៀន។
- A: រោងនេះ ហើយ នៅម៉ោងមួយគាត់ទៀត!
- B: អាចិត្យនេះ ឯងចង់ទៅពួនព្រិលលេង បុឡើងភ្លើលេងស្អីទេ?
- A: ខ្លួនទៅទេ រោងរបៀបហើយ។
- B: មិនអីទេ ឲ្យតែពាក់អារ៉ាក្រាស់ ស្របាមដៃ និងសំណ្ងែកដើងកន្លែងទៅ កាលេងរោងហើយ។
- A: អត់ទេ ត្រូវម៉ោងទាន់ស្ថុនឹងអាកាសធាតុ នៅទីនេះ នៅទីយោទេ។
- B: ឯងគូរតែទៅ ព្រោះជាលើកទីម្ខាយ ដែលឯងបានលេងនឹងព្រិល។
- A: អញ្ញីង ទៅកែអាចិត្យនេះ!

Vocabulary

A
B
C

ban	បន់	to pray, wish, hope
kcil	ខិល	to be lazy
rōnje	រោង	to be cold
tʰoammea?daa	ធម្យតា	normal
puun	ពូន	to make a mound
leen skii	លេងស្តី	to ski
?aav rōnje	អារោង	winter coat
krah	ក្រាស់	thick
sraom day	ស្រាមដើ	glove
sbaek cœəŋ kaa vœəŋ	ស្វ័យប័ណ្ណកែងកង	boot
læəŋ	លេង	to stop, to release, no longer
soam	សាំ	to get used to
kuə tae	គូវតែ	should, or ought to

Language points



The verb **ban** បន់ ‘to pray, to wish, to hope,’ when used in combination with **?aoy** or **?aoy tae**, indicates a stronger desire for a thing to happen.

neak srae ban ?aoy tae mien plien klan.
Farmers wish for heavy rain.

knom ban ?aoy neak pralaan̄ coop.
I pray that you pass the exam.

The meaning of the verb **læəŋ** លេង depends on the context, ‘to stop, to release, to leave (someone); to let go; no longer.’ Examples:

?aoy tae peak ?aav krah knom læəŋ rōnje haəy.
With a thick sweater, it will no longer be cold.

knom læəŋ caŋ tiv mœəl kon cie muəy neak haəy.
I no longer want to watch a movie with you.

poolih læəŋ neak tooh.
Police released the prisoner.

The word soam សែរ ‘to get used to, be accustomed to’ can be used in these contexts.

knom soam nij ?aakaasa?t^hiet niv tii nih.
I get used to the weather here.

koat soam nij kaanje nih.
He is used to this work.

knom soam nij mdaay sdəy bantooch haəy.
I get used to my mother’s scolding.

These are some examples with the expression kuə tae ត្រូវ ‘ought to, should.’

peel pliəŋ klaŋ neak kuə tae kom cih mootoo.
When it rains heavily, you should not ride a motorbike.

neak kuə tae peak ?aav krah krah daəmbəy kaapie rɔŋje.
You should wear thick clothing to protect from cold.

?aeŋ kuə tae hat kəylaa daəmbəy sokphiep.
You should exercise for your health.

The following are examples of the use of ponmaan ប៉ុន្មាន ‘how much, how many, or some’ combined with the expression មិន (>?at) . . . tee (អតិ) . . . ទេ ‘not that . . .’

tŋay nih min rɔŋje ponmaan tee.
It is not that cold today.

mhoop nih knom min cool cət ponmaan tee.
I am not that keen on this food.

?aav nih min l?aa ponmaan tee.
This shirt is not that nice.

Exercise 5



Read these questions aloud. Then use the expression ?at . . . ponmaan tee, to answer the questions, as in: Q- neak cool cət rədəv rənjie tee?
A- ?at cool cət ponmaan tee.

- 1 mien pril tleak craən tee?
- 2 ?aeŋ mien kʰao ?aav rənjie craən tee?
- 3 vaen taa kmav nih tlay nah riː?
- 4 ?aeŋ caŋ tiv leen skii tee?
- 5 koat soam niŋ ?aakaasa?tʰiet kdav tee?
- 6 pləv nih steah caaraacoo tee?

Exercise 6



Read these statements aloud and turn them into questions to ask your Cambodian friends.

- 1 srok knom kmien pril niŋ tik kaak tee.
- 2 pii mun vie min dael kʰəeŋ sa?mot tee.
- 3 peel kdav klaŋ ?aeŋ kuə tae peak muək.
- 4 bantup nih trəv mien maasiin traceak.
- 5 peel rənjie koat cool cət hat kəylaa.
- 6 peel pril tleak vie ləeŋ cih rəŋ haəy.

Exercise 7



Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Use them to complete these statements.

- 1 tŋay nih meek _____ l?aa nah.
 - 2 sbaek cəeŋ kaa vəeŋ nih min _____ tee.
 - 3 koat _____ tae mien pril craən daəmbəy tiv leen skii.
 - 4 neak srae ban ?aoy mien plien daəmbəy _____.
 - 5 baarəteeh min _____ niŋ rədəv kdav niv srok kmae tee.
- a បន្ទាយ
b ធ្វើត្រូវ
c ត្រូវទូរសព្ទ
d ទាន់សាំ
e ផ្លូវក្រោម



Reading and writing words with independent vowels

The independent vowel symbols are called srah piŋ tuə ស្រប់ពិនិត្យ ‘complete vowels’ because they can stand alone without combining with any consonant. The 13 independent vowel symbols in alphabetic order are: ឥ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ ឃ. Practice reading and writing these independent vowel symbols, starting from the dot numbered 1, 2, 3, or 4 (see [Table 14](#)).

In modern Cambodian these vowel symbols are largely confined to loanwords from Sanskrit and Pali. In all cases they duplicate combinations of consonants with conjunct vowel symbols. Words containing independent vowels are uncommon or rarely used, but there are a few that you will learn to memorize and recognize.

ឥ duplicates with ?e អី or ?i អី or even ?əy អី as in ?et ពីឥ ‘not,’ ?əyləv ពីខ្សោយ ‘now,’ or ?əyvan ពីវាន់ ‘things’

ឃ duplicates with ?əy អី as in ?əysaan ឃំសាន់ ‘northeast’

ឃ duplicates with ?o អូ or ?u អូ as in ?oknaa ឃកញ្ញា ‘official of ministerial rank’ or ?u?sa?p^hie ឃសិរី ‘May’

ឃ duplicates with ?oo អូ or ?uu អូ as in ?oon ឃន់ ‘lacking,’ ?oot ឃផ្ទុក ‘camel’

ឃ duplicates with ?əv អីវី as in ?əpuk ឃិបុក ‘father,’ ?əv lək ឃិគុក ‘watermelon’

ឃ duplicates with ri ឃី as in rihsəy ឃុសី ‘bamboo,’ rih ឃុិស ‘root,’ rik ឃិក ‘character’

ឃ duplicates with ri^h ឃី as in ri^h ឃុ ‘or’

ឃ duplicates with li ឃើ as in rumlik ឃុលិក ‘to remind,’ rəlik ឃុលិក ‘to miss’

ឃ duplicates with li ឃើ as in li^h ឃុ ‘to hear,’ or li^h cməəh ឃុលិក្ហាំង ‘to be popular, renowned’

ឃ duplicates with ?ae អីអី as in ?ae ឃ, ‘at,’ ?aek ឃិក ‘one,’ ?aeŋ ឃិង ‘you’

ឃ duplicates with ?ay អីអី as in ?aey ឃី ‘at, in’

ឃ duplicates with ?ao អីអី as in ?aokaah ឃិកាតុប ‘occasion,’ ?ao səa t^haan ឃិសិចក្រុន់ ‘pharmacy, drug store’

ឃ corresponding with ?av អីវី as in kraa? ឃុវីក្រាគ ‘lotus root’

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.19; Bonus audio 19)



Use the audio to listen and read along with this passage. Circle expressions that use subscripts ፩ ፪ ፫ ፭ ፮ ፯ ፻ ፿. Practice reading them in your notebook and read them aloud.

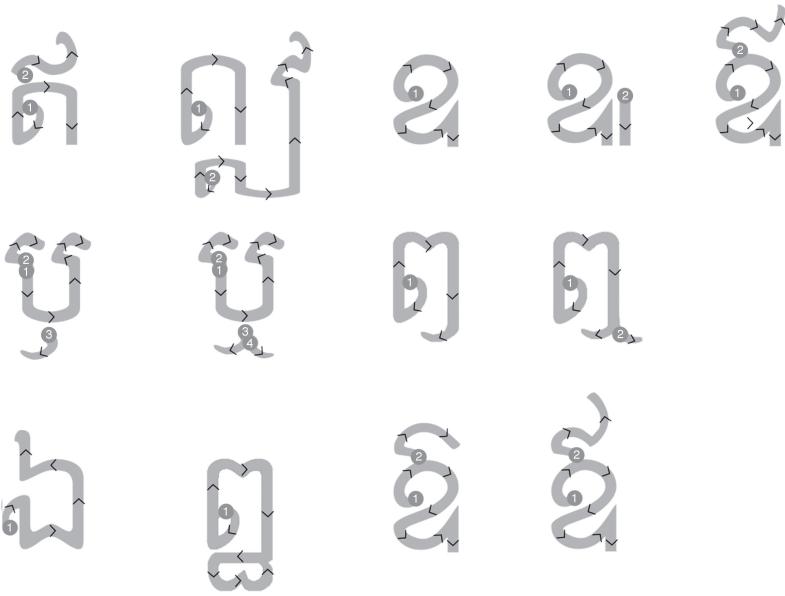
នៅត្រីសកខ្មែរមានរដ្ឋធំជាតិគី រដ្ឋរប្រាំង បុរដ្ឋរក្សា និងរដ្ឋរសស្ថ្ទា
បុរដ្ឋរក្សាដំឡើង។ នៅរដ្ឋរសស្ថ្ទា ប្រជាជនធ្វើត្រីសកចាម្ចារព្រោះសម្បូរ
ក្សាដំឡើង។ រដ្ឋរប្រាំងមានអាកាសធាតុក្សាលើលាងសំ។ តាមធម្មតានៅ
ទីក្រុង អ្នកមានលុយបុណ្យបានទេស ភាគច្រើនប្រើដង្ហាល់ បុម្ញាសីន
គ្របាក់ពេលនៅក្នុងផ្ទះ។

នៅប្រទេសអីរុបមានបូនដូរគី ដូរស្សីកលើជ្រុះ ដូរងារ ដូរអ្នក និងដូរត្រា ដូរស្សីកលើជ្រុះ មានទេសភាពពណ៌លើជីថុ ។ ដូរងារមានព្រិលត្តាក់ហើយត្រូវដាក់ណាស់ ។ ដូរអ្នកមានអ្នកស្រស់ស្អាតណាស់ ។ នៅដូរត្រា ខ្ញុចូលចិត្តទៅលេងសមុទ្រប្រឡើងក្នុងបាមួយត្រូវសារៈ ។

niv srok kmae mien rødøv t^hom t^hom pii kii rødøv praj ri^h rødøv
kdav ni^j rødøv voahsaa ri^h rødøv pliøj. niv rødøv voahsaa, praciec^{co}
tvæ^e srae camkaa prøeh samboo pliøj. rødøv praj mien ?aakaasa? hiet
kdav nah. taam t^hoammea? daa niv tii kroj, neak mien luy ri^h cœn
baarøteeh p^hiek craen prae danøhaal ri^h maasiin traceak peel niv kno^j
pteah.

niv prateeh ɿərop mien buən rðəv kii rðəv pkaa riik, rðəv slék cʰəə cruh, rðəv rɔŋje, niŋ rðəv kdav. rðəv slék cʰəə cruh mien teehsa? pʰiep poa liəŋ tom. rðəv rɔŋje mien pril tealak haøy triceak nah. rðəv pkaa riik mien pkaa riik srah s?aat nah. niv rðəv kdav, knom cool cət tiv leen sa?mot riit laəŋ pnum cie muøy kruəsaa knom.

Table 14 How to write independent vowel symbols



Write these independent vowel symbols. Start from the dot numbered 1, 2, 3, or 4 and follow the arrow.

Unit Eleven

sakamp^hiep kamsaan

សកម្មភាពកំសាន

Leisure activities

In this unit you will learn how to:



- ask and tell about leisure activities, favorite things, people, or places
- use the expressions **min səv**, **cuən kaal**, **taen tae**, **cie nic**, **kaa daoy**, and **daembəy**
- read and write words/expressions for leisure activities in Cambodian scripts
- use some Cambodian diacritics symbols

Dialogue 1



Favorite activities (**Audio 2.20**)



Phanna (A) and Navy (B) are talking on the phone. They are talking about their favorite activities and what they like to do after work or during the weekend.

-
- A: ɻaaloo Navy! cəŋ pii tvəə kaa ɻaeŋ tiv naa?
- B: ɻoo! tɻay nih, knom caŋ tiv psaa daə tɻy ɻeyvan. coh ɻaeŋ, peel tumnee cool cət tvəə ɻey dae?
- A: peel tumnee knom tumloap məəl tuurea?tvəh, keeŋ sdap camriəŋ bandaə məəl siəvp^hiv bandaə.

Vocabulary

A
B

sokamp ^h iep komsaan	សកម្មភាពកំសាន្ត	leisure activities
daə tʃɪŋ ?eyvan	ធើរទិញអីវាន់	to go shopping
tumloop	ទំលាប់ (ទម្ងាប់)	to make a habit; habit, custom
mæəl tuurea?tsoh	មើលទូទៅសុវត្ថិន	to watch TV
keen	គិង	to sleep
sdap camriəŋ	ស្អាប់ចម្លៀង (ចំពែង)	to listen to music
bandae	បណ្តារ	at the same time; as well as . . .
k ^h oh pii	ខ្ញុសពី	different from
tiv nam ?ey	ទៅត្រូវអី	to go and eat something, to have some snack
tiv daə leen	ទៅដើរលេង	to go for a walk, to go out for fun
cuən kaal	ជួនភាល	sometimes
hat praan	ហាត់ប្រាណា	to exercise
kyal baare?sot	ឱ្យលំបីសុខ	fresh air
mitph ^h ea?	មិត្តភកិ	friends
meen ?ot (meen riː ?ot)	មែនអត់ (មែនប្រអត់)	is it so
tiv krav	ទៅក្រោរ	to go out
taenj tae	តិចង់តែ	usually, always, continually
tñay c ^h up samraak	ថ្វួលយំប់សម្រាក	day off, break, rest period

Language points



Public and official holidays

In Cambodia civil servants and state school students have one, one-and-a-half, or two days off at the end of each week. Apart from weekend days off there are several more national and international holidays such as Cambodian New Year, National Independence Day, International Women's Day, or International Human Rights Day.

The expression *min səv* មិន សែវ ‘not really, not very, not much,’ and its two alternatives *?at səv* អត់ សែវ and *pum səv* ពុំ សែវ, are frequently used to indicate partiality when preceded by a main verb. But to add more emphasis, *sah* តែប៉ាំ ‘at all’ is placed immediately after the verb.

knom min/?at yvel.

ខ្សោះមិន/អត់យល់។

I don't understand.

knom min/?at yvel sah.

ខ្សោះមិន/អត់យល់សេចារៈ។

I don't understand at all.

koat ?at səv ceh kmae.

តាត់អត់សូរចេះខ្មែរ។

He does not really know Cambodian.

mhoop nih min səv cŋaj tee.

ម្នបនេះមិនសូវឆ្ងាយពេញ។

This food is not that delicious.

koat tvəø kaa ?at l?w sah.

តាត់ធ្វើការអត់ល្អសេចារៈ។

He just does not do good work.

The expressions *taeŋ tae* តិះង់តិះ and *cie nic* ជានិច្ច have similar meanings, ‘regularly, constantly, always.’ The difference, however, is in their position in a sentence: *taeŋ tae* តិះង់តិះ is always placed before the main verb, while *cie nic* ជានិច្ច is always positioned after the verb. Another colloquial expression, *cie nic cie kaal* ជានិច្ចជាកាល ‘always, constantly, regularly,’ can be either at the beginning or at the end of a sentence. With their respective positions intact in the sentence, they can be used together in the same sentence to provide more emphasis to the main verb.

vie taeŋ tae tiv krav.

He usually goes out.

knom tiv krav cie nic.

I go out all the time.

koat taeŋ tae tiv sii pʰək niv baa.

He always goes to have a good time at the bar.

paa taeŋ tae hat praan riəŋ roal l̥jiec.

Dad regularly exercises every afternoon.

The expression bandaə ប៉ាណ្ឌាទី ‘simultaneously, at the same time’ can be used repeatedly after main verbs to indicate actions taking place at the same time.

koat tvəə kaa bandaə riən bandaə.

He has a job while also studying.

vie roam bandaə crieŋ bandaə.

She dances while also singing.

The expression cuən kaal ជួលរាល់ ‘sometimes’ implies events that optionally or occasionally take place, and can be used more than once in a sentence, as in:

cuən kaal koat niv pteah, cuən kaal koat tiv krav.

Sometimes she stays home, sometimes she goes out.

cuən kaal koat tvəə baay, cuən kaal koat tij mhoop tvəə srap.

Occasionally she cooks and sometimes she buys ready-to-eat food.

Exercise 1 (Bonus audio 20)

Read these statements aloud. Combine both columns with cuən kaal ‘sometimes.’ Example: knom cuən kaal crieŋ kara?o?kʰee, cuən kaal roam.



1 knom crieŋ kara?o?kʰee.

go dancing

2 peel tumnee knom mæl tuurea?tuh.

read a book

3 look kruu hat keylaa.

take pictures

4 koat cih mootoo dup tiv saalaa.

ride the bicycle

5 nihsat hav kuy tiev.

order fried rice

6 koon koat þam kaareem.

eat fruit



Exercise 2

Read the Cambodian words below. Select the correct one to complete these statements.

- 1 tñay sav, koat min sëv tiv _____ tee.
- 2 vie tiv dae leenj _____ puék maak cie nic.
- 3 peel vie sapbaay cët, kon proh kñom taenj tae criøj _____ nih.
- 4 kon srøy koat min sëv tumloop _____ ?øyvan roal tñay ?aatit tee.
- 5 koat taenj tae sdap camriøj _____ hat praan bandaø.

- a ເຸັ້າໂຄງ
- b ບັດກົດ
- c ເງື່ອກາ
- d ຜ້າມູຍ
- e ດີເປິຈ



Dialogue 2



Sport activities (Audio 2.21)

Virak (A), and Dara (B) ran into each other in the stadium while doing their physical exercise. Listen to them talking about their sports activities.

- A: ?ee puék maak! ruët ?øy kaa liën cieñ kee, knie ruët taam sëñ tae min toan.
- B: ?oo! Virak mook hat praan niv staad nih dae taø?
- A: mœen haøy! cuen kaal, knie mook ruët leenj niv tii nih. coh ?aen vijn?
- B: cie t^hoammea?daa knie mook tii nih roal lñiec nñj.
- A: ?aenj min døñ tee ?eeh, knie taenj tae tiv leenj bal teah roal lñiec tñay can, haøy leenj bal toat roal lñiec tñay put?
- B: ?qncøñ baan cie knie tee tiv pteah mdaanj mdaanj, kee t^haa ?aenj cøñ tiv leenj bal tiv haøy.
- A: nñj haøy, knie cool cët toat bal cieñ kee bamp^hot.
- B: neh, yook tik trøcak mèdqap nih tiv.
- A: ?aa kun. ?ooh! ?aenj cañ tiv stuuc trøy niv tñay ?aatit nih tee?
- B: mien ?øy, mook yook knie p^haaj.

- A: អេត្រកម្មាក! វត្ថិកើលឱ្យនាងគេ ត្បាក់តាមសីដតិចិនទាន់។
- B: អូ! វីរៈមកហាត់ប្រាសាទេស្អាតនេះដើរតើ?
- A: មែនហើយ! ដួនកាល ត្បាមករត់លេងនៅទីនេះ។ ចុះឯងវិញ?
- B: ជាចម្បត្តិត្បាមកទីនេះរាល់ល្អបីង។
- A: ឯងមិនដឹងទេឡើ៖ ត្បាក់ដែឡើលេងបានទៀត!
- រាល់ល្អបីចុះហើយ ហើយលេងបានទៀតរាល់ល្អបីចុះ?
- B: អញ្ញីងបានជាត្រាគៅទៅចុះមួង។
- គេបានចេញទៅលេងបានទៀតហើយ។
- A: ហីងហើយ ត្បាចូលចិត្តទាត់បានលេងគេបំផុត។
- B: ហ្មូ យកទីក្រពុងការមួយដើម្បីនេះទៀត។
- A: អរគុណា អូហូ! ឯងចង់ទៅស្វួចត្រីនៅថ្ងៃអាទិត្យនេះទេ?
- B: មានអី មកយកត្បាចង។

Vocabulary

A
C
B

løen cieŋ kee	លឱ្យនាងគេ	faster than anyone
taam min toan	តាមមិនទាន់	unable to catch up
səŋ tae	សីដតើ	almost, nearly
cie tʰoammea?daa	ជាចម្បត្តិ	usually, ordinarily, normally
kamrɔɔ	កំប្រ	rarely; (it) takes a long time to . . .
ruət leenj	វត្ថិលេង	to jog
tiv leenj	ទៅលេង	to go to visit; to go to play
staad (kəylaatʰaan)	ស្អាត (កីឡាភ្លោន)	stadium
tee	តើ	to make a phone call (shortened form of telephone)
bal teah	បានលេង	volleyball
toat bal	ទាត់បានលេង	play soccer
cieŋ kee bampʰot	ជាងគេបំផុត	the most
stuuc trøy	ស្វួចត្រី	fishing



Language points

In Cambodian many words are used to refer to ‘friend(s)’: mit មិត្ត; mit p^heak មិត្តភក្តិ; puək maak ពួកម៉ាក; mit samlaj មិត្តសមាត្រ; and klaə ត្រី. In general, mit p^heak មិត្តភក្តិ is used to politely refer to a friend or a group of friends, while mit មិត្ត is rather formal. The words puək maak ពួកម៉ាក and klaə ត្រី ‘buddy, pal’ are normally used informally to refer to good and close friends.

Sokha cie mit l?aa cieŋ kee.

សុខាភ័យមិត្តល្អជាងគ់។

Sokha is my best friend.

?ee! puək maak tiv naa?

ឡើ! ពួកម៉ាកទៅណា?

Eh buddy! Where are you going?

nih cie mit p^heak look kruu.

នេះជាមិត្តភក្តិលោកត្រូវ។

Here is the teacher’s friend.



Exercise 3

Read the expressions in the Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

1 knom tumloap tiv _____ riəŋ roal tñay.

2 koon koat cool cət leenj _____.

3 puək yəəŋj _____ leenj niv staad ?oolampik.

4 vie _____ l?aa cieŋ kee bamp^hot.

5 koat cool cət _____ taam pləv tooc cieŋ kee.

a ប្លាហំទេះ

b ដី៖កង់

c ហាត់ប្រាកាំណា

d ទៅវេត់

e ទាត់ប្លាហំ

Exercise 4



Practice reading the Cambodian scripts. Match the Cambodian words with the appropriate English words.

- | | |
|-----------------|--------------------------|
| 1 ស្នាប់ចំប្រើង | a to exercise (work out) |
| 2 រត់លើន៍ | b soccer |
| 3 ឲកម៉ាក | c to fish (with a line) |
| 4 បាល់ទាត់ | d friend |
| 5 ហាត់ប្រាណណា | e to run fast |
| 6 ស្វែចត្តិ | f to listen to music |

Dialogue 3



Day off and activities (**Audio 2.22**)

Navy (A) has not seen her friend Dara (B) for a while. They meet each other at the restaurant and are talking about their day off and plans. Listen to their conversation.

- A: Dara! ?aeŋ niv tvəə kaanje roat dədael ri??
- B: knie tiv tvəə kaanje roat taə, pruh mien tñay c^hup somraak craən. coh ?aeŋ?
- A: knie tvəə kaa ?aoy krom hun ?aeka?coon. tvəə pramuəy tñay knoŋ məsə?pdaa.
- B: tñay c^hup, knie tumloap sam?aat pteah, baok k^hao ?aav, niŋ t^hae reaksaa suən cbaa.
- A: knie som keen ?aoy c?aet, tae ?əyləv mien kumrourj tməy muəy.
- B: tae kumrourj noh yaŋ məc dae?
- A: bantoap ceen pii tvəə kaa tiv ban̄riən kuə ?aŋkleeh, daembəy rook luy bant^haem.
- B: !?aa nah! ?aoy tae cliət baan.
- A: knie sansam luy caŋ tiv dae leej ?əerop.
- B: knie kaa mien camnaŋ camnool cət tiv dae.

- A: ?ee tiv cie muøy knie cbah cie sapbaay nah, tsəh bəy təv
sansam luy pii ?əyləv nih kaa daoy!
B: ?aeŋ mien kumnit l?aa nah, ?aa kun.

- A: ជាក ឯងទៅធ្វើការដោរដូចដីលប្ប?
B: ត្នាំនៅធ្វើការដោរដូចតើ ព្រោះមានថ្មីលយ៉ា សម្រាកព្រឹង។ ឬ៖ឯង?
A: ត្នាំធ្វើការអោយក្រុមហ៊ុននកជន។ ធ្វើប្រាំមួយថ្មីក្នុងមួយ
ស្ថាប័។
B: ថ្មីលយ៉ា ត្នាទម្លាប់សំអាតដ្ឋែះ បោកខោអារ៉ែ និងថែរក្សាស្អានថ្មារោ។
A: ត្នាំសុំគេងអោយដ្ឋែត តែតិន្ទូរមាន តម្រង់ថ្មីមួយ។
B: តើតម្រង់នោះយើងមែងដីរៈ?
A: បន្ទាប់ចេញពីធ្វើការ ត្នាទៅបែង្រែនគុអង់គេស
ដើម្បីរកណុយបន្លែម។
B: លូណាស់! អោយតិចឆ្លៃតាន។
A: ត្នាំសន្យំលូយចង់ទៅដើរលេងអីបោ។
B: ត្នាក់មានចំណាត់ចំណាលបិត្តទៅដើរ។
A: អោទៅជាមួយត្នាច្បាស់ជាសប្តាយណាស់
ទាស់បីត្រូវសន្យំលូយពីតិន្ទូរនេះក៏ដោយ!
B: ឯងមានគំនិតលូណាស់ អរគុណ។



Vocabulary

tumloap	ទម្ងាប់ (ទំណាប់)	to make a habit, to become accustomed to
sam?aat	សំអាត	to clean
baok k ^h ao ?aav	បោកខោអារ៉ែ	to do laundry, wash clothes
t ^h ae reaksaa	ថែរក្សា	to nuture
suən cbaa	សូនច្បារ	garden
c?aet	ដ្ឋែត	to be full, satisfied (esp. with food, drink)

keen ?aoj c?aei	ເດືອນແກ້ໄຂຕີ	to catch up on sleep
kumrouŋ	ຕີເມືາງ (ຕິ່ແນ້ງ)	plan
baŋriən kuə	ບັນຍົງຮູ້	to teach supplementary class/course
bantʰaem	ບໍລິສຸມ	to add to, in addition
tueh bøy	ເຖິງ:ບື້	even if, although
sansam	ສະນົ່ງ	to save up
camnaŋ camnool cøt	ចຳណາັ້ນຕຶ້ນພູລະບົດ	desire, wish
tiv leej ?øørop	ເຊົ່າເລັດເສື້ອບ	visiting Europe
kumnit l?aa	ດິນືຕັນ	good idea
kaa daoy	ກໍົເຜົຍ	whether or not

Language points



The word kuə ດູ້ ‘class, lesson’ is a loanword from French, ‘cours.’ The expressions baŋriən kuə ບັນຍົງຮູ້ ‘teach supplementary class’ and riən kuə ເປັນຮູ້ ‘take supplementary class’ are commonly used in Cambodia to refer to mostly evening extra classes. Other expressions used to refer to teaching or taking these additional courses are baŋriən/riən krav maŋ ບັນຍົງ/ເປັນກ්‍රැມ້າງ or baŋriən/riən bantʰaem ບໍລິສຸມ/ເປັນບໍລິສຸມ.

In previous units, tae ເຕື້ was used at the beginning of a formal question statement. Here tae ເຕື້ is shown in a colloquial way in specific contexts to mean ‘also, is it not so, so,’ in which its position is always at the end of a statement or a sentence.

kenom cie kruu baŋriən dae tae.
ຂໍ້ຜົນເຄີຍບັນຍົງ ໃຜຣເຕື້າ

I am a teacher also.

mien ?øy cŋaj dae tae.
ມານເກີ້ມາຫຼັງ ໃຜຣເຕື້າ

Yes, it is quite delicious.

koat sok sapbaay tae.
ຄາຕໍ່ສຸຂສົງໄພແຕື້າ

Yes, she is just fine.

The pair of expressions *təh bəy . . . kaa daoy* ទៅបើ . . . ក៏ដោយ occurs in a fixed clause position with the meaning, ‘whether or not, it’s all the same, even if, it makes no difference.’ Their meaning is similar to *kaa daoy . . . kaa daoy* ក៏ដោយ . . . ក៏ដោយ.

məsen kaa koat min caay, təh bəy mien luy craən kaa daoy.
She will not spend a dime, even though she has lots of money.

min tijn kaa daoy kaa koat niv tae rɔnjim.
Although you are not buying, he’s still smiling.

Exercise 5 (Bonus audio 21)

The questions are asking for ‘what purpose or reason.’ Select the appropriated expresion on the right-hand side to match the answer.



- | | |
|---|-------------------------|
| 1 koat tiv psaa daembəy ?əy? | a sokp ^{hiep} |
| 2 riən ?əŋkleeh daembəy ?əy? | b rook luy krav |
| 3 vie sam?aat pteah daembəy ?əy? | c tijn mhoop |
| 4 haat kəylaa daembəy ?əy? | d rook kaanje tməy |
| 5 vie tvəe kaa bənt ^h eam daembəy ?əy? | e ?aoy mien kəmlaq |
| 6 koat keej ?aoy c?aet daembəy ?əy? | f ?aoy mdøy sapbaay cət |



Exercise 6

Read the Cambodian script. Use them to answer these questions from Dialogue 3.

- 1 Dara tvəe kaanje ?əy? _____.
- 2 Navy tvəe kaa ?aoy neak naa ? _____.
- 3 krav pii sam?aat pteah, baok khao ?aav Dara tvəe ?əy tiət?
_____.
- 4 peel tray somraak Navy som tvəe ?əy? _____.
- 5 kraoy ceen pii tvəe kaa, Navy tiv banriən ?əy? _____.

- a តួអង់គេស
- b ថែរក្បាស្ទនច្បារ
- c គេងអោយផ្លូត
- d ក្រុមហ៊ុនជកជន
- e ការងារផ្តុំ

Exercise 7



Read these expressions aloud. Rearrange them to make correct sentences.

1 camnaq	koat mien	bant ^h aem	tvəə kaanje
camnool cət			
2 banriən kuə	kumnit	p ^h iesaa ?əŋkleeh	koat mien
3 sansam luy	tīn pteah	srəy nih	daəmbəy
4 ?aerj min	tae cam	kaa knom niv	moo̯k kaa daoy
5 t ^h aat ruup	cool cət	teehsa?caa	praasaat aŋkɔɔ voat

Reading and writing words with diacritics



Cambodian has a set of diacritics (symbols) that are placed on a consonant to modify its pronunciation. The most commonly used symbols are: bantak ែ, placed over the final consonant symbol to shorten the vowel of that syllable. For example: caaq ចាត់ changes to caq ចាត់; kaap កាប់ to kap កាប់; kiet គើតិះ changes to koat គោតិះ; mien មោន to moan មោន់.

muuse?ka?toan មុុសេះកាទោន់, or ‘rat teeth,’ first is used to convert six of the second series consonant symbols – ញោគ ឃី, ញោគ ឃិំ, ញោគ ធម៌, យោគ ឃិំ, រោគ ី, វោគ ី – to first series consonant symbols ងាំង ឃី, ងាំង ឃិំ, មាំង ធម៌, យាំង ឃិំ, រាំង ី, and វាំង ី, as in maon មោៅង ‘time’ and vaen វោន់ ‘ring.’ Second, it is used to convert the first series consonant baa ប៉ា to paa ប៉ោ as in paa ប៉ោ ‘father.’ Third, when combined with the six superscript vowels symbols – ែ ែ ែ ែ ែ ែ – the form ែ is replaced by the form ែ៥ as in nam ណែ៥ ‘to eat.’

treysap ព្រៃស is used to convert these four first series consonants – baa ប៉ា, saa ស៉ា, haa ហ៉ា, and ?aa អ៉ា symbols – to second series consonants bao ប៉ោ, sao ស៉ោ, hoo ហ៉ោ, and ?eo អ៉ោ, as in suu សូូ, ‘to venture,’ hoo ហ៉ោ, ‘to cheer,’ or hien ហ៉ោន ‘to dare, brave.’ When it co-occurs with the superscript vowels, the form ែ is replaced by the form ែ៥ as in hiiŋ ហូូង ‘toad.’

sanjook sajnnaa ៩ is used in words of Pali, Sanskrit, or foreign origin. When ៩ marks the inherent vowel then that vowel is pronounced as if written with a short /a/ as in *toap* ទីពា. When ៩ is placed on the final យ, it has the sound /ay/ as in *kaari?yaalay* ការិយាត្សយ. When ៩ is followed by the final consonant /n/, then the pronunciation is /an/ as in *num p?an* នូមបុង ‘bread.’

toandeia?k^hiet ៩ is used on the final consonant of words of foreign origin to silence the sound that consonant as in *?u?tiehhaa* ឱចាបារណា.

rəbat ៩ is used on the final consonant of words of foreign origin to silence the final consonant in most cases. In some cases, it changes the vowel /ɔ/ to /oa/ as in *poa* ពុណិ or *t^hoa* ធិបី. When it appears over a medial consonant, it is pronounced as /rə/ as in *tu?rə?kuet* ទុគិតិត.

leek ?ahsdaa ៩ is used on consonants ក ង ន ម ប ឬ when they represent the following words: *kaa* ក៏ ‘then,’ *daa* ដ៏ ‘which,’ *n^ho* នឹះ ‘there it is,’ *m^ho* មី ‘come,’ or *haa* ហ៏ ‘here it is.’



Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.23; Bonus audio 22)

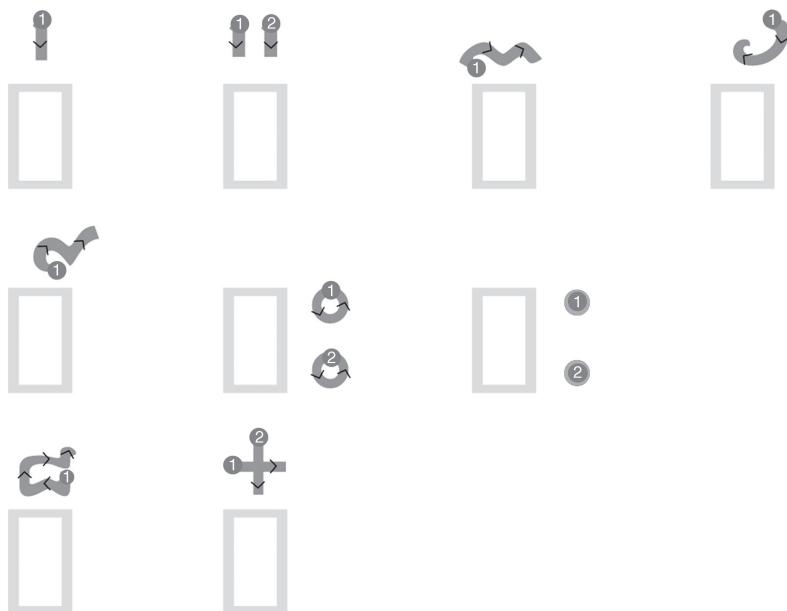


Use the audio to listen to this passage. First, draw a circle around the words with diacritic symbols. Second, underline five action verbs, and then use them to make short sentences.

មនុស្សម្មាក់ៗមានទំលាប់ និងចំណាច់ចំណូលចិត្តខុសទេត្រា។ អ្នកខ្លះចូលចិត្តដើរកំសាន្តនៅឱាងក្រោ ឡើងវាដើរ ទិញអីភីន់ ឡើងអីនៅឱាងក្រោ បូឡេដើរលេងជាមួយពួកម៉ាកា អ្នកខ្លះចូលចិត្តនៅផ្ទះ គេងស្អាប់ចំប្រែង ម៉ឺនសេវារោក បូម៉ែលខ្លួនស្យូន៍។ ចំពោះអ្នកខ្លះធ្វើការថែមម៉ោង យកប្រាក់ដើម្បីផ្ទៃយត្តិតាមរាយក្តីនូវគ្មាន តែទោះបីជាមាន ការរល់យក់ដែលការិយាល័យក៏គេចិនត្រូវការហាត់ប្រាងដើម្បី សុខភាពដើរ។ គេចូលចិត្តហាត់ប្រាង តែលេងកិច្ច បូឡេ កំលេងនៅត្បាង នៅតាមស្នូនធផ្សារសាធារណៈ បូន្ថែតាមមាត់ទន្លេ។

mənuh mneak mneak mien tumloap, niŋ camnaŋ camnool cət k^hoh k^hoh knie. neak klah cool cət daə kamsan niv k^haŋ krav, tiv psaa daə tij ɻeyvan, tiv nam ɻey niv krav, riŋ tiv daə leej cie muəy puək maak. neak klah cool cət niv pteah, keeŋ, sdap camrien, məəl siəvp^hiv, riŋ məəl turea?tuəh. cəmpuəh neak klah tvəə kaa t^heam maŋ, yoɔk prak daəmbəy cuəy kruəsa, ɻaoŋ koon riən kuə bant^haem. tae tuəh bəy cie mien kaa rɔvəel yaŋ naa koo daoy, kaa kee miŋ plic kaa hat praan daəmbəy sokp^hiep dae. kee cool cət hat praan, ruət, leen kəylaa, riŋ tiv ram niv staad, niv suən cbao saat^hierea?knə?, riŋ niv taam moat tuənlee.

Table 15 How to write diacritic symbols



Practice writing the diacritic symbols. Start from 1 or 2 and follow the arrow. Notice their position in relation to the consonants.

Unit Twelve

kaa tvəə ðamnaə

ការធ្វើដំណើរ

Traveling



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about your travel plans and means of traveling
- ask and tell about various sites to visit in Cambodia
- use words or expressions related to traveling
- read and write Cambodian punctuation



Dialogue 1



Places to visit (**Audio 2.24**)

Listen to Navy (A) and Rany (B) talking about their favorite places to visit in Cambodia.

-
- A: ?aəŋ niv pnum piŋ baan bəy kʰae haəy taə baan tiv tvəə ðamnaə komsaan konlaeŋ naa klah?
- B: knoŋ tii kroŋ, knie baan cool mœl preah baromrievean, saara?mœntii ciet, tiv vat, niŋ cih tuuk daə leej taam moat tuənlee.
- A: coh niv krav tii kroŋ, ?aəŋ baan tiv konlaeŋ naa klah dae?
- B: knie cool cət tiv keen somraak niv moat sa?mot, riŋ tiv camkaa cuəy mae dam bənlæe, niŋ beh plae cʰəə srah srah nam.

- A: coh peel yup taə kmeeŋ kmeeŋ kee cool cət tiv daə leen
konlaerŋ naa dae?
- B: puək vie tiv baay krav, pʰək sraa, ram criəŋ karaoke niv baa
taam moat tuənlee konleerŋ dael mien pniəv baarətəəh craən.
- A: ni?yieŋ ?aŋcəŋ ?aeŋ baan tiv leen siəm riep məəl praasaat
bo?raan haey riŋ niv?
- B: niv tee cam peel vihsa?ma?kaal sən səm tiv.
- A: knie kaə caŋ tiv dae, baə sən cie miən ?aokaah, cie pi?saeh tiv
məəl praasaat oŋkɔɔ voat, knie miŋ dael kʰəəŋ sah.
- B: ?aŋcəŋ tŋay naa muəy cam tiv teaŋ ?ah knie.
- A: l?aa tiv peel vihsa?ma?kaal pruəh puek yəəŋ cʰup pii ?aatit.
- A: ឯងនៅក្នុងពេញបានពេខហើយ តើបានទៅ
ធ្វើដីណើរកសាន្តនៅកន្លែងណាមួយ៖?
- B: ក្នុងទីក្រុង ត្បាបានចូលម៉ឺនប្រព័ន្ធផ្លាសាមនឹងជាតិ
ទៅតួ និងដីទូកដើរលេងតាមមាត់ទន្ទោ។
- A: ចុះនៅក្រោទីក្រុង ឯងបានទៅកន្លែងណាមួយ៖ដីរ?
- B: ត្បាចូលចិត្តទៅគេងសំភកនៅមាត់សមូទ្រ ប្រទេ
ចំការដូយឱ្យថាបន្ទីនិងបេះផ្លូវយើសសៀវភៅ។
- A: ចុះពេលយប់ តើក្នុងទេចូលចិត្តដើរលេងកន្លែងណាមួយ៖ដីរ?
- B: ចូកភាពទៅបាយក្រោ ីកក្រោ កំច្រៀងការកាត់អូខេនៅបានកាម
មាត់ទន្ទោកន្លែងដែលមានក្រោបរទេសប្រើន។
- A: និយាយអញ្ញីង ឯងបានទៅលេងសៀមរាប
ម៉ឺនប្រាសាចបុរាណហើយប្រទេ?
- B: នៅទេ ចាំពេលវិស្សុមកាលសិនសីមទោ។
- A: ត្បាកំចង់ទៅដីរ បើសិនជាមានិកាស ជាតិសេស
ទៅម៉ឺនប្រាសាចអង្គតួ ត្បាចិនដែលយើញសោះ។
- B: អញ្ញីងយើងចាំទៅទាំងអស់ត្បាត។
- A: ណូ ទៅពេលវិស្សុមកាល ក្រោះពួកយើងលួយប៉ែរអាគិត្រ។



Vocabulary

damnaø	ដំណើរ	traveling, trip
kamsaan	កំសាន្ត	to relax, to rest
damnaø kamsaan	ដំណើរកំសាន្ត	pleasure/leisure trip
sa?mot	សិមុទ្ធ	ocean, sea
coh ?aen viñ	ចូះនៅវិញ	and you, how about you
moat tuənlee	មាត់ទន្លេ	riverside, riverbank
dooc cie	ដួចជា	such as, for example
saara?muəntii ciet	សារមន្ទីរជាតិ	national museum
preah baromrieckvean	ព្រះបរមរាជកំង	royal palace
praasaat bo?raan	ប្រាសាទុរាង	ancient monuments
baø sən	បើសិន	if
?aokaah	ឱកាស	opportunity
vihsa?ma?kaal	វិស្សូមកាល	vacation, school break, holiday



Language points

The word kamsaan កំសាន្ត ‘to relax,’ added to tvøø damnaø ធ្វើដំណើរ means ‘to take a leisure/pleasure trip.’ A similar expression is tiv dae leen៥ ទៅធ្វើរលេង ‘go for a stroll’ or ‘to go for a ride.’ The expression tiv leen៥ ទៅលេង usually means ‘to visit a person or a place.’

rea?mea?niyea?t^haan រមណីយប្បនិន ‘resort’ is a compound noun made up of two elements borrowed from Pali/Sanskrit of ancient India. It refers to a variety of tourist sites/attractions, whether natural or man-made. It is used more frequently nowadays to replace the more Cambodian-sounding term kanlaen^h dae leen៥ កំន្លែងធ្វើរលេង, which literally means ‘place to go for leisure/relaxation.’

The expression baø sən cie បើសិនជា ‘if’ is a shortened form of baø prasən cie បើប្រសិនជា and is a conditional/suppositional clause. When combined with the expression mien ?aokaah មានឱកាស ‘to have opportunity to,’ it is used to indicate the wish to do something if an opportunity arises.

knom tvøe ðamnaø tiv leen bøø tuønlee saap.

I visited Tonle Sap Lake.

ðamnaø kamsaan tiv tookyoo sapbaay nah.

The pleasure trip to Tokyo was great fun.

baø søø cie mien ?aokaah koat moøk haøy.

If she/he has time, she/he will come.

pnum kuuleen mien tik tleak craøn.

Phnom Koulean has several waterfalls.

baø søø cie kmien luy kom tiv daø leen.

If you don't have money, don't travel.

Exercise 1



First, read these statements aloud. Second, use the expression baø søø cie mien ?aokaah with these statements. Third, use nñø to make them into future statements.

- 1 knom tiv crieø karaoke niv baa taam moat tuønlee.
- 2 puøk yøøø cool mæøl saara?møøntii ciet.
- 3 pniøv baørøteeh cool cøt tiv keeø samraak niv moat sa?mot.
- 4 neak ðamnaø tij sambot cool veaø niv tnay can.
- 5 cih tuuk daø leen taam moat tuønlee sapbaay nah.

Exercise 2



Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 baørøteeh _____ daø leen knoø tii kroø daømbøø tij ?øvan.
- 2 knom _____ ðamnaø tiv leen niv baørøteeh.
- 3 puu knom cool cøt dam _____ knoø suøn cbaa nah.
- 4 neak ðamnaø tiv siøm rieø daømbøø mæøl _____ kmaø.
- 5 _____ cie mien luy knom caø tiv riøn niv ?øørop mdøøø.

- a ប៉ូលិន
- b បៀសិន
- c ប្រាសាគបុរណា
- d ចូលចិត្ត
- e ចង់ដី



Dialogue 2



Bus ride to Sihanouk Ville (Audio 2.25)

Listen to a conversation between two friends who are talking about traveling by bus to Sihanouk Ville.

- A: ?aeñ canj tiv leen sa?mot niv kroñ preah Sihanouk cie muøy kñom tee?
- B: t?ey min canj. cih ?ey tiv?
- A: taø ?aeñ tloap tvøø domnaø taam laan cnuel tee?
- B: min dael tee, thlop tae cih laan ptoal kluøn riø cuøl laan krom hun. coh ?aeñ vijn?
- A: thloøp cih, peel tiv leen srok komnaøt niø tiv k?aet nie nie.
- B: coh cih laan cnuel niø yaø mæc dae?
- A: ?oo! vie sruøl nah, c?up kruup kanleaø ñam, haøy mien so?vatp?iep tiøt p?haøn, tae mien neak klah pul laan.
- B: ?ae! knie canj saak cih laan cnuel mdøø. mien ?aeñ kamdaø l?øø nah.
- A: mien ?ey! tae kom plic yøøk tnam pul laan moøk cie muøy p?haøn.
- B: cih laan cnuel tiv leen sa?mot muk cie sapbaay haøy t?aoøk tiøt.
- A: ឯងចង់ទៅលេងសមូគ្រន៍ក្រុងព្រះសីហនុជាមួយខ្ញុំទេ?
ឪមិនចង់។ ដី:អីទេ?
- A: តើឯងឆ្លាប់ធ្វើដំណើរតាមទ្វានឃើលទេ?
- B: មិនដែលទេ ឆ្លាប់តែដី:ទ្វានឆ្លាប់ខ្លួន ប្រមើលទ្វានក្រុមហ៊ុន។
ឯះឯងវិញ្ញុ?
- A: ឆ្លាប់ដី: ពេលទៅលេងប្រកកំណើត និងទៅខេត្តនានា
- B: ឯះដី:ទ្វានឃើលយ៉ាងម៉ែងម៉ែងដែរ?
- A: អូ! វាប្រសិលណាស់ ឈប់គ្រប់កន្លែងញូរំ ហើយមាន
សុវត្ថិភាពទៀតដែរ តែមានអ្នកខ្លះ: ពុលទ្វាន។
- B: អើ! គ្មានដំណើសកដី:ទ្វានឃើលម៉ោង។ មានឯងកំជំលូណាស់។
- A: មានអើ! តែកំត្រួចយកខ្លាំពុលទ្វានមកជាមួយដោយ។
- B: ដី:ទ្វានឃើលទៅលេងសមូគ្រមុខជាសប្តាយហើយម៉ោងទៀត។

Vocabulary

A
B

laan ptoal kluən	ឡាន ព្រោល គ្គោន	personal car
laan cnuəl	ឡាន ចុះល	coach, bus
mav	ម៉ាវ	to take over or rent the entire thing
laan kromhun	ឡាន ក្រុមហ៊ុន	private company car with driver
cuel	ជូល	to employ, to rent
cih	ជីខ	to get in, to sit on
ηiey sruəl	ងាយស្រួល	easy, convenient
so?vatp̚iep	សុវត្ថិភាព	safety
srok kamnaət	ស្រុកកំណើត	hometown
pul laan	ពូលឡាន	to get carsick
tnam pul laan	ថ្វាំពូលឡាន	pills for motion sickness
muk cie	មុខជា	surely, undoubtedly

Language points



Travel in and out of Cambodia can be made by air, land, and water. In major cities, especially the capital, Phnom Penh, you can travel by car, taxi, motorcycle-taxi, cyclo ឈូរិក្តី, a pedaled three-wheel vehicle, and also tuktuk, the motorized version of a cyclo.

Cambodia is divided into a couple of dozen provinces, most of them endowed with unique and attractive sites: Angkor Park in Siem Reap with ancient temples; seaside resorts in Sihanouk Ville, Kep, and Koh Kong; natural hills and various ethnic minority groups in Mondulkiri and Ratanakiri.

The word mav ម៉ាវ ‘to take the entire thing or task’ is commonly used in these expressions: mav laan, ‘to rent the entire car,’ mav tñj, ‘to buy all,’ mav kaa, ‘to bid on a total contract.’

The word ពូល ពូល when immediately followed by a means of transport usually means ‘to be affected/to get sick by the motion of that particular means of transport,’ for instance pul laan ពូលឡាន ‘to get sick by car movement.’ Other common forms of pul ពូល are pul tnam ពូលថ្វាំ ‘to be allergic to medicine’ and pul rolook ពូលរលក ‘to be seasick.’

knom min pul laan tee.

ខ្ញុំមិន ពុល ឡានទេ។

I don't get carsick.

koat pul kaanoot.

តាត់ពុលកាលូត។

He got boatsick.

mae pul ka?pal hah.

មីមិលកដី លែប់ហោះ។

Mother was airsick.

The word srok ស្រួល ‘locality, district, area,’ combined with knoŋ ក្នុង ‘in, inside’ and krav ក្រោរ ‘out, outside,’ are compound nouns with specific colloquial meanings: knoŋ srok ក្នុងស្រួល ‘local, in the country’ and krav srok ក្រោរស្រួល ‘foreign, abroad, outside the country.’ The foreign compound from Pali/Sanskrit, baarateeh បារោទឹក ‘foreign, abroad’ is the equivalent of the Cambodian expression krav srok ក្រោរស្រួល. srok krav ស្រួលក្រោរ or prateeh krav ប្រាសិនក្រោរ, however, means ‘a foreign country/land.’

It's also worth noting the colloquial meaning and anthropological connotation of the following pair of words: srok ស្រួល ‘local, domesticated, or cultured’ and prey ព្រៃរ ‘forest, outback, wild, unsophisticated.’

The verb cih ិ៍ ‘to be on a mount/vehicle, to ride’ is used with a variety of nouns to denote movement from one place to another via an animal or a vehicle.

With the advent of motorized vehicles, the verb baek បឱក is used to mean ‘to drive a vehicle.’ Its traditional equivalent, baa បាំ ‘to conduct, to steer’ is still used in the expression, baek baa, ‘to drive/command a motorized means of transport.’

knom cih siikloo tiv riен.

ខ្ញុំជីវិសិកូឡើយន។

I ride the rickshaw to school.

vie cih mootoo daə leenj.

ខ្ញុំជីវិមួតិដើរលេង។

He rides a motorcycle for fun.

koat baek ysoen hah.

កាត់បើកយន្តហោះ។

She drives the plane.

paa knom baa kou tiv srae.

ពីរខ្មែរគោទៅដ្ឋាន។

Father drives the ox-cart to the ricefield.

The word dae ដែរ ‘also, too, as well’ at the end of a sentence denotes a sequential set of actions, as in: koat caej tiv dae ‘he also wants to go,’ koat moek dae, ‘she also comes.’

The word kaa ក៏ ‘as well, too, also,’ used in conjunction with dae ដែរ and certain verbs also denotes various shades of meaning.

Reciprocal action:

knom kaa sralaj neak dae.

ខ្សែក៏ស្រឡាញម្បកដែរ។

I love you too.

knom kaa min cool cet neak dae.

ខ្សែក៏មិនចូលចិត្តម្បកដែរ។

I don’t like you either.

Agreement:

knie kaa cool cet dae leen dae.

គ្នាក៏ចូលចិត្តដើរលេងដែរ។

I like to go for a walk too.

Similarity:

koat kaa cie kruu bañriem dae.

កាត់ក៏ជាគ្លឹបផ្លូវនេះ។

He is a teacher too.

In the following examples, tloap ធ្វាប់ ‘habitually used to’ and dael ដើល ‘to have ever’ are almost identical in terms of meaning when used as modal verbs.

The negation min dael មិនដើល and min tloap មិនធ្វាប់ placed immediately before a verb, however, do alter the meaning of the two expressions, with min dael ‘have never’ being more emphatic than min tloap ‘have not.’

neak tloap tiv baarøteeh tee?

អ្នកធ្លាប់ទៅបរទេសទេ?

Have you ever been overseas?

neak dael tiv baarøteeh tee?

អ្នកដែលទៅបរទេសទេ?

Have you ever gone abroad?

caa! knom tloap tiv.

ចា! ខ្សោយបាន

Yes, I have gone.

tee! knom min tloap tiv tee.

ទេ! ខ្សោយមិនធ្លាប់ទេទេ។

No, I haven't gone.

tee! knom min dael tiv tee.

ទេ! ខ្សោយមិនដែលទៅទេ។

No, I have never gone.



Exercise 3 (Bonus audio 23)

First, read these statements aloud. Second, use the expressions min tloap or min dael with these statements. Third, make them into questions to ask someone.

- 1 paa tvæə ðamnaæ taam yuən hah.
- 2 baaŋ srəy cuer laan krom hun.
- 3 cih kaanot mien so?vatpʰiep.
- 4 koat baæk laan ptoal kluən tiv leen sa?mot.
- 5 teehsa?caa cuer mootoo cih dae leen knoŋ tii kroŋ.



Exercise 4

Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Then select them to complete these statements.

- 1 niv srok kmae, kee craən cih laan cnuəl tiv _____.
- 2 prueh vie mien so?vatpʰiep niŋ _____ nah.
- 3 knom min cool cət tvæə ðamnaæ _____ tee.
- 4 prueh knom _____.
- 5 niv pnum piŋ, koat ?at hien cih _____ tee, prueh klaac mien kruəh tnak.

- a. តាមទុនណែនយុល
 - b. ម៉ោត្តុខ្សែប
 - c. ងាយប្រើបល
 - d. ខេត្តនានា
 - e. ពូលទុនភន

Dialogue 3



Taxi ride to the airport (**Audio 2.26**)



Listen to the conversation between a passenger (A) and a taxi driver (B).

- A: ?aalo! neak baek taaksii mœen tee?
B: baat! baat! look srœy miœn kaa ?œy dae?
A: ?œylœv knom niv sœnt'aakie pnum piñ. taœ puu ?aac moek yœok knom baan tee?
B: baat baan look srœy, dap praam nietii tiœt knom niñ tiv dal prœh plœv coap cauraacaa bantœc.
A: ?oo! taksii moek dal haœy tae!
B: look srœy cañ ?œncœœn tiv naa dae?
A: knom cañ tiv viel ka?pal hah pnum piñ. yœok thay ponmaan dae?
B: baat! yœok taam konjtoa laan. t^hoammea?daa prahael dop dollaa.
B: soom ?œncœœn cool look srœy.
A: eh puu, baek ?aoy liœn bantœc baan tee? cit dal moaœ ka?pal hah cœn ?œylœv haœy.
B: liœn peek klaac mien kruœh tnak. knom tœv prayat. yiœt yiœt mien so?vatphœp cien. tae pram nietii tiœt dal haœy.

A: ເກົ່າ! ຊຸກເບື້ອຕາກໍສູ່ເມນເಡ?

B: ຖັນ! ຖັນ! ເຫັກງຽມໝານກາເຄີ່ຜົວ?

A: ຕົ້ນງໍ່ເຊີ່ເສດຖາຕາກໍແຕ່ງໆ ເຕີ່ງໆ ພາຜະຍົກຍົ່ງໝານເດ?

B: ບັນບານເຫັກງຽມ ຜົບຜູ້ນໍາທີ່ເຈົ້າຕ ຊຸ້ນສີ້ເຈົ້າຜົລ່ ເງົາ:ຜູ້ຜົວບໍ່ຜົວບົນຫຼືໆ

A: ຂ! ຕາກໍສູ່ມົກຜົລ່ເກົ່າຍເຕີ!

- B: លោកស្រីចង់អព្វីឆ្លើទៅណាដើរ?
- A: ខ្ញុំចង់ទៅរាលកតាំល់ហេរោះតូចពេញ។ យកថ្មីបុន្ណានដើរ?
- B: បានយកតាមកុងទៅឡាតាំង។ ធម្មតាប្រឈាល១០មុន្យរោ។
- B: សូមអព្វីឆ្លួចលោកស្រី។
- A: អេព្យ បើកអោយលើវិនបន្ទិចបានទេ?
ដីតដល់ម៉ោងកតាំល់ហេរោះ ចេញពន្លឹងហើយ។
- B: លើវិនពេកខ្សោចមានគ្រោះឆ្នាំកែវាទៀត ខ្ញុំត្រូវប្រឈមត្រូវ
យើតុងមានសុគ្រិកាណជាង។ តែប្រាំនាទីទៀតគឺតដល់ហើយ។



Vocabulary

koŋtoa	កុងទីរ	meter
coap coobraacaa	ជាប់ការចរ	traffic congestion
ka?pal	កតាំល់	motorboat, steamboat
ka?pal hah	កតាំល់ហេរោះ	airplane, aircraft
viel ka?pal hah	ភាលកតាំល់ហេរោះ	airport
klaac	ខ្សាច	to fear, be afraid of
prayat	ប្រឈមត្រូវ	to be careful, cautious
krusəh tnak	គ្រោះឆ្នាំកែវា	danger, accident
liən # yiit	លើវិន # យើត	to be fast # to be slow



Exercise 5 (Bonus audio 24)

A tourist is asking you these questions. How would you answer?



- 1 cuəl laan cih knoŋ tii kroŋ mətñay tlay ponmaam?
- 2 tae ?eaŋ ?aac moɔk tctuel knom pii viel ka?pal hah baan tee?
- 3 sambot yuən hah məcœəŋ pii pnum piŋ tiv siem riep tlay ponmaam?
- 4 coh samrap tiv moɔk?
- 5 laan cuəl nih baek tiv Mondulkiri baan tee?
- 6 cuəl tuuk cih dae leen taam moat tʊənlee tlay ponmaam?

Exercise 6



Rearrange these words or expressions to make correct sentences.

1 taaksii	viel ka?pal hah	cih tiv	koat hav
2 knom	sant ^h aakie thoak	noh	skoal
3 moat tuənlee	daə leen̩ taam	look kruu	noam niset
4 cih	pii tŋay	vie cuəl	kaŋ
5 tiv srok kmae	damnae kamsaan	teehsa?caa	cool cət tvəə
6 koat klaac mien	baæk laan	krʊəh tnak peel	liən peek

Reading and writing words with the scripts



Exercise 7



Practice reading the Cambodian words in column 1. Use the / to mark the word boundary. Then match them with their corresponding English counterparts in column 2.

Column 1	Column 2		
1 ពុលទ្វាន	5 បាយកៈរ	with	such as
2 សំណក	6 បានឡើ	carsick	to go for a stroll
3 ដីរលេង	7 ដូចជា	to ride a boat	to rest
4 ជាមួយ	8 ដី៖ទូក	to have gone	to eat out

Exercise 8



Read the Cambodian script aloud. Match the opposite expressions in column 1 with the appropriate expressions in column 2.

Column 1	Column 2		
1 ពេលយ៉ែ	4 យើត	a ចូល	d ក្រោស្រក
2 ទីក្រុង	5 ចេញ	b ធ្វើការ	e ពេលថ្ងៃ
3 ក្នុងប្រុបក	6 លយ៉ែសំណក	c ប្រុបកំប្រុប	f លើន



Exercise 9

Read the expressions (with CV and CVC). Rearrange them to make correct sentences (subject + verb + direct object + (indirect object)).

- | | | | |
|---------|--------|-------|---------|
| 1 ឃ្លាន | លោក | គួច | បៀក |
| 2 តាត់ | ឃ្លាន | ដូល | ដំ |
| 3 បរទេស | នៅ | រៀន | កូនតាត់ |
| 4 ឈប់ | ឃ្លាន | ជង់ | ពីរ |
| 5 កង់ | ទៅសាលា | ជីវិះ | ភា |

Punctuation

The most commonly used punctuation marks are:

leektoo ៖ is used to mark a word or phrase that need to be repeated as in nimuøy nimuøy និមួយូយុំ ‘each one’ or pseen pseen ផ្សែនូយុំ ‘various (things)’

k^han ។ ‘period,’ or end of a sentence or paragraph in English klie or ‘space’, is used to set off proper names, numbers and certain punctuation symbols; it is also used to indicate a comma, break, and a pause in speaking

‘លើ’ ៖ is equivalent to ‘et cetera’

camnoc pii kuuh ; ‘two dots and a slash’ is used the same way as the colon in English; in addition it occurs after the quoting word ; ‘saying as follows,’ and is equivalent to the copulative verb kii ឱ្យ ; ‘that is’



Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.27; Bonus audio 25)



Use the audio to listen and read along with this passage. Draw a red circle around punctuation symbols and a blue circle around diacritic symbols. Draw a square box on transportation words or expressions.

នៅប្រឹកខ្មែរមានកន្លែងដើរលេងជាប្រើន ដូចជាប្រសាធារណៈ
បុរាណា ព្រះបរមាកដកំង់ សារមន្ទីរ គត់ បុន្ថែតាមមាត្រាគន្លែង បុ

សម្រួលដាន៖ ខ្សែនិយមធ្វើដំណើរទៅទីជិតាំដោយប្រើយាន ជំនឿ៖ ផ្ទាល់ខ្លួនគឺ៖ កង់ ម៉ូតូ និងខ្សានា អ្នកដែលគ្នានយានជំនឿ៖ ផ្ទាល់ខ្លួន ប្រើនិះសុវត្ថិភាព ម៉ូតូខ្មែរ ម៉ូតូកង់បី បុ តាក់សុី។ ពេលទៅ ខេត្តម៉ង់ គោប្រើនិះតាក់សុី ម៉ែនឯកាន ក្រុមហិរញ្ញវត្ថុ បុខ្សានយុទ្ធន ក្រោះវាមានសុវត្ថិភាព ហើយមានតម្លៃ ថែកសមរម្យ។ សូច្ចោះ នេះប្រសិទ្ធភាពនៃមានសេវាបោះត្រីនឹងទៅ។

ម្នាយខ្ញុំតាត់និយាយថា៖ នៅពេលមានពិធីបុណ្យចំង់ អ្នកទីក្រុង ចូលចិត្តទៅលេងប្រសកកំណើតនៅតាមខេត្ត។ តែអ្នកខេត្តវិញគេ ចូលចិត្តមកលេងកុំពោះ ជាតិសេសនៅពេលបុណ្យអុទ្ទក។

niv srok kmae mien kanleaŋ daə leenj cie crean dooc cie praasaat bo?raan, preah baromrieccvear, saara?məəntii, vat riː niv taam moat tuənlee, riː sa?mot cie daem. kmae ni?yum tvəə dəmnaə tiv tii cit cit daoy prae yien cumnih ptoal kluən kiː kar, mootoo, niŋ laan. neak dael kmien yien cumnih ptoal kluən crean cih siikloo, mootoo dup, mootoo kar bəy, riː taksii. peel tiv kʰaet mdaaŋ mdaaŋ, kee craən cih taksii, mav laan krom hun, riː laan cnuəl, prəəh mien so?vatpʰiep, haəy tumlay tʰaok samrum. sap thay nih srok kmae miŋ toan mien seevaa rətəh pləəŋ tee.

mdaay knom koat ni?yiey tʰaa: ‘niv peel mien pitʰii bon tʰom tʰom, neak tii kroŋ cool cət tiv leenj srok kamnaət niv taam kʰaet. tae neak kʰaet viŋ kee cool cət moɔk leenj pnum piŋ ciə pi?saeh niv peel bon ?om tuuk.’

Unit Thirteen

sant^haakie nīŋ sambot

សណ្ឌាគារនិងសំបុត្រា

Hotels and tickets



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about booking a hotel/place to stay
- ask and tell about booking/confirming plane tickets and renting a car
- use words or expressions related to buying/confirming tickets or booking a hotel room
- use words or expressions with **samrap**, **bajceak**, **kak**, **baep**, **seevaa**, **seevakam**, **tiv**, **mɔɔk**, **pīn cət**, **cool cət**, and **som cuəy**
- read and write short expressions in Cambodian script related to this theme



Dialogue 1



Confirming a plane reservation (**Audio 2.28**)

John (A) and his son have stayed in Phnom Penh for one week already. They are leaving for Siem Reap the next day. He calls the travel agent (B) to confirm their plane reservations. Listen to their conversation.



Vocabulary

bajceak	បញ្ជាក់	to confirm
sambot yuən hah	សំបុត្រយន្តហោះ	plane ticket
krom hun yuən hah	ក្រុមហ៊ុនយន្តហោះ	airline
leek bajceak	លេខបញ្ជាក់	confirmation number
cəŋ dəmnaə	ចេញដំណើរ	to depart (trip)
kav?ey coap bəŋ?uəc	កៅអីជាប់បង្គច្ច	window seat
kav?ey coap canlah daə	កៅអីជាប់ចន្លោះដើរ	aisle seat
mun peel cəŋ dəmnaə	មុនពេលចេញដំណើរ	before departure time



Language points

preah lien yuən hah ព្រះលានយន្តហោះ ‘airport’ and viel ka?pal hah ភាសកថ្នាំល័យហោះ are interchangeable.

A polite way to request assistance from another person is usually made by placing the word cuəy ជូយ primarily ‘to help or assist’ immediately before a verb. The combination cuəy ជូយ + verb, could also be used to indicate that assistance is provided by another person. The expression som cuəy សិបជូយ makes a request sound even more polite, almost to the point of pleading in some cases. Examples:

knom cuəy koat.

ខ្សោយគាត់។

I help her.

koat cuəy məəl pteah.

គាត់ជូយម៉ឺលជូះ។

He helps take care of the house.

mae cuəy hav mhoop.

ម៉ែជូយហោម្មបា។

Mother helps to order food.

cuəy caol samraam pʰaaŋ.

ជូយថាលសំវាមជួ។

Please also get rid of the garbage.

cuəy saasee sambot p^haaŋ.

ជួយសរស់សំបុត្រដង។

Please write the letter.

The verb bajceak បាយកែវ ‘to confirm, to verify, to specify, to certify’ can be combined with certain nouns to form compound words, as in sambot bajceak សំបុត្របញ្ជាក់ ‘certificate,’ li?k^het bajceak លិខិតបញ្ជាក់ ‘official document or permit,’ leek bajceak លេខបញ្ជាក់ ‘confirmation number’; sækdøy bajceak សែកថ្លែកបញ្ជាក់ ‘explanation’ with implied legal/official status.

koat mien sambot bajceak.

គាត់មានសំបុត្របញ្ជាក់។

She has an official letter.

som bajcak cie muəy li?k^het claaŋ daen.

សុំបញ្ជាក់ជាមួយលិខិតផ្តើមដែន។

Confirming it with your passport.



Exercise 1

Use this expression cuəy . . . ?ao y knom p^haaŋ ‘please . . . for me’ with the following statements. Example: 1. cuəy hav taaksii ?ao y knom p^haaŋ.

- 1 hav taaksii
- 2 bak baak prae li?k^het claaŋ daen
- 3 banriən nihsət
- 4 sansam luy
- 5 t^haat ruup teehsa?p^hiep
- 6 thij tik sot pii yuə
- 7 dam baay
- 8 bampiŋ sambot snaam



Exercise 2

Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 coon ciet _____ cih yuən hah tiv leen siəm reap.
- 2 knom cuəy thij sambot _____ ?ao y puək mak ?aameerikaŋ.
- 3 peel tvəə dəmnaə _____ li?k^het claaŋ daen cuəp k^huen.

- 4 nihsət təv mien _____ pii saalaa daembəy cool riən.
 5 look nieysek pəet som _____ yuən hah.
 6 paa _____ knom niv preah lien yuən prahael kanlah moaŋ.

- a ព្រៃវមាន
- b អជ្ឌត្តិស
- c អង្គយចាំ
- d ដូរសំបុគ្គិត្ត
- e ទោនក្រុង
- f សំបុគ្គត្របញ្ជាក់



Dialogue 2



Booking a hotel room (Audio 2.29)

Listen to a conversation between a traveler (A) and a hotel clerk (B) talking about booking a hotel room in Sihanouk Ville.

- A: ?aaloo, knom caŋ kak bantup niv santʰaakie nih baan tee?
 B: caa niv tṇay naa? samrap ponmaan yup, haəy samrap ponmaan neak?
 A: cap pii s?aeak tiv, niv bəy yup. samrap mɔnuh cah bəy neak niŋ kmeeŋ mneak.
 B: yəəŋ mien bantup kr̥eə muəy, kr̥eə pii niŋ bantup kruəsaa. look təv kaa bantup ponmaan, haəy bantup yaarŋ məc?
 A: yəəŋ təv kaa bantup dael mien maasiin traceak, bantup tik baep ?əərop, niŋ bantup haam cuək baarəy.
 B: caa baan look, tae s?aeak yəəŋ kmien sal bantup kr̥eə muəy tee.
 A: ?əŋcəŋ yɔɔk bantup kr̥eə pii, pii tiv. məyup tʰlay ponmaan dae?
 B: caa 60 dollaa, kit ruəm tean ?aahaa peel prik.
 A: baan. coh mien laan mook totuel pniəv niv preah lien yuən hah ?ot ban tamlay tee?
 B: caa mien. knom som leek kaat ?intien daembəy boŋcak kaa kak bantup cuun?
 B: bantup kak cap ?əh haəy. s?aeak cuəp knie.

- A: អាណ្យ ខ្ញុំចង់កក់បន្ទប់នៅសណ្ឌាតារនេះបានទេ?
- B: ថា នៅថ្ងៃណា? សំរាប់បុន្ទានយប់ ហើយសំរាប់បុន្ទាននាក់?
- A: ចាប់ពីស្អែកទៅ នៅពាយប៉ា សំរាប់មនុស្សចាស់
បីនាក់និងត្រួវម្នាក់។
- B: យើងមានបន្ទប់គ្រែម្មយ គ្រឿងឯក និងបន្ទប់សំរាប់គ្រឿសារ។
លោកគ្រែករាបបុន្ទានបន្ទប់ ហើយបន្ទប់យ៉ាងម៉ែច?
- A: យើងគ្រែករាបបន្ទប់ដែលមានម៉ាសីនគ្រជាក់
បន្ទប់ទីកិច្ចអីរូប និងបន្ទប់ហាមដកបាន។
- B: ថាបានលោក តើស្អែកយើងគ្មានសល់បន្ទប់គ្រែម្មយទេ។
- A: អត្ថិជយកបន្ទប់គ្រឿងឯក ពីទៅ។ ម្មយយប់ផ្លូបុន្ទានដើរ?
- B: ថា ផ្លូវទៅឯណាន គិតរូមទាំងអាហារពេលព្រឹក។
- A: បាន។ ចុះមានឡាតាំងមកទូលត្រូវនៅព្រះលាងយន្តហោះ
អត់បង់តម្លៃទេ?
- B: ថាមាន។ ខ្ញុំសុំលេខភាពពណ៌ទានដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ ការកក់បន្ទប់ជួន?
- B: បន្ទប់កក់ចចប់អស់ហើយ។ ស្អែកជួបគ្នា។

Vocabulary

A
C
B

kak	កក់	to reserve, to deposit
mɔnuh cah # kmeen	មនុស្សចាស់ # ត្រួវ	adult # child
bantup kree muøy	បន្ទប់គ្រែម្មយ	single room
bantup kree pii	បន្ទប់គ្រឿងឯក	double rooms
bantup kruəsaa	បន្ទប់គ្រឿសារ	family room
maasiin traceak	ម៉ាសីនគ្រជាក់	air conditioner
dəŋhaal	ដោឆាល់	electrical fan
bantup tik baep ʔəərop	បន្ទប់ទីកិច្ចអីរូប	European-style bathroom
haam cuək baarəy	ហាមដកបាន	no smoking
kmien sal	គ្មានសល់	don't have any left

kit ruem	គិត្យរំម	including (add together)
mook totuel	មកទូល	to receive, to pick up
preah lien yuən hah	ព្រះលានយុនហាំ	airport
?at banj tomlay	អត់បង់តួដ្ឋី	not paying, free
kaat ?intien	ភាតតណាគាន	credit card
kok cap	កក់ចំប់	booking completed
krom hun teehsa?caa	ក្រុមហ៊ុនទេសចរណ៍	travel agency



Language points

The word samrap សំរាប់ has several meanings and functions: ‘for,’ ‘to be intended for,’ ‘to be used for/as,’ or ‘a set of things.’ It can be placed before or after the verb, or after a number noun. For example:

bantup mien dañhaal samrap pii neak nih.

The room with a fan is for these two people.

koat tij k^hao ?aav s?aat muəy samrap.

She bought a set of beautiful clothes.

sambot yuən hah nih samrap tiv mook.

This airplane ticket is for a round trip.

t^hmoo nih samrap clak ruup ?apsa?raa.

This stone is used for carving the Apsara image.

In previous units, we have seen these directional words: tiv ទិវ ‘go,’ mook មក ‘come,’ coh ចូំ៖ ‘down,’ laəŋ ឡើង ‘up,’ cool ចូលិ ‘in, into,’ cəŋ ចេញ ‘leave, out,’ niv និវ ‘remaining, still.’ They can also be used as main verbs, prepositions, or adverbs. See examples below with tiv ‘go.’

koat tiv pteah.

ភាត់ទៅផ្ទះ។

She is going home.

som luy koat tiv.

សូមឃុយភាត់ទៅ។

Ask him for money.

pii pteah tiv salaa min cŋaay tee.

ពីផ្ទះទៅសាលាចិនឆ្នាយទេ។

From the house to school is not far.

The word baep បែប ‘style, model, to seem to’ can be used as a regular noun or as a verb:

koat baep tiv pteah haøy.

គាត់បែបទេផ្ទះហើយ។

She seems to have gone home.

baep tmøy nih l?aa nah.

បែបថ្មីនេះល្អណាស់។

This new model is very good.

kom lsek laan baep nih.

កំលក់ឡាតាំងបែបទេៗ។

Don’t sell this type of car.

bonlae baep doc cie srah.

បន្លឹនបែបដូចជាប្រើស់។

The vegetable seems fresh.

Exercise 3



Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 look nieyəek _____ krom hun teehsa?caa.
- 2 santʰaakie nih mien _____ haøy mien danhal tiøt.
- 3 kom _____ niv santʰaakie nih pruøh kmien seavaa l?aa tee.
- 4 bantup samrap kruøsaa mien bantup tik _____.
- 5 look tuk bantup kak s?aat nih _____ damnaø baarøteeh.

- a បែបអីរប
- b កត់បន្ទប់
- c អាណីញ្ញទេ
- d សំរប់អ្នក
- e បន្ទប់ម៉ោក



Exercise 4

Practice reading the Cambodian script. Match opposite expressions in the first list with appropriate expressions in the second list. For example:

1-e ចោក # ត្រូវ

- | | | | |
|----------|---------|---------|-----------|
| 1 ចោក | 2 ចោល | 3 ឆ្លាយ | 4 ចេញទៅ |
| 5 មុន | 6 លិខី | 7 ចុះ | 8 ហាម |
| a អង្គីយ | b អោយ | c ជាប់ | d ចូលមក |
| e ត្រូវ | f ក្រាយ | g ទិញ | h ទឹកីដុំ |



Dialogue 3



Checking in at a hotel (**Audio 2.30**)

The traveler (A) just checked in to the hotel. Listen to his discussion with the hotel clerk (B).

- A: suəsdəy, nih leek bajceak bantup kak.
- B: swaakum neak teaŋ ?d̥h knie
- A: som mœəl bantup sən baan tee?
- B: caa baan, neak banraə niŋ noam look niŋ hœəp ?əyvan tiv bantup nih sən, haəy bæ cəŋ doo som tuurə?sap pii noh mœək.
- A: ?aaloo, yəəŋ mɪn piŋ cət niŋ bantup nih tee, pruəh vie tʰum klen baarey bantœc.
- A: som doo tiv bantup bae muk tiv moat sa?mot baan tee?
- B: caa baan.
- A: yii bantup nih tʰom, haəy s?aat nah.
- B: bantup tməy nih mien yaa ?aŋkuy mœəl teehs?apʰiep sa?mot tiət pʰaaŋ.
- A: coh kanleaŋ nam ?aahaa prik niv ?ae naa? baæk tvie pii moaŋ ponmaan tiv?
- B: niv kʰaaŋ cveŋ day kanleaŋ tɔtuel pniəv. baæk tvie pii moaŋ pram pil tiv moaŋ pram buən prik.
- A: coh kanleaŋ hael tik niv ?ae naa dae?
- B: niv coan tii pram bœy. bæ cəŋ baan kansaeŋ cut kluən rii s?ey tiət som teak toɔŋ kaari?yaalay yəəŋ niv kʰaaŋ kroam.

- A: រាយ baan យើក ចោត tuk dak និង យោទេស craen nah. ណាត់កុន និង សីវា nih.
- B: riikriey daoy baan cuay look. som រាយកែវសង្កសារ snak niv រាយ baan sok sapbaay.
- A: ស្អែក នេះលេខបញ្ជាក់បន្ទប់កក់។
- B: ស្ថាតមនីអ្នកទាំងអស់គ្មាន។
- A: សុំមើលបន្ទប់សិនបានទេ?
- B: ថាបាន អ្នកបំផើនឹងនាំលោកនិងហើបតវាន់ទៅបន្ទប់នេះសិន ហើយបើចង់ដូរ ទូរស័ព្ទពីនោះមក។
- A: អាណ្ញ យើងមិនពេញចិត្តនឹងបន្ទប់នេះទេ ព្រោះវា ជុក្រិនបារីបនិច្ច។
- A: សុំដូរទៅបន្ទប់បែរមុខទៅមាត់សមូគ្របានទេ?
- B: ថាបាន។
- A: យើបន្ទប់នេះដំ ហើយ ស្មាតណាស់។
- B: បន្ទប់ដូនីនេះ មានយ៉ាងដូនីនេះដែលទេសភាពសមូគ្រឡើតដង។
- A: ចុំកន្លែងឆ្លាំកាហារព្រីកនៅឯណា?
ហើកទ្វារពីម៉ោងបុន្ទានទៅ?
- B: នៅខាងឆ្វេងដៃកន្លែងទួលលក្ខោរ។
ហើកទ្វារពីម៉ោងពេលម៉ោងព្រីក។
- A: ចុំកន្លែងហោលទីកនៅឯណាដែរ?
- B: នៅជាន់ទីធោរ។ បើចង់បានកន្លែងដូនីនេះតូចខ្លួន បុស្អីឡើត សុំទាក់ទងការិយាល័យយើងនៅខាងក្រោម។
- A: ឯងបានយកចិត្តទុកដាក់នឹងយើងប្រើនិងលាស់។
អារគុណនឹងសេវានេះ។
- B: វិករយដោយបានដូរយោលោក។ អព្វិ៍ឆ្លស្អាក់
នៅខោយបានសុខសប្បាយ។



Vocabulary

mook dal	មកដល់	to arrive
bantup kak	បន្ទូប់កក់	reserved room
swaakum	ស្តាគធមន្ត	welcome
neak bamrae	អ្នកបំផើ	bellboy, hotel service worker
noam	នាំ	to accompany
hœep ?œyvan	ហើយអីវាន់ or ហើយភាពវាន់	luggage, bag, suitcase
doo	ដូរ	to exchange, to change
pjin cœt	ពេញចិត្ត	to be satisfied, to be pleased
t ^h um klœn baarey	ដុំភូនបារី	smell of cigarettes
t ^h om mœen	ធំមែន	is really big
yaa	យ៉ា	balcony, terrace
baek tvie	បើកទ្វារ	to open the door
kanleanj totuel pñiøv	កំន្លែងទួលលក្ខរ	reception office, living room
kanleanj hael tiv	កំន្លែងហោលទិក	place to swim, swimming pool
kansaerj cut kluoen	កំន្លែងជួគ្រួល	towel
s?ey tiøt	ស្ដីឡើត	anything else
teak tœøj	ទាកទង	to contact, to communicate with
yœok cœt tuk dak	យកចិត្តទុកដាក់	pay attention, to take care of
seeva	សែវា	service(s)



Language points

The term neak bamrae អ្នកបំផើ ‘person who serves, or servant’ could refer to ‘waiter or waitress’ within the context of restaurant, or neak bamrae yun hah ‘airplane steward,’ neak bamrae sant^haakia ‘hotel worker, housekeeper, bellboy.’

The initial syllable in the word ?œyvan អីវាន់ ‘thing’ can be written with an independent vowel: ីវាន់.

The expression pjin cœt ពេញចិត្ត ‘to be pleased, satisfied’ denotes feeling, while cool cœt ឲ្យលិចិត្ត refers to preference, ‘to like, to prefer.’ Both types of expression contain cœt ‘heart’ as the second element of the compound conveying inner feelings. For example:

koat pij cət niŋ kaanje.

គាត់ពេញចិត្តនឹងការងារ។

She's pleased with the work.

vie cool cət dae leen krav.

គាត់ចូលចិត្តដើរលែងក្រោ។

He likes to go out.

The colloquial expression yook cət យូកចិត្ត ‘to please someone,’ when used in combination with tuk dak ទូកជាក់, means ‘to pay high/close attention, usually in order to please.’ For example:

kruu yook cət tuk dak niŋ niset.

The teacher pays attention to the students.

krum hun ?aakaascaa nih yook cət tuk dak niŋ bokkea?lik kee.

This airline company takes care of their personnel.

poolih titt^haakaa yook cət tuk dak niŋ titt^haakaa koat.

The immigration police official pays close attention to his visa.

The compound word seevakam សិវភាគមួយ, or simply seevaa, a loan-word from Pali-Sanskrit, has virtually replaced the original Cambodian word bamrae បាំរោះ or បាំនី ‘to serve, to provide service,’ generally implying service provided by business companies to their customers.

sant^haakie nih mien seevakam l?aa.

This hotel has good services.

krom hun tuurə?sap mien seevakam t^haok.

The phone company has cheap services.

Exercise 5 (Bonus audio 26)

Read and listen to Dialogue 3 again, then answer these questions.



1 neak naa naom pniəv tiv məəl bantup?

2 pniəv sant^haakie pij cət niŋ bantup tii muəy tee? haet ?ey?

3 baə caŋ doo bantup pniəv t̄rəv tvəə yaan məc?

4 bantup tii pii noh yaan məc?

5 kanleanj ñam ?aahaa prik niv ?ae naa?

6 baək tviə pii moan ponmaan tiv moaŋ ponmaan?

7 coh kanleanj hael t̄ik niv ?ae naa dae?

8 baə caŋ baan konsaenj cut kluən t̄rəv tvəə yaan məc?

9 bokkea?lik sant^haakie nih mien seevakam yaan məc dae?



Reading and writing Cambodian scripts



Exercise 6

Match the Cambodian expressions with their corresponding English expressions. Then use them to make short sentences.

- | | |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1 បើបអើក់ន៍ | a to satisfy, to be pleased |
| 2 កំន្លែងហោលទីក | b luggage, bag, suitcase |
| 3 កំន្លែងទួលស្រូវ | c swimming pool |
| 4 ពេញចិត្ត | d smell of cigarettes |
| 5 ផ្ទៃតិនបាន់ | e reception office, living room |



Exercise 7

Rearrange these words/expressions to make correct sentences.

- 1 domnae / sambot yuən hah / trəv bəŋceak / mun peel cəŋ
- 2 koat / coap baŋ?uəc / caŋ baan / kav?əy
- 3 ?aoy knom / sambot yuən hah / bəŋceak / som cuəy
- 4 yəəŋ / maasiin traceak / mien / bantup / cool cet
- 5 cuək baarəy / knom / bantup haam / trəv kaa
- 6 tik baep / sant^haakie / kmien bantup / ?əərop tee / nih



Exercise 8

Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Then rearrange them to make correct sentences.

- | | | |
|--------------|---------------|-----------|
| 1 អ្នកជំណះរ | បន្ទប់ដំ | ចូលចិត្ត |
| 2 មកយក | ហើបអើក់ន៍ | អ្នកបំផើ |
| 3 អង់យលេង | បន្ទប់ដីនេះ | មានយ៉ា |
| 4 បីដុបិចម | យើងសុំ | ទីក្រចាក់ |
| 5 ស្រូវទេសចរ | សណ្ឌាគារខ្មែរ | ស្អាក់នៅ |
| 6 នៅផ្ទៃតិន | បន្ទប់កក់ | បានឱឡើត |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.31; Bonus audio 27)



Use the audio to listen to this passage. Write a short note to tell your friend about a type of hotel that you like to stay at while you are in Siem Reap.

នៅប្រុកខ្លួនមានកន្លែងប្រើបានសំរាប់អាយអូកធ្វើដំណើរស្ថាក់
នៅ ជូចជាសណ្ឌាតារទាំងនេះ សណ្ឌាតារធ្មតា និងជូនេះសំណាក់
ផ្សេងៗ សណ្ឌាតារទាំងនេះ មានសេវាកម្មទាំងសម្រាយ បែប
អនុរាជកិដីម្រីបំពើក្រោរក្រោប្រទេស កំជូចគ្នានឹងក្រោរក្នុងប្រទេស
ដ៏។

អូកដំណើរអាចចូលទៅសាកស្សវត្ថិមានដែលទាក់ទងនឹង
ការធ្វើដំណើរកំសាន្តនៅក្នុងប្រព័ន្ធបុរាណប្រព័ន្ធការិយាល័យ
ក្រមហិរញ្ញវត្ថុនៃសចនា។ នៅទីនោះគេអាចទិញ សំបុត្រយន្តហេះ
សំបុត្រចែយនុ សំបុត្រឡូកភាព្យាត ជួលឡាង បុរកអូកនាំត្រូវ
ធ្វើនៅដើរបាន។ កន្លែងខ្លះទៀតអាយ ជួយត្រូវកែកបន្ទប់
សណ្ឋាគារ បុង្វែះសំណាក់ ជួយបញ្ចាក់សំបុត្រក្នុងការធ្វើដំណើរ
ធយធ្មានិតិកសងដែន បុង្វែសំរូលកិច្ចការទិញការ។

niv srok kmae mien kanlean craen samrap ?ao y neak damnae snak niv, doc cie sant^haakie tumnøep, sant^haakie t^hoammea?daa niŋ pteah samnak pseeŋ pseeŋ. sant^haakie teaj nih, mien seevakam toan sa?may baep ?onta?ra?ciet, daembøy bamrae pniøv krav prateeh, kao doc knie niŋ pniøv knon prateeh dae.

neak domnaæ ?aac cool tiv saak suə poadaamien, dael teak tcoŋ
niŋ kaa tvǣ domnaæ kamsan niv knoŋ srok rii krav srok, niv kaari?yaalay
krom hun teehsa?caa. niv tii noh, kee ?aac tijn sambot yuən hoh,
sambot ruət yuən, sambot tuuk kaanoot, cuəl laan, rii røok neak
noam pniəv cuun dae leerj. kanleaŋ klah tiət, ?aac cuəy kdk bantup
sant^haakie, rii pteah samnak, cuəy baŋceak sambot knoŋ kaa tvǣ
domnaæ; cuəy tvǣ li?k^het claaŋ daen, rii cuəy samruəl kækcaa
titt^haakaa.

Unit Fourteen

krusəh ?aasan nij pahaa sokp^hiep

ត្រោះអាសន្ននិងបញ្ហាសុខភាព

Emergencies and health issues



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and call for help
- use expressions related to diseases and illness
- use words or expressions with **kaət**, **c^hii**, **cumr^hii**, and **bandaal**, **tr^hev** (passive construction)
- read and write short expressions and simple sentences in Cambodian script



Dialogue 1



Doctor's visit (Audio 2.32)

Rany had a motorcycle accident two days ago. Now she is sick and her mother is taking her to see the doctor. This is a conversation between the doctor (A), Rany (B), and her mother (C).

-
- A: suəsdəy neaŋ. məc lii t^haa mien krusəh tnak mootoo. c^hii
kunleaŋ naa klah?
- B: caa kbaal knom ?ot ?ey tee pruək knom peak muək daek.
kroan tae roloat dey cəəŋ.
- B: tae ?ayləv knom vil muk, hiə sambao, cuəŋkuəŋ coam haəy
haəm tiət.

- A: som mæøl muk røbuøh noh. ?aø cøøjkøøj ?at ?øy tee. pii bøy
?aatit tiøt bot coam bot haøm haøy.
- A: yup mij tae kluøn kdav ponmaan ?øøsaa dae?
- C: ?at mien kaev støøj mæøl, tae kdav nah.
- B: som haa moøt haøy daøk daøøhaøm ?aoy vøøø vøøø.
- A: ?aø ?aøø kaøt cumøøj pdaahsaay. yøøk tnam nih tiv leøp møøjøy
møøkroøp tiv.
- C: trøv cak tham viitaamiin møømcuøl pii ?aoy vie tee,
- B: ?oo knom klaac mcuøl nah, kom cak ?øy?
- A: min bac tee, k^øøm ñam haøy p^øøk tik ?aoy craøø tiv, vie c^øøp
cie haøy.
- B: ?aa kun look kruu peøet.

- A: សូស្តី នាង។ ម៉ែចបុជាមានគ្រោះដ្ឋាក់មួយទៅ។
លើកនេះអាណាព្យាយៈ?
- B: ថា ក្បាលខ្ញុំអត់ទេព្រោះខ្ញុំពាក់មួយកិដេក។
គ្រាន់តែរលាត់ដៃដីន។
- B: តែតុវិវិលមុខ ហេវៈសំបាន ដង្គង់ជាំហើយហើមឡើត។
- A: សុំមើលមុខរបុសនោះ។ អើងងុងអត់អីទេ។ ពីរបីអាទិត្យ
ឡើតបាត់ជាំបាត់ហើមហើយ។
- A: យប់មិញ តើខ្លួនត្រូវបីន្ទានអង្វារដែរ?
- C: អត់មានកើរស្ម័គ្រោះមិន តែត្រូវឈានសំ។
- B: សំបាងមាត់ ហើយដកដង្កោមអោយដែន។
- A: ដើរឯងកើតជមីផ្សាសាយ។
យកម្នាមេនេះទៅលេបម៉ែមួយគ្រាប់ទេ។
- C: ត្រូវចាក់មីនុវត្តមិនមែនមួយមួលពីរអោយវាទេ?
- B: អី ខ្ញុំខ្សោចមួលឈានសំ កុំចាក់អី។
- A: មិនបាត់ទេ ខំពុំហើយដឹកទីកអោយប្រើន
ទៅរាល់ជាហើយ។
- B: អគ្គុណាលេកគ្រួចពេញ។



Vocabulary

cʰii	លី	to be sick, to feel pain
kaet	កេត	to have an illness, to catch a disease
baek kbaal	បែកក្បាល	to have a fractured skull
roloat day caəət	រលាត់ដែងដឹង	to have scratches on hands/feet
vil muk	វិលមុខ	to feel dizzy
hiə sambao	ហ្មសំបារ	to have a runny nose
caəəkcaəəj	ជួងុង	knee
coam	ជាំ	to bruise, to be bruised
haəm	ហោម	to be swollen
muk robuəh	មុខរបូស	wound, injury
?aŋsaa	អង្វ៉ា	degree (measurement unit for temperature and angle)
kaev stəəj	កែវស្ទើសុំ	thermometer
haa moat	បាតមាត់	open the mouth
daak daŋhaəm ?aoy vveŋj vveŋj	ធមកដើងមេភាយដីនូយ៉ែ	to breathe deeply
cumŋji pdaahsaay	ជួយជាសាយ	to have a cold
leep	លេប	to swallow; to gulp down
cak tnam	ចាកថ្មាំ	to give injection
viitaamiin	វិតាមិន	vitamin
klaac mcuł	ខ្ចាថ្មូល	be afraid of needles
min bac tee	មិនបាត់ទេ	it's not worth it, there's no need
cap cie	ឆាប់ជាតិ	to recover quickly



Language points

In Cambodia when people encounter accidents, they call the police for help, hav poolih បោកប៉ូលិស; when there are injuries involved,

they call an ambulance, hav laan peet or laan sajkruəh bantaoan ហេវឡានពេទ្យ បុគ្គារ សំដ្ឋាន៖បន្ទាន់; and when there is a fire, a fire truck, laan tik, or laan puənluet pləəŋ ហេវឡានទីក បុគ្គារ ពន្លត់ត្រូង។

The verb kaet កើត has many meanings depending upon the context: ‘to be born; to give birth; to develop; to catch disease.’ For examples:

knom kaet tñay can.

ខ្ញុំកើតថ្ងៃចន្ទា។

I was born on a Monday.

koat kaet koon niv pteah.

គាត់កើតកុននៅផ្ទះ។

She had the baby at home.

vie kaet cumñjii krum cap.

វាកើតជម្លើគ្រុនចាប់។

He has malaria.

The word cumñjii ជម្លើ ‘illness, disease’ is a noun derived from the verb c^hii លូយ ‘to be sick; to be in pain,’ as in:

koat mien cumñjii robeenj.

គាត់មានជម្លើរបេង។

She has tuberculosis.

koat c^hii puəh.

គាត់លូយពោះ។

He has stomachache.

taa mien cumñjii beh doorj.

តាមានជម្លើបេះដុង។

Grandpa has heart disease.

The term muək daek មួកដោក, literally ‘iron hat,’ is used to refer to a soldier’s head protective gear made of hard material. muək so?vaatp^hiep មួកសុវត្ថិភាព is currently used to refer to a helmet, officially decreed to be worn by motorcyclists. The penalty for not wearing a helmet is a fine, p^haak ជាក, by police. The word p^haak can be used both as a noun and a verb.



Exercise 1 (Bonus audio 28)

Listen to Dialogue 1 again, and then answer the following questions:



- 1 Rany mien krusəh tnak ?əy? haəy mien rɔbuəh ?əy?
- 2 ?ləv vie kaet ?əy dae?
- 3 kruu pəet tvəə ?əy klah?
- 4 kruu pəet tʰaa vie cʰii ?əy? haəy trəv ñam tnam yaŋ məc?
- 5 taə vie trəv cak tnam viitaamiin tee? haet ?əy?



Exercise 2

First, read the words or expressions in Cambodian script. Second, select them to complete these statements. Third, use them with haet ?əy 'why' to ask someone questions.

- 1 koat _____ prusəh mien krusəh tnak mootoo.
- 2 poolih _____ koat prusəh ?at peak muək so?vaatphiep.
- 3 kmeerj nih duəl _____ prusəh ruət liən peek.
- 4 paa ñam baan tae _____ prusəh rəliek bampuəj kaa.
- 5 koat _____ məkroap prusəh vil muk haəy cʰii kbaal.
- 6 puu hav _____ ?aoy moɔk puənlisət pləəŋ.

- a ស្រីលាត់ដែងដើង
- b លេបច្ចៃ
- c ប៊ូកក្បាល
- d ខ្សោនទីក
- e បូបា
- f ជាក់



Dialogue 2



A mother's illness (**Audio 2.33**)

Vanna (A) and his friend Dara (B) are talking about the health and illness of Dara's mother.

- A: Dara, haet រោយ baan ciə រាយ mien tik muk kamsat mleh.
- B: knom pruay cət nah. mae tñoo t^haa min sruel kluən, c^hii kbaal, tae msœl min koat kdav kluən, haey koo baan duel sanlap bat smaadey.
- A: oh look mcah រោយ, រោយləv mæc tiv?
- B: yœøj baan hav laan sañkruəh dik koat tiv muntii pœet. knom baan cam niv bantup sañkruəh bantoan.
- A: kruu pœet kee t^haa mæc tiv?
- B: kee pi?nit stuŋ rɔok mæøl cumñjii koat. kee t^haat suət, mæøl chiem, haey pi?nit tik noom koat.
- A: coh yaan mæc tiøt tiv? koat kaet រោយ?
- B: koat mien cumñjii tik noom p?aem, niñ cumñjii røliek suət. trøv deek pœet mæøl cumñjii pii tiv bœy ?aaatit.
- B: រាយcəøj រាយ c^hup yom tiv. koat p^hot pii kruøk tnak tñøøn, bantœc tiøt koat moøk pteah viñ haøy.
- A: រaa kun daoy baan cuøy luøj loom knom.
- B: s?aek yœøj tiv mæøl koat niv pœet cie muøy knie.
- A: ជាក ហេតុអីបានជាងនមានទីកម្មុខកំសត់ម៉ែ?:?
- B: ខ្លួនព្រៃយចិត្តណាស់ ថ្វីថ្វីថ្វីថ្វីនស្រុលខ្ពស់ លើក្បាល។
តើមួយឯលមិញ្ចាត់ក្រោខ្ពស់ ហើយកីបានដូលសន្នូប័ណាត់ស្នាតី។
- A: អូលោកម្នាស់អើយ តុខ្សែរម៉ែចទៅ?
- B: យើងបានហេតុនុវនសង្គ្រោះដីកាត់ទៅមន្ទីរពេឡូ។
ខ្លួនចាំនៅបន្ទូប់សង្គ្រោះបន្ទាន់។
- A: ត្រូពេឡូគោចម៉ែចទៅ?
- B: តើពិនិត្យសុងរកម៉ែលដម្បីកាត់។ តែប៉តសូត ម៉ែលលាម
ហើយពិនិត្យទីកនោមកាត់។
- A: ចុះម៉ែចទៅ? តាត់កើតអី?
- B: តាត់មានដម្បីទីកនោមផ្លូម និងដម្បីរលាកសូត។
ត្រូដេកពេឡូម៉ែលដម្បីពីរទៅបីអាចិត្យ។
- B: អក្សឹងឯងឯលយប់យំទៅ។ តាត់ដូតពីគ្រោះម្នាក់ធ្លីនៃ
បន្ទីចទៅតាត់មកដ្ឋានវិញ្ញាបើយ។
- A: អគុណាគោយបានដូយលូងលោមខ្ញុំ។
- B: ស្អូកយើងទៅម៉ែលតាត់នៅពេឡូជាមួយគ្នា។

**A
CB**
Vocabulary

tik muk kamsat	ទីកម្មខក់សបត់	sad face
kamsat	កំសបត់	to be sad
pruay cət	ព្រួយចិត្ត	to be worried
tjoo	ចូរ	to moan, to groan
min sruel kluən	មិនស្រើលខុន	not feeling well
kdav kluən	កោខុន	to have a fever
cʰii kbaal	លើក្បាល	to have a headache
duəl sanlap	ដូលសន្យប់	to collapse, to fall down and be unconscious
bat	បាត់	to lose; to disappear; to be lost/missing
bat smaadəy	បាត់ស្អារតី	to be unconscious, to lose spirit
look mcah ?oey	លោកម្នាស់អើយ	oh my goodness
bantup saŋkruəh bantoan	បន្ទប់សង្ក្រោះបន្ទាន់	emergency room
stoen rɔok mœø cumnjii	ស្តីផ្ទែរកម្រិលដម្ដី	to diagnose
thaat suet	ច័តសុគ្រ	to have a lung x-ray
mœø chiem	ម៉ែលឈាម	to have a blood test
pi?nit tik noom	ពិនិត្យទីកនោម	to have a urine test
cumnjii tik noom p?aeem	ជម្រើនីកនោមផ្លូម	diabetes
cumnjii rɔliek suet	ជម្រើនឈាកសុគ្រ	pneumonia
pyiebaal	ព្រាបាល	to treat illness (formal)
trøv deek pøet	ត្រូវដេកពេឡូ	to be hospitalized
mœø cumnjii	ម៉ែលដម្ដី	to treat illness
cʰup yom	លយប់យំ	to stop crying
pʰot	ជុំតិ	to be over, to pass
kruək tnak tjusən	គ្រោះឆ្នាំកំដុង	critical condition
luən loom	លួងលោម	to comfort, to cheer up

Language points



The expressions pruəy cət ព្រៃយិចិត្ត and pi?baak cət ពិបាកិចិត្ត are interchangeable and mean ‘to be depressed,’ ‘to be sad.’

The expression kdav kluən កោវូនុន ‘to have a fever’ is less severe than krun គ្រុន ‘to have a fever with aching body.’ For example:

koat k?oak haøy kdav kluən.

កាត់អូកហើយកោខូន។

He coughs and has a fever.

koat krun tae peel yup tee.

កាត់គ្រុនតែពេលយប់ទៅ។

He has a fever only at night.

The expression məəl cumñii ម៉ីលដីមី ‘to treat illnesses’ is more commonly used than pyiebaal ពុរាបាល ‘to treat (disease).’ For example:

kruu pəet pyiebaal cumñii riek.

គ្រួសទេរាបាលដីកកា។

The doctor provides treatment for diarrhea.

koat məəl cumñii pdaasaay.

កាត់ម៉ីលដីជីថាសាយ។

She prescribes cold treatment.

Exercise 3 (Bonus audio 29)



Listen to Dialogue 2 again, and answer the following questions:

- 1 haet ?ey baan ciə Dara mien tik muk komsat?
- 2 peel niv pteah, mae kaot tñoo t'haa c'hii ?ey klah?
- 3 kee baan hav ?ey daembəy dik koat tiv pəet?
- 4 peel tiv dal pəet Dara ?aŋkuy cam koat niv ?ae naa?
- 5 mdaay koat trøv keenj pəet məəl cumñii ponmaan ?oatit?
- 6 Vanna ni?yiey luən loom Dara yaarj məc klah?



Exercise 4

First read the expressions in Cambodian script, then select them to complete these statements. Finally, use the statements with haet ?ey ‘why’ to ask some questions.

- 1 taa dae min baan, prueh _____.
- 2 knom min hien nam baay, prueh mien _____.
- 3 puu trev tam skaa, prueh mien _____.
- 4 nihsøt som tiv banjkusøn, prueh _____.
- 5 look min tøv k'øn craen, prueh mien _____.
- 6 paa tvøe damnae tiv srok krav min baan, prueh mien _____.
- 7 koat saasee min baan, prueh _____.
- 8 vie hiø sambao, prueh _____.

- a ជ្រើសរើសឈាម
- b ជ្រើសរើស
- c បាក់ដែង
- d លើដើង
- e ផ្តល់សាយ
- f លើពេចះ
- g ជ្រើសកក់
- h ជ្រើសទីកន្លែមដូចម្នេះ



Dialogue 3



At the hospital (**Audio 2.34**)

Ten days later, Dara (A) went to pick up his mother from hospital. He is talking to the nurse (B) about the discharge and about the various facilities the hospital provides.

-
- A: suədøy, mak knom yaarj mæc dae?
 - B: caa koat ?aac tiv pteah smaø naa kaa baan.
 - A: knom tøv kaa sambot tñj tnam pii look kruu peet.

- B: roal tñay, koat trøv ñam tnam bøy muk neh haøy trøv moøk kliinic cak tnam tiøt.
- A: koat trøv ñam tnam yaanø mæc klah?
- B: roal prik niøj roal yup trøv leep tnam mæmuk pii kroap haøy pøek tnam tik mæslaap prie tiøt.
- A: tah ?oay koat ?ankuy knoø kav?øy ruj haøy yøøø tiv cie muøy knie.
- A: yii kanlean nih mæc kaa mien kmeøj craen mleh?
- B: Oh puøk vie kaøt cumñji krun c'hem niøj krun caø prøøh bandaal moøk pii samboo muuh klaa.
- A: coh kanlean ?øy dae niv cit strøy prøøh t'om ?ankuy niøj?
- B: tii noh mien bantup cløj tuønlee, bantup cloh ?eekoo, haøy tiv cñaay tiv tiøt kii cie bantup veah kat.
- A: Oh laan taksii moøk dal lmooom.
- A: ស្ថីស្តី ម៉ាក់ខ្សំយ៉ាងម៉ែចដើរ?
- B: ចោត់អាជីវិជ្ជៈស្មើណាក់បាន។
- A: ខ្សំត្រូវការសំបុត្រិញ្ចាំបីលោកត្រូវពេញ។
- B: រាល់ធ្វើ គោត់ត្រូវញ្ចាំបីមុខនេះ ហើយត្រូវ មកត្តិនិចចាក់បង្ហាញ។
- A: គោត់ត្រូវញ្ចាំបីយ៉ាងម៉ែចខ្លះ?
- B: រាល់ព្រឹកនិងរាល់យប់ ត្រូវរេលបង្រាំមួយមុខតីរកាប់ ហើយនឹកបង្រាំទីកម្មយស្តាប្រាញ។
- A: តោះរោយគោត់អង្គួយក្នុងកេអីរួចរាល់ហើយយើងទៅជាមួយគ្នា។
- A: យើកន្លែងនេះម៉ែចកំមានក្នុងប្រើនិងម៉ែះ?
- B: អី ពួកវាកេតិដីត្រូវបានក្នុងប្រើនិងប្រាញ។
- A: បុះកន្លែងអីដើរនៅដីត្រូវបានក្នុងប្រើនិងប្រាញ?
- B: ទីនោះមានបន្ទូបំផ្លូងទន្លេ បន្ទូបំផ្លូះអេក្ខ ហើយទៅឆ្លាយទៀត គឺជាបន្ទូបំរែះគោត់។
- A: អូន្ទានគាក់សុមកដល់ល្អម។

**A
B
C**
Vocabulary

smaə naa	ស្មើណា	at any time
sambot tŋ̥ ntam	សំបុត្រិទិញ្ញម្ខា	medicine prescription
tnam tik	ថ្នាំទឹក	liquid medicine
tnam kroap	ថ្នាំគ្រាប់	pill, tablet
mœslaap prie	មួយស្ថាបច្ចា	one tablespoon
kav?øy rujn	កោអីរូង	wheelchair
kaet cumnjii	កែតិដមី	to contract illness/diseases
krun cʰiem	គ្រឿនឈាម	hemorrhagic fever
krun caŋ	គ្រឿនចាត់	malaria
samboo	សម្បូរ	to be abundant, to have plenty of
bandaal mɔɔk pii	បណ្តាលមកពី	to be caused by, to spread
muuh klaa	មួសខ្សោ	tiger mosquitos
strøy	ស្រី	women
strøy puəh tʰom	ស្រីពេះជំ	pregnant women
bantup clan tuənlee	បន្ទប់ផ្លូវទេន	delivery room
bantup cloh ?eekoo	បន្ទប់ផ្លូវអភូ	radiology room
bantup yeah kat	បន្ទប់វេះកាត់	surgery room
bak day/bak caəŋ	បាក់ដី/បាក់ដីជី	to have a broken arm/leg
hoo cʰiem	ហ្មុណឈាម	to be bleeding, to bleed
kuə ?aoy	គូរអោយ	ought to
?aanət	អាងិត	to pity, to feel sorry for
?aasan	អាសន្ន	emergency


Language points

We have seen many meanings and functions of the verb *trøv* ត្រូវ ‘to be right, correct, accurate, must, or should’ in previous units, in which it functions as transitive, intransitive verbs. In this unit *trøv* is also used in passive constructions.

A diachronic study seems to show that the use of *trøv* to form passive constructions is a fairly recent phenomenon common to not

only Cambodian but also Thai. It is suspected to have been influenced by passive constructions chiefly in news items in French and English, as in:

koat trəv yeah kat.

កាត់ត្រូវរោះកាត់។

He must have an operation.

koat trəv peet yeah kat.

កាត់ត្រូវពេឡុរោះកាត់។

He got operated on by the doctor.

ckae k^ham kmeenj noh.

ឆ្លើងខំឆ្លើងនោះ។

The dog bites that child.

kmeenj trəv ckae k^ham.

ឆ្លើងត្រូវឆ្លើងខំ។

The child is bitten by the dog.

ŋeak cumnjii trəv laan bok.

អ្នកជីមិត្រូវឡានបុក។

The patient was hit by the car.

cao trəv poolih cap.

ថោរត្រូវប៉ូលិសចាប់។

The thief is arrested by the police.

The following examples show two types of the causative constructions with the verb bandaal ?aoy បិណ្ឌា លែងយើ ‘causes/leads to,’ followed by a verb; and bandaal mook pii បិណ្ឌា លែមកពី ‘to be caused by, to be spread by,’ followed by a noun, as in:

mjonuh slap bandaal mook pii cumnjii beh doonj.

Many people died because of heart disease.

cumnjii ?aasan rook bandaal ?aoy mjonuh slap.

Cholera caused people’s death.

cumnjii krun ciem bandaal mook pii muh k^ham.

Hemorrhagic fever is caused by the mosquito bite.

cumnjii krun ciem bandaal ?aoy kmeenj slap craen.

Hemorrhagic fever caused the death of many children.

The three expressions smaø naa kaa baan ស្មើណាក់ចាន់, peel naa kaa baan ពេលណាក់ចាន់, and ?onjkaal kaa baan អង្គាល់ក់ចាន់ are interchangeable and mean ‘at any time.’

Culturally, Cambodian has several ways of saying these two English expressions: (1) ‘to be pregnant’ may translate to p̄aem ផើម (colloquial, informal); puəh t̄om ពេះធិ (informal); and mien ptey puəh មានធ្វើពេះ, or mien koa មានគី (formal).

(2) ‘to give birth’ may translate to claan tuenlee ផ្តូងៗទិន្នន័យ (colloquial); kaet koon កៅតកូន (colloquial, informal); and samraal koon សំប្បាលកូន (formal).

Exercise 5



Read aloud the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 koat yɔɔk _____ tiv haaoj ləek tnam.
- 2 koat t̄rev laan bok baek kbaal hoo c̄hiem _____.
- 3 baaoj srəy knom _____ pram k̄ae haəy.
- 4 neak mien cumnji beh dooŋ t̄rev kee bajcuun tiv _____.
- 5 cnam nih kmeen sdap craən _____ cumnji krun caŋ.

- a មានផ្តូងៗ
- b ឲ្យរាយខ្សោច
- c បន្ទប់រោះកាត់
- d សំបុត្រិទ្ធច្នាំ
- e បណ្តាលមកពី

Exercise 6



First, read the expressions in Cambodian script aloud. Second, rearrange them to make correct sentences. Third, make those sentences into questions to ask someone.

- | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 បណ្តាលមកពី | មួសខ្សោខាំ | ជម្រើគ្រឿនឈាម |
| 2 លោកយាយបាក់ដើង | កូងកោអីរួញ | អង្គូយចាំ |
| 3 ក្នុងថែកក្បាល | គេបញ្ចន | ទៅបន្ទប់ផ្សេះអេក្រូ |
| 4 ទៅតីនិចនកដន | ក្រោរទេសចរ | មើលរបុស |
| 5 ចូលចិត្ត | កល់ព្រឹកលោកតា | ឆ្នាំប៉ុន្មាន |
| 6 មានជម៌ | យលោក | លើសលើយាម |

Exercise 7



Read these verb expressions aloud. Use them to make short sentences related to health issues.

- | | | | | |
|--------|---------|-------|-------|-----------|
| 1 ເກີດ | 2 ແຍ້ | 3 ເລບ | 4 ດາກ | 5 ສັງເກະ |
| 6 ຍໍ | 7 ຕොຕාລ | 8 ທັກ | 9 ຜຶກ | 10 ມາດົກຕ |

Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.35; Bonus audio 30)



First, use the audio to listen to this passage. Second, circle words or expressions that you are able to read instantly. Third, translate the passage.



ເនື່ອປຽກໃຊ້ຮັດຫຼຸເທິ ເຕລມານຄາສູນ ບຸເຄຣະຫຼາກ ເຕູ້ຮັສຖ
ເບົາກຣັສູ່ຈຳກາຣຕາຣສຸ່ສຸ່ຂ ບຸເບົາຫຼຸກຝີຕົກຫາສ່າຍເຕັ້ງຍາ
ເຕລມານເກື້ອງແວະຜູ້: ເຕເບົາຄູການຫຼືກ ບຸ້ຫຼຸກກູ້ມີເກາຍຜູ້ຍົດນູ້ຕ
ເກື້ອງໆ ເຕລມານເຕົຮ່ວູ້ບ ບຸເຕົຮ່ວູ້ນ ບຸມານເຄຣະຫຼາກ໌ປົກປະ ເຕ
ເບົາບູ້ລົສ່າ ເບີມານຮູ່ສ ເຕເບົາຢືນຢັງ ບຸເບົາຄູການສັງເກະ
ບຫຼານໆ

ສູ່ໄຕ່ກຸ່ຫຼືກຸ່ຕົກຫຼຸມານ ຊື້ນິຕ ນິຈົມຢູ່ເຕັກງົດນ
ເປົ້ນຜັກມຢູ່ເຕັກງົດ ເບີ່ຍກາຕເປົ້ນມານຄູ່ເຕັກງົດບຣເຕສເງື່ອ
ກາຣຢູ່ມຄູ່ພູ້ຍົດຕູ້ເຕັກງົດໃຊ້ວາ ເນື່ອປຽກໃສ ຫຼຸກກົກຄູານລຸ່ມ
ເຕິຕොຕාລຜູ້ເຕັກງົດ

niv srok kmae cie tuutiv, peel mien ?aason rii krueh tnak kee turea?sqp hav krasuoen kaapie sante?sok rii hav neak cit k^aaŋ ?aoy kee cuəy. peel mien pləəŋ c^eh pteah kee hav laan tik rii hav neak pʰuum ?aoy cuəy puənlusət pləəŋ. peel mien cao lœc rii cao plan rii mien krueh tnak craacaa, kee hav poolih. bae mien rɔbuəh, kee hav muəntii pœt rii hav laan saŋkruueh bantoan.

sap tñay niv tii kroŋ pnum pij mien kliinic niŋ muəntii pœt ?aeka?cɔɔn craən cien muəntii pœt roat haøy pʰiek craən mien kruu pœt baarøteeh tvøe kaa tuəntim knie cie muøy kruu pœt kmae. niv srok srae, neak kra kmien luy tiv pyiebaal cumŋii kee tee.

Unit Fifteen

praysaʔnii nij t^hɔɔniekie

ផ្សេសណីយ៍និងធនាគារ

Post office and banking



In this unit you will learn how to:

- ask and tell about sending letters and goods within and outside of Cambodia
- ask and tell about exchanging money
- ask and tell about a bank or ATM machine nearby
- use the words **?aasray lœ, prak, luy, ban, and kaat**
- read and write Cambodian expressions and short sentences



Dialogue 1



Sending mail and packages (**Audio 2.36**)

Dara (A) is asking Navy (B) – who has just returned from the post office – about how to mail letters and packages to foreign countries. Listen to their conversation.

-
- A: Navy ?aerj moek pii naa nij?
- B: knom moek pii praysaʔnii pnae sambot nij ban praysaʔnii tiv baaranj.
- A: kee pnae sambot tiv baarəteeh rəbiəp naa?
- B: niv lœe sraom sambot k^haaŋ lœe cruj k^haaŋ cveen saasee ?aasaʔyatt^haan yœəŋ, niv cam kondaal saasee ?aasaʔyatt^haan kee, haøy yœok tiv praysaʔnii tñ taem.

- A: pnae sambot mdaaj mdaaj ?ah ponmaan?
- B: ?aasray lea tumjən sambot niŋ proteeh deel pnae tiv.
- A: coh baø pnae ?øyvan vijn tvø yaaj mæc dae?
- B: ?øyvan trøv kcap cie kaŋcap yooč tiv praysa?nii ?aoy kee tløj daembøj baø tamlay taam tumjən.
- A: tae ?aeŋ min klaac bat tee ?øy?
- B: min ?øy tee, baø pnae taam røikommaŋdee. kee tʰienie raap røø, vie mien so?vattʰepʰiep haøy.
- A: ?ee Navy mœøl no, neak ruøt sambot kamponj daø caek sambot daak taam pra?ap sambot pteah.

A: ណាវី ឯងមកពីណាបីឯង?

B: ខ្មែមកពីត្របសណីយ៍ ធ្វើសំបុគ្គ និងបណ្តុះ
ត្របសណីយ៍ទៅបានជា

A: តើធ្វើសំបុគ្គទាំងនេះទៅបានដូចម្លោលរបស់ណា?

B: នៅលើក្រោមសំបុគ្គ ខាងលើបង្កើងខាងឆ្លៃ
សរស់រាសយដ្ឋានយើង នៅចំកណ្តាល
សរស់រាសយដ្ឋានគេ ហើយយកទៅ
ត្របសណីយ៍ទិញតួម។

A: ធ្វើសំបុគ្គអីអីនេះ?

B: អាស្រែយលើទម្ងន់សំបុគ្គ និងប្រទេសដឹលធ្វើទៅ។

A: ធម៌បើធ្វើអីភីនីវិញ ធ្វើយើងម៉ែចដើរ?

B: អីភីនីត្រូវខ្លួចប់ដាកព្យាប់ យកទៅត្របសណីយ៍ឱ្យ
គេបីឯងដើម្បីបង់តែម្បាតម្បីនៅ។

A: តើនិងមិនខ្សោចបាត់ទេអី?

B: មិនអីទេ បើធ្វើតាមវិកំម៉ែងដោ។ គេធានាក់ប់នេះ
កម្មានសុវត្ថិភាពហើយ។

A: អេឡាវី មិនបាន អ្នកតែសំបុគ្គកំពង់ដើរថែកសំបុគ្គដាក់
តាមប្រអប់សំបុគ្គដូរ។



Vocabulary

praysa?nii	ផ្សាយសំណើយ៍	post office
prnaø	ផ្លើ	to send
sambot	សំបុត្រា	letter
ban praysa?nii	បណ្តុះផ្សាយសំណើយ៍	picture postcard
røbiøp naa	របៀបណា	how, in what way
sraom sambot	ក្របាមសំបុត្រា	envelope
?aasa?yatt ^h aan	អាស៊យដ្ឋាន	address
cruñ k ^h aan cveøŋ	ខាងលើជ្រួញខាងឆ្វេង	top left corner
cam kondaal	ចំកណ្តាល	in the center
taem	តែម	stamp, postage stamp
?aasray løø	អាស្រែយលើ	to depend on
tumrøbøn	ទូម្បន់	weigh, load
kcap cie kajcap	ខ្សែជាកញ្ចប់	to wrap into packages
tløøj	ធ្វើង	to weigh
ban tamlay	បង់តម្លៃ	to pay
klaac	ខ្សោច	to be afraid
bat	បាត់	to lose
røikommaanjee	កិច្ចដោះ	to register (French word)
t ^h ienie raap røøŋ	ធានាកំប់ដែង	to ensure, to guarantee
so?vatt ^h ep ^h iep	សុវត្ថិភាព	safety
mœøl naa	មេលហ្ឌុ	look there
caek sambot	ថែកសំបុត្រា	to distribute/deliver mail
pra?ap sambot	ប្រអប់សំបុត្រា	mailbox



Language points

Post office in Cambodia

In Cambodia mostly foreigners, NGOs, or business organizations will send letters or packages via the postal service or private Express Mailing Services (EMS) to foreign countries. Within Cambodia most

people, including foreigners, will use messengers, taxi services, or private transportation services to send letters or things to their local office, family, or friends.

Depending on the context, the word poh បូស្តី, a French loanword, can mean ‘place,’ ‘post office,’ ‘channel,’ or ‘station.’ In Cambodian poh or praysa?nii are interchangeable for referring to a post office or the postal service. The word poh បូស្តី can also be used in different contexts as shown in the examples below. For a postcard, commonly referred to as ban batt praysa?nii បណ្តុះត្រូវសំណើយ៉ា, kaat postal កាត់បូស្តីសង្កាត់លី (another loanword from French), or praysa?nii batt ត្រូវសំណើយបច្ចុក, is used.

teehsa?caa pnae ban praysa?nii tiv pteah.
The tourist mails a postcard home.

soom doo poh tuurea?tueh cən.
Please change/switch the TV channel.

poolih cap cao tiv poh.
Police arrest and take a thief to the police station.

The expression ?aasray ləə អាស្រាយលើ ‘depend on, up to’ has a similar meaning to the expression sii saaŋ ləə សិរីសាន់លើ or srac ləə ត្រូវចិត្តលើ as shown in these examples:

?aasray ləə tumn̄xən tumn̄j̄n.
It depends on the weight of the merchandise.

sii saaŋ ləə tlay cnuel.
It depends on the cost/service charge.

tiv riː ?at srac ləə neak.
To go or not, it is up to you.

Exercise 1

How would you ask these questions in Cambodian to a post office employee?



- 1 Excuse me, I want to mail this postcard to Canada.
- 2 I would like an envelope and stamp for this letter.
- 3 How much does it cost to send these three letters to Japan?
- 4 I want to mail these packages to England.
- 5 Could you weigh this letter for me please?
- 6 I don't want to lose any things. What should I do?



Exercise 2

How would you answer these questions with តើ ប្រាក់ដែល ម៉ោង ‘what should one do’?

- 1 tvəə yaan məc daembəy pnaə sambot tiv baareteeh?
- 2 tvəə yaan məc daembəy ?aoy sambot mien so?vatt^hep^hiep.
- 3 tvəə yaan məc daembəy pnaə ?eyvan tiv prateh krav?
- 4 tvəə yaan məc daembəy tijn taem sambot ?aoy trəv?
- 5 tvəə yaan məc daembəy tctuəl sambot baan?



Exercise 3

Read the expressions in Cambodian script. Select them to complete these statements.

- 1 krav pii ?aasa?yatt^haan niv ləe sraom trəv mien _____.
- 2 daembəy pnaə sambot yəən trəv tiv _____.
- 3 yəən trəv yɔɔk kajcap pnaə tiv _____ niv praysa?nii.
- 4 daembəy pnaə ?eyvan pseən pseən trəv _____.
- 5 baə min klaac ?eyvan bat tee, trəv pnaə taam _____.

- a ខ្សែប្រជាធិបតេយ្យ
- b វិកិច្ចនៃដំណឹង
- c តែម
- d ត្រូវបានសរុប
- e ឱ្យគិតផ្តើម



Dialogue 2



Getting money from the bank (**Audio 2.37**)

Listen to a conversation between a clerk (A) at the bank and Navy (B), who is trying to get her father's money from the bank.

- A: suəsdəy knom ?aac cuəy neak ?ey klah?
 B: caa, knom moɔk baək luy dael paa knom pnaə moɔk pii
 batdambaaŋ ?aoy knom niv t^hoönkie nih.

- A: neak mien siəvpʰiv tʰoɔniekie rī kaat ATM tee?
- B: caa ?ot mien pʰaaŋ!
- A: soom cam məpleet! som bampij kradaah nih sən.
- B: nih kradaah, knom tvøe ruəc haøy
- A: knom som suə bøŋceak taø neak pnaø prak cmuəh ?øy? pnaø ?aoy ponmaan? haøy pnaø ?aoy neak naa?
- B: caa! koat cmuəh sok samnaaŋ, pnaø haasəp məen riøl, haøy pnaø ?aoy knom.
- A: neak mien ban samkoal kluøn, ?aasa?yattʰaan, niŋ leek tuusap daembøy bøŋceak tee?
- B: caa mien!
- A: nih luy, soom roap məøl mien kvah tee?
- B: caa krup haøy. ?aa kun craøn.

- A: សូស្តី! ខ្ញុំអាចធ្វើយួរកតិខ្លួនបានទេ?
- B: ចាំ ខ្ញុំមកបើកលុយដែលបានខ្ញុំធ្វើមកពីបាត់ដំបង ឱ្យខ្ញុំនៅផ្ទាល់នេះ។
- A: អ្នកមានសៀវភៅណែនការ បុរាណ ATM ទេ?
- B: ចាំ អាត់មានដង!
- A: សូមចាំមួយត្រូវតែ! សូមបំពេញក្រដាសនេះសិន។
- B: នេះក្រដាស ខ្ញុំធ្វើចេញហើយ។
- A: ខ្ញុំសូមបញ្ជាក់ តើអ្នកធ្វើប្រាក់ លេខ្ទាមីនី? ធ្វើឱ្យបុង្ហាន? ហើយធ្វើឱ្យអ្នកណា?
- B: ចាំ! តាត់លេខ្ទាមីនី សុខ សំណាន ធ្វើដំឡើល ហើយធ្វើឱ្យខ្ញុំ។
- A: អ្នកមានបណ្តុះសំគាល់ខ្លួន អាសយដ្ឋាន និងលេខទូរសព្ទ ដើម្បីបញ្ជាក់ទេ?
- B: ចាំមាន!
- A: នេះលូយ សូមរាប់ថែលមានខ្លួនទេ?
- B: ចាំត្រូវបំហើយ។ អគ្គុណាប្រើន។

A B C

Vocabulary

baek luy	បើកលូយ	to withdraw money
siəvpʰiv tʰɔɔniekie	សៀវភៅត្រួតនាគារ	pass book
kaat ATM	ភាត ATM	ATM card
neak pnaə prak	អ្នកផ្លូវប្រាក់	money sender
kaat samkoal kluən	ភាតសំគាល់ខ្លួន	identification card
bampiŋ kradaah	បំពេញក្រដាប់	complete this paper/form
roap məəl	រាប់ម៉ឺល	to count
kvah	ខ្សោះ	to be short of, insufficient, missing
krup haəy	ត្រួតបៀវីយ	correct, complete



Language points

Banking in Cambodia has been a booming business over the past ten years, with investment from entrepreneurs and international financial institutions. To handle financial transactions, especially involving land sales, even farmers have bank accounts to keep the large amounts of cash.

The word baek បើក primarily means ‘to drive, to open.’ It is used with the word luy លូយ or prak ប្រាក់ to generally mean ‘to get, to withdraw money or salary from a bank or from an employer.’ More specific expressions are also used to deal with banking transactions: daak luy ដាក់លូយ ‘to withdraw money,’ daak luy ដាក់លូយ ‘to deposit money,’ or doo luy ដូរលូយ ‘to exchange or change money/currency.’

The word kaat ភាត, from French ‘carte,’ and ban ប័ណ្ណ ‘card’ are interchangeable, as in kaat samkoal kluən ភាតសំគាល់ខ្លួន ‘identification card’ or ban samkoal kluən ប័ណ្ណសំគាល់ខ្លួន ‘personal identification card.’ Another word, ?atta? saŋjaan ban អត្ថសង្គមប័ណ្ណ, is used mostly in official/legal documents. A banking card, or ATM card, is ?kaat ATM ភាត ATM, ban ATM ប័ណ្ណ ATM, kaat tʰeaʔniekie? ភាតធ្វាតារ, ?ban tʰeaʔniekie? ប័ណ្ណធ្វាតារ.

The expression roap məəl រាប់ម៉ឺល ‘to count’ is used in conjunction with the expressions kvah tee ខ្សោះទេ ‘to be short’ or krup tee ត្រួតបៀវីទេ ‘complete or correct amount.’

som banhaaj ban samkoal kluən.

Please show your ID card.

som roap məəl luy kluən ?aəŋ.

Please count the money yourself.

nih luy ?ap, roap məəl krup tee?

Here is the change, count it to see whether the amount
is correct.

roap siəv pʰiv məəl taə kvah tee?

Count the number of books; anything missing?

som doo məəcɔy dollaa cie luy kmae.

Please exchange \$100 to Cambodian currency.

Exercise 4 (Bonus audio 31)

How would you say these statements in Cambodian?



- 1 I went to the ATM to withdraw money.
- 2 He usually exchanges his dollars at the bank.
- 3 Please wait a moment, the bank will open soon.
- 4 Do you have an identification card?
- 5 I am a tourist, can I use my passport?
- 6 Here is the exchanged money, count it to make sure it is the correct amount.



Exercise 5

Complete these statements by selecting the appropriate missing expressions from the second list.

- | | |
|--|-------------------|
| 1 ពីខ្លួន ជាប់ខ្លួន។ | a ដុល្លារ |
| 2 ខ្លួន ជាប់ខ្លួន។ | b រប់មីល |
| 3 ជាក់លុយនៅផែនការត្រូវមាន _____។ | c មួយត្រួត |
| 4 តែ៖ ទៅក្រោងមួយខ្លួន _____.។ | d អ្នកធ្វើប្រាក់ |
| 5 នេះលុយជូនសំ _____ ត្រូវប៉ុន្មាន? _____.។ | e ដកលុយ |
| 6 សុចូលុយ៥០ _____ ជាលុយផ្សេល។ | f សៀវភៅក្រោផែនការ |



Dialogue 3



Changing money (Audio 2.38)

Listen to A and B talking about bank services and what they have to do to withdraw money from the bank without an ATM card.

- A: ?ee puək maak! niv tʰeaʔniekie nuh mien seevaa ?ey klah?
- B: mien doo prak, pnaə prak, kcəy prak, ptee prak cie daəm.
- A: ?ee . . . ?aer mien prak daəmbəy sansam yɔɔk kaa prak pʰaaŋ.
- B: ckuət! muk knie niŋ mien ?ae naa? knie tiv daak luy paa ptee moɔk pii konj niŋ naa!
- A: ?əə niʔyiey leen tee, coh kaa daak luy nuh trəv tvəə yaarj məc dae?
- B: trəv cap leek, bantaa kantuy haəy ?aŋkuy cam niv kav?ey ruəŋ cam.
- B: peel dal leek yəəŋ, təəp baan tiv cuəp niŋ bokkeəʔlik tʰeaʔniekie daəmbəy daak luy.
- A: daəmbəy daak luy trəv mien sambot snaam ?ey klah?
- B: kaat səmkoal kluən, siəvpʰiv daak luy niŋ leek konj.
- A: baə kmien kaat səmkoal kluən praə liʔkʰət cləŋ daen cumnuəh baan tee?
- B: baan!
- A: niʔyiey ?aŋcəŋ knie liŋ kee tʰaa baə mien kaat ATM ?aac daak luy pii maasiin tae mdaaŋ.
- B: trəv haəy tae knie plic leek samŋat niŋ naa.
- A: អេីកម្មក! នៅធនាគារនោះមានសេវាសីខ្លះ?:
- B: មានដូរប្រាក់ ផ្លូប្រាក់ ឱ្យប្រាក់ ផ្លូប្រាក់ជាដើម។
- A: អេ . . . ឯងមានប្រាក់ទុកនៅធនាគារ
ដើម្បីសន្មយកការប្រាក់ឯង?
- B: ឆ្លួត! មុខត្តាបីឯង មានលុយឯងណា?
- ត្រូវដឹងការលុយបានពីកុងតាត់ ហីឯងណា!
- A: ដើម្បីនិយាយលេងទៅ ចុះការដឹងការលុយនោះត្រូវផ្លូយឯងម៉ែងដើរ?
- B: ត្រូវចាប់លេខបន្ទុកនូយ ហើយអង្គូយនៅក្រោមឱះថា

- B: ពេលដល់លេខយើង ទីបញ្ហានទៅផ្ទបនីងបុគ្គលិកជនាតាអើ
ម្បីដែកលូយ។
- A: ដើម្បីដែកលូយត្រូវមានសំបុត្រស្ថាមអីខ្លះ?
- B: ភាពសំគាល់ខ្លួន សៀវភៅដាក់លូយ និងលេខ កុង។
- A: បើតានភាពសំគាល់ខ្លួន ប្រើលិខិតផ្តុងដែនជំនួសបញ្ហានទេ?
- B: បាន!
- A: និយាយអញ្ញីងគ្មានឯកចោរ បើមានភាព ATM អាចដែកលូយ
ពីម៉ាសីនតែមួយ។
- B: ត្រូវហេីយ តែគ្មានឯកលេខសម្ងាត់បើឱ្យណា។

Vocabulary

A
B

tʰea?nieki	ជនាតារ	bank
doo prak	ផ្សេង្សាក់	to exchange/change money
p̚rae prak	ផ្សេង្សាក់	to send money
kœy prak	ខ្សែង្សាក់	to borrow money
ptee prak	ផ្សេង្សាក់	to transfer money
konj	កុង	bank account
cie daəm	ជាដីម	for example
sansam	សាន្យា	to save, to preserve; to accumulate
kaa prak	ការប្រាក់	interest (on a saving or loan)
ckuet	ឆ្លួត	foolish, crazy, insane, stupid
kroan tae	ត្រាត់តែ	only, just, merely, simply
cam yuu bantəc	ចាំយូរបន្ទិច	to wait for a while
cap leek	ចាប់លេខ	to take a number
?aŋkuy	អង្គូយ	to sit (down)
kav?əy rəəŋ cam	កោអីរោះចាំ	waiting chair
bokkea?lik	បុគ្គលិក	employees, personnel, staff
cumnuəh	ជំនួស	to substitute for; replace; instead of, in place of

sambot snaam	សំបុត្រិតស្ថាម	document
li?kʰet clan daen	លិខិតផ្តុងដែន	passport
lif kee t'aa	ពូគេថា	to hear what people say, people say
sruei nah	ស្រួលណាស់	very easy
koŋ	កុង	bank account (from French ‘compte’)
kaat ATM	ភាគ ATM	ATM card
maasiin ATM	ម៉ាសីន ATM	ATM machine
leek somjat	លេខសម្ងាត់	password



Language points

The word luy លើយូ is interchangeable with prak ប្រាក់ when dealing with money or currency. The word koŋ កុង is the Cambodian pronunciation of ‘compte,’ a French word with various meanings including ‘bank account.’ The Cambodian homonym koŋ កុង is a Chinese kinship term for ‘grandfather,’ equivalent to Cambodian term cii taa ជីតា and its shortened form taa តា.

Depending on the context, the word ckuet ឆុះតិ can mean ‘foolish, crazy, insane, stupid.’

soom doo luy nih cie dollaa.

Please change this money into dollars.

koat baek prak kʰae haəy.

He got his monthly salary.

krom hun baan prak camneəŋ craən.

The company gains lots of profit.

prak camnaay min craən tee.

The spending (expense) is not a lot.

ckuet! knom min meən kmeeəŋ ?ae naa.

You're crazy, I am not a kid.

knom cit ckuet daoysaa neak haəy.

I am going crazy because of you.

Exercise 6



Read or listen to these six statements, then place them in the correct order.

- A niv t^hea?niekie damboon knom trøv cap leek.
- B knom roap luy mœøl krup haøy, kaa lei bokkea?lik t^hea?niekie.
- C knom totuel luy pii bokkea?lik t^hea?niekie.
- D tñay nih, knom tiv daak luy niv t^hea?niekie.
- E peel kee hav dal leek knom, knom tiv cuøp bokkea?lik t^hea?niekie.
- F knom trøv barøhaøj kaat samkoal kluøn tiv bokkea?lik t^hea?niekie.

Exercise 7



Select the words to complete these statements.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|-------------------|
| 1 ផ្សាយនេះមាន _____ ទេ? | a របៀបដើរ |
| 2 ខ្លួនឯង _____ ។ | b ជូនលុយ |
| 3 ៩០ដុល្លារបាន _____ បុញ្ញានរៀល? | c សន្លឹក |
| 4 សំណោយជាប់ _____ ៥០០រៀល។ | d ប្រាក់កំនើនក្រៅ |
| 5 នេះលុយជូនសំ _____ ត្រូវបែបទេ? | e លុយខ្មែរ |
| 6 លោកត្រូវបាន _____ ពីរភាពរយ។ | f ម៉ាស៊ីន ATM |

Exercise 8



Read these expressions aloud. Reorder them to make correct sentences.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1 នាំខ្លួន | នៅថ្ងៃនាគារ? | អ្នកណា | ទៅបើកកុង |
| 2 ធ្វើនេះខ្លួន | ពីធនាគារ | ទៅដែកលុយ | ព្រោះខ្លះចាយ |
| 3 អ្នកណា? | គាត់ហុច | ទៅឃោយ | កាត់សំគាល់ខ្លួន |
| 4 ដែកលុយពី | លោកយក | ពីម៉ាស៊ីនណាមួយ? | កាត់ ATM ទៅ |
| 5 ត្រូវមាន | ពេលធ្វើ | ឈិតិត្យុងដែន | ដំណើរទៅប្រុកប្រាក់ |
| 6 ដើម្បីទិញ | គាត់លូយ | សំបុត្រចូល | បន្ទូកនូយ |
| 7 ធ្វើនេះ | រៀល? | បានបុញ្ញាន | មួយដុល្លារ |
| 8 យន្តហោះ | គាត់ទៅដីរ | ដើម្បីទិញសំបុត្រ | លុយនៅថ្ងៃនាគារ |
| 9 សំដូរលុយ | ជាលុយខ្មែរ | ឯកសារអាមេរិកាំង | ទេសចរ |
| 10 ជាលុយខ្មែរ? | ២០០ដុល្លារ | បានបុញ្ញាន | បើជីរ |



Listening and reading passage

(Audio 2.39; Bonus audio 32)



First, use the audio to listen to this passage. Second, circle in blue the words or expressions that you can identify or read immediately.

យើងអាចធ្វើសំបុត្រ បុធ្វើអីវាតែងទៀបរទេសតាមព្រៃសណីយក់បាន ធ្វើតាមក្រុមហ៊ុនឯកជនកំពុង ការធ្វើអីវាតែងក្នុងប្រសកគេនិយមធ្វើតាមក្រុមហ៊ុន ទ្វានក្រុង អ្នកគោទៅទ្វានឲ្យល បុញ្ញតិចិត្តបង្ហូនា ខ្លួនឯមប្រើប្រាស់ទូរសព្ទនិយាយទាក់ទងត្រាសុម្ពីអ្នកប្រសកប្រើបង្ហារ កំមានទូរសព្ទដើម្បីដោរា ចំពោះអ្នកដើម្បីលមានបង្ហូននៅបាន គេប្រើនស្អែសុខខ្នួនតាមទូរសព្ទបុប្រើបានអេឡិចត្រូនិច ដូចជាអីមែល និងហេសចិកជាមើល ហើយធ្វើប្រាក់ គេធ្វើតាមចនាតាមវិញ ព្រះមានសុវត្ថិភាពហើយជាយសល់។ ចំពោះការផ្តល់ប្រាក់ចាយកាយប្រចាំថ្ងៃបន្ទិចបន្ទិច ខ្លួនឯមបង្ហារ នៅទូមាស បុតាមធម្មៈជូរប្រាក់ចំណេះដាន ព្រះរាជនិធីជោគជ័យ ហើយហេសទាន់ចិត្តទៀតជង។

yəəŋ ?aac pnaə sombot rii pnaə ?eyvan tiv baarəteeh taam praysa?nii kaa baan, pnaə taam krom hun ?aeka?cəən kaa baan. kaa pnaə ?eyvan knoŋ srok, kee ni?yum pnaə taam krom hun, laan kroŋ, neak ruət laan cnuel, rii niet mit baar p?oon. kmae ni?yum praə tuurea?sap ni?yiey teak tɔoŋ knie, sombəy neak srok sraə camkaa kaa mien tuurea?sap day praə dae. campuəh neak dael mien baaj p?oon niv baarəteeh, kee craən suə sok tuk knie taam tuurea?sap, rii praə saa ?electronic, dooc cie ?emeel, niŋ feebook cie daəm. baə kee caŋ pnaə prak, kee pnaə taam tʰɔonniekie viŋ, pruəh mien so?vattʰepʰiep, haęy njey sruəl. campuəh kaa doo prak caay viey procam tñay bantəc bantuəc, kmae cool cət tiv doo niv tuu mieh, rii taam pteah doo prak tʰom tʰom cien, pruəh vie niv cit pteah, haęy röhah toan cət tiət pʰɔoŋ.

Grammar summary

Cambodian is a pro-drop language. Once a subject, object, or topic has been mentioned or is clear from the context, it can be omitted from the sentence, as shown in the dialogue conversations of each unit.

Cambodian words are non-inflectional for tense, gender, number, or case. The verb is in the same form in present, past, or future tenses. The noun is also in the same form for singular or plural. It is not marked with an 's' as in some languages.

Cambodian spoken form is very different from the written form. Some of the rules below are applicable to the written form but not to the spoken form; and some may not apply outside the implied context. Cambodian words also have many grammatical functions that depend upon the context they are in.

Sentence patterns

Cambodian sentences consist of one or more clauses; a clause has one or more phrases; and a phrase can have one or more words. A simple sentence consists of one predicate. A sentence may be affirmative, negative, or interrogative. Clauses are combined into sentence level by coordination, subordination, and embedding.

Affirmative statements

Cambodian is an SVO (subject-verb-object) language like English. The basic word order of a simple sentence consists of an optional subject, an obligatory predicate, and an optional direct object or an adverbial (indicating a point of time). For example:

koat rōnje.

He is cold.

paa tumnee.

Father is free.

Phanna nam kuy tiev.

Phanna eats noodles.

Dara cih mootoo.

Dara rides the motorbike.

Rany tiv haaj baay.

Rany is going to the restaurant.

In Cambodian, the subject or object of a sentence can be omitted if they can be understood from the context. More so in the spoken form, the subject or/and object is omitted when it is clear and the speakers know who they are referring to. For example:

Phanna canj nam kuy tiev tee?

Phanna, do you want to eat noodles?

knom canj.

I do want (to eat noodles).

canj.

(I do) want (to eat noodles).

The verb 'to be'

Cambodian does not use a verb 'to be' when the predicate is an adjective. Cambodian adjectives follow the nouns they modify (English adjectives come before the nouns).

1 mhoop cŋaj (The) food (is) delicious Delicious food

2 mootoo tlay (The) motorbike (is) expensive Expensive motorbike

3 bantup s?aat (The) room (is) clean Clean room

In Cambodian adjectives are also stative verbs: cŋaj means 'delicious' or 'to be delicious,' tlay 'expensive' or 'to be expensive,' and s?aat, 'clean' or 'to be clean.'

When the predicate contains a noun complement, the verb cie is used, as in:

knom cie nihsət.

I am a student.

koat cie ?aameerikən.

She is an American.

Sophal cie kruu.

Sophal is a teacher.

nih cie siəvp^hiv.

This is a book.

noh cie ?aŋkaa samroop.

That is brown rice.

Negative sentences

Negative sentences are formed by placing the negative marker min
မိန် (formal), ?at ဒဲတဲ (informal), or pum ပုံမှု immediately in front of the main verb or adjective verb, and optionally adding tee ၏၏ at the end of the sentence or phrase. Colloquially the marker tee ၏၏ is omitted.

miij knom ?at nam sac.

My aunt does not eat meat.

koat ?at rɔnje.

He is not cold.

paa ?at tumnee.

Father is not free.

koat mook pum k^haan.

She comes without doubt.

?aen pum kuə tiv.

You should not go.

However, when the sentence contains cie as the main verb, the negative min, or ?at is replaced with min meen မိန်မြောင်, as in:

koat min meen cie ?aameerikən.

She isn't an American.

min meen cie nihsət.

(You) aren't a student.

Sophal min mœen cie kruu.

Sophal isn't a teacher.

min mœen cie siəvp^{hiv}.

(This) isn't a book.

Question and answer statements

'Yes-no' questions and answers

In general, Cambodian does not use auxiliary verbs to form questions or copular verbs to link nouns with adjectives. The speaker simply uses a rising intonation at the end of a declarative phrase to indicate a question is being asked. However, a regular statement can turn into a question by adding the particles tae ແຕී in front of the sentence and tee ແຕු at the end of the sentence. But tae ແຕී is mostly used in formal discourse. tae ແຕී is omitted in the spoken form.

In spoken discourse, caa ດ້າ 'female response,' baat ດ້າໃຈ 'male response,' or the main verb is used to positively answer the question.

?at tee ຂັດໜູນ or ?at + main verb + tee is used for a negative answer.

(?aenj) tiv tee?

(Are you) going?

caa or baat.

Yes (I am going).

tiv.

(I) am going.

?at tiv tee.

(I am) not going.

?at tee.

No (I am not going).

(?aenj) mien nat tee?

(Do you) have an appointment?

caa or baat.

Yes (I have an appointment).

mien.

(I) have (an appointment).

?at mien tee.

(I) don't have (an appointment).

?at tee.

No (I don't have an appointment).

mhoop cŋaj tee?

Is the food delicious?

caa or baat.

Yes (the food is delicious).

cŋaj.

(The food) is delicious.

?at cŋaj tee.

(The food) isn't delicious.

?at tee.

No (the food isn't delicious).

Confirmatory with mæn tee questions and answers

The confirmatory question is formulated by adding mæn tee 'isn't that right, isn't that so, right?' at the end of a statement.

The positive response to mæn tee questions is mæn haøy or nɪŋ haøy 'of course.' The negative response is ?at mæn tee or ?at tee, as in:

Sophal cie kruu mæn tee?

Isn't that right, Sophal is a teacher?

mæn haøy.

Of course (Sophal is a teacher).

?at mæn tee.

(Sophal) is not (a teacher).

?at tee.

No.

Mary mook pii Canada mæen tee?
Isn't that so, Mary is from Canada?

nirj haøy.
Of course (she is from Canada).

?at tee.
No.

?at tee, mook pii ?akleeh.
No, (she) is from England.

'Yet' questions and answers

The expression haøy niv የኩስናል ‘(have you finished it) yet?’ can be added to the end of a statement to make a question, as in:

vie tiv haøy niv?
Did he leave yet?

tiv haøy.
(He) left already.

niv tee.
(He has) not (left) yet.

?aeñ ñam haøy niv?
Did you eat yet?

ñam haøy.
(I) ate already.

niv tee.
(I have) not (eaten) yet.

koat mien sañsaa haøy niv?
Does she have a boyfriend yet?

mien haøy.
(She did) have (a boyfriend).

niv tee.
(She does) not yet (have a boyfriend).

'What' questions with vəy វិនិយោគ, ?əy អិនិយោគ, or s?əy សិនិយោគ and answers

nih hav t^haa ?əy?

What do you call this?

nih hav t^haa krama.

This is called a scarf.

koat riən p^hiesaa ?əy?

What language is he studying?

koat riən p^hiesaa kmae.

He is studying the Cambodian language.

'Who' questions with neak naa អ្នករាយ and answers

neak naa banriən koat?

Who teaches him?

koat kaa cie muəy neak naa?

Who is he married to?

The 'where' question with naa នាម and answers

kon srəy mook pii naa?

Where has the daughter come from?

mook pii psaa.

Come from the market.

sɑ̃saa ?aeŋ tiv naa?

Where is his fiancé going to?

tiv saalaa.

Going to school.

'Which and which one' questions with naa ນາ or
?aa naa ພານາ and answers

koat tijn ?aa naa muøy?
Which one does she buy?

?aa tooc nih.
The small one.

look kruu baæk laan naa muøy?
Which car does the teacher drive?

laan kʰiøv.
The blue car.

'When' questions with kaal naa ກາລ້ານາ or
peel naa ເປີລ້ານາ and answers

kaal naa kruu peet tmij tumnee?
When is the dentist free?

lñiec nih.
This afternoon.

toop plae cʰæ bæt tvie peel naa?
When does the fruit stand close?

peel yup.
At night.

'How much or how many' questions with
ponmaan ປົມ້ານ and answers

sac cruuk nih mækilo tlay ponmaan?
How much is the pork per kilo?

pii mæen riel.
Twenty thousand riel.

koat mien cav ponmaan?
How many grandchildren does she have?

dap pram.
Fifteen.

'How' questions with yaan mæc យានមេច or mæc មេច and answers

koat tiv pteah yaan mæc?
How did she get home?

baek laan kluen ?aen.
(She) drove herself home.

bantup nih yaan mæc?
How is this room?

s?aat nah.
(The room) is beautiful.

'Why' questions with haet ?ey ហោតុអី and answers

haet ?ey baan cie ?aen doo bantup?
Why are you changing the room?

pruəh vie min s?aat.
Because it isn't clean.

haet ?ey baan cie tiv srok kmae?
Why are you going to Cambodia?

pruəh cañ banriən ?aŋkleeh.
Because (I) want to teach English.

Passive sentences

Cambodian does not really use passive constructions. They occur mostly in translation. However, passive sentences are formed by using træv ព្រឹត្តិវិក, as in:

ckae k^ham koat.
The dog bit him.

koat træv ckae k^ham.
He got bitten by the dog.

poolih cap cao.

The police arrested the thief.

cao trəv poolih cap.

The thief was arrested by the police.

Comparisons

Comparison with cien ជាន់ and cien kee ជាន់គេ

When cien follows a noun it means ‘more than’ or ‘-er than,’ as in:

laan nih tlay cien laan noh.

This car is more expensive than that car.

knom kpseh cien koat.

I am taller than her.

When cien follows a verb or adverb it means ‘more,’ as in:

krooc nih tlay cien.

These oranges are more expensive.

koat mien koon craən cien.

She has more children.

mhoop kmae cŋaj cien.

Cambodian food is more delicious.

cien kee, ‘the most’ is used at the end of a sentence, as in:

prapuən koat s?aat cien kee.

His wife is the prettiest.

sambot yuən hah nih tlay cien kee.

This plane ticket is the most expensive.

Comparisons with dooc ជូច ‘same’

krooc nih tlay dooc svaay.

These oranges cost the same as the mangoes.

mhoop koat cŋaj dooc mhoop knom.

Her food is as delicious as mine.

Nouns and noun phrases

Nouns

Cambodian nouns have a fixed form with number (singular or plural), gender, or case. They can function as a topic, a subject, or an object of a verb. They can be counted and be an attribute of other nouns, adjectives, or verbs.

Personal pronouns

Personal pronouns include kinship terms and title nouns (see [Unit 1](#) and [Unit 2](#)). They can function as topic, subject, or object, or be attributive. They make references to a specific gender, age, and social status. Most often they are omitted when the context is clear or it is obvious who is being referred to.

Examples of some common personal pronouns are gender-specific: taa តាំ ‘grandfather,’ yiey យីេយិ៍ ‘grandmother,’ puu ុូូ ‘uncle,’ and miij ‘aunt.’ Neutral: vie វិោ ‘he, she, they, it (of animals – refers to people in an informal context or to people of a lower status or rank),’ koat កោតាំ ‘he, him, his, they, she, her, their,’ and yøøn ឃើង ‘we, us, ours (for regular); I, me, my, mine (for intimate).’

Word order of noun phrase structures in Cambodian

Cambodian noun phrases strictly consist of a head noun followed by its numeration or attributions. As stated earlier, Cambodian nouns have no grammatical distinction in gender, singular or plural. Plurality is marked by post-nominal particle, numeral, or by reduplication.

The following are examples of categories of noun phrase word orders that will allow learners to combine words together.

Noun + number

When counted, the numeral will follow the noun.

laan bəy

លានបី

three cars

koon pram

កូនប្រាំ

five children

koon koon

កូន ១

children

koon klah

កូនខ្លះ

some children

koon craən

កូនប្រឹន

many children

In the last three examples above, plurality is marked by the reduplication of word koon, the post-nominal particle klah ‘some’ and craən ‘many.’

Noun + number + classifier (or specifier)

A list of classifier or specifier nouns in Cambodian is listed in [Unit 5](#). When counting or measuring, the position of the classifier is fixed: noun + number + classifier; except for hour, date, month, and year (see [Unit 3](#)).

In Cambodian, the classifier is optional and is used for clarification, and in formal speech.

koon pram (neak)

កូនប្រាំ(នាក់)

five children

koo pii (kbaal)

គោពី (ក្បាល)

two cows

pteah bəy (knaan)

ផ្ទះបី (ខ្ពស)

three houses

num p?an bəy (daem)

នីបីងបី (ដើម)

three sticks of bread

biiyee pii kaeh

បីថិ៍យ៉ែកសប

two cases of beer

?an kaa məbaav

អង្គរមួយបារា

one sack of rice

san pram liit

សាំងប្រាំលីត្រ

five liters of gasoline

Notice that the use of classifier neak for people, kbaal for animal, and daem for bread is optional.

Noun + adjective or stative verb

sampbat vay

សំពតផែង

long skirt

sampbat tlay

សំពតផ្សេង

expensive skirt

bqnlae srah

បន្លែស្របស៊ុរៈ

fresh vegetable

pteah t^hom

ផ្ទៃដំបូង

big house

pteah t^hom t^hom

ផ្ទះធំៗ

big houses

pteah t^hom klah

ផ្ទះធំណាមេះ

some big houses

In the last two examples above, plurality is marked by the reduplication of the word t^hom and the post-nominal particle klah.

Noun + adjective (stative verb) + number

laan tooc muəy

ឡានពួចម្បយ

one small car

laan tooc klah

ឡានពួចកេខេះ

some small cars

laan tməy bəy

ឡានតូចបី

three new cars

moan t^hoat buən

មាននៅតាតបុន

four fat chickens

Noun + demonstrative this, that, these, or those

ckae nih

ផ្សែនេះ

this dog

kaari?yaalay noh

ការិយាល័យនោះ

that office

tii kroŋ nin̩

ទីក្រុងបីជុំ

this city

Possessive noun phrases

Possessive noun phrases in Cambodian consist of a direct and indirect possessive noun phrase.

The direct possessive noun phrase is headed by a noun and is followed by possessive pronoun or a noun, as in:

m̄daay k̄nom

ម្នាយខ្មែរ

my mother

k̄hao ?aav ȳəəŋ

ខោអារ៉ាយើង

our clothing

pteah nihsət

ផ្ទះនិស្សិត

student's house

The indirect possessive noun phrase is headed by a noun, followed by particle r̄bah រប់សំ ‘of, or belonging to,’ and a possessive pronoun or noun. The indirect possessive pronouns structure is used to clarify the long string of modifier or attributive, as in:

laan b̄ey r̄bah koat

his three cars

moan tooc r̄bah vie

her small chickens

svaay p̄?aem r̄bah look yiey

grandma's sweet mangoes

h̄eep ?eyvan pii r̄bah p̄niəv

the guest's two suitcases

Verbs and verb phrases

Cambodian verbs have a fixed form for singular or plural, and for present, past, and future tenses. There is no agreement between verb and subject.

Time reference and aspect

In colloquial speech, tenses or aspects are understood by context. However, in writing, in formal situations, or for clarity, particles can be added in front of the statements or at the end of the statement as shown below.

Pre-verbal particles indicating a point in time usually come first in the sentence, as in:

s?ae̯k (yøəŋ) cih mootoo.

Tomorrow, (we) will ride the motorbike.

yup nih (Rany) tiv haan baay.

Tonight, (Rany) is going to the restaurant.

?aatit kraoy (paa) tumnee.

Next week, (father) will be free.

maoŋ pram (yøəŋ) cuəp knie.

Let (us) meet at 5 o'clock.

The common pre-verbal particles are: niŋ នឹង to mark future action, baan បាន to mark past tense action, kampon កំពុង or kampon tae កំពុងតែ to mark progressive (-ing) tense action, dael ដែល to mark that the action has occurred in the past, and tloap ឆ្លាប់ to mark that the action has occurred in the past more than one time. The common final particles are: haøy ហៅយើ ឃើ or ruəc haøy រួចហៅយើ ឃើ to mark completed action. For example:

nam baay.

Eat rice.

knom nam baay.

I eat rice.

knom **niŋ** nam baay.

I am going to eat rice.

?ae̯ŋ **kampon (tae)** nam baay.

You are eating rice.

koat **baan** nam baay.

She ate rice.

koat nam baay **haøy**.

She ate rice already.

yəəŋ **dael** ɲam məəŋkʰut.

We have eaten mangosteen before.

vie **tloap** mook leenj.

He used to visit (us).

koat tiv praysa?nii **ruəc haøy**.

He went to the post office already.

Adverbs

Cambodian adverbs can be used before or after the verbs they modify; or some can be used at the beginning or at the end of the clause.

These are: cuən kaal ជូនកាលុ ‘sometimes,’ cie nic ជានិច្ឆូ ‘always,’ bandaə ប៉ែណ្ឌវា ‘at the same time,’ cie tʰoammea?daa ជាចម្បតា ‘usually, normally,’ tae តែិ ‘only,’ taenj tae តែងតែិ ‘continually,’ min səv មិនពួរិ ‘not really, not very, not much,’ sah តែលោះ ‘at all,’ kamrɔo កំប្រឈម ‘rarely,’ tueh bey ទោះបី ‘even if, although,’ baə sən បើសិនិ ‘if,’ dooc cie ជូចជានិ ‘such as,’ and dae ដែរិ ‘also, too, as well.’ Detailed usages are explained in [Unit 11](#) and throughout other units as well.

Conjunctions

The conjunctions niŋ និង ‘and’ or rii ឬ ‘or’ can be used to conjoin noun phrases, as in:

kruəsaa niŋ puək maak

Family and friend

haar̥ baay niŋ kanleaŋ cuəl laan

Restaurant and car rental

səntʰaakie niŋ pteah somnak

Hotel and guesthouse

num paŋ rii bay

Bread or rice

Some conjunctions are used to combine verbal phrases or clauses: haøy ហែី យូ or haøy niŋ ហែី យុនិង ‘and,’ ruəc ឱច ‘then,’ ruəc haøy ឱច ហែី យូ ‘after that, afterward,’ and təəp ទេច ឱច ‘then, next,’ as in:

koat riən peel prik haøy tvəə kaa peel yup.

He studies in the morning and works in the evening.

som cuəy bajceak sambot ruəc haøy kak bantup.

Please help confirm the ticket, and then book a room.

bokkea?lik ləək sambot yuən hah, haøy cuəy bampij li?kʰət
claaŋ daen.

The employee sold the plane ticket, and helped complete
the passport.

Complex sentences

A complex sentence is any simple sentence that has at least one subordinate or embedded clause. The subordinate clause or embedded clause is introduced by words such as dael ‘who, which,’ daembəy ‘in order,’ ?aoy ‘for,’ cie muəy ‘with,’ prueh ‘because,’ baə ‘if,’ as in:

neak **dael** hav mhoop noh cie baarj proh koat.

The person who ordered the food is his oldest brother.

baarəteeh cool cət santʰaakie **dael** mien maasiin traceak

Foreigners like hotels that have air conditioning.

teehsa?caa cuəl laan **daembəy** dae leenj knoŋ tii kroŋ pnum piŋ.

The tourist rented the car in order to travel in Phnom Penh.

som cuə bajceak sambot yuən hah **?aoy** knom pʰaaŋ.

Please help me to confirm my plane ticket.

koat tij rəbah ?a?nuhsaava?rii kmae **?aoy** puək maak.

He bought Cambodian souvenirs for his friends.

knom tiv sii kaa puək maak **cie muəy** koon srəy.

I went to my friend’s wedding with my daughter.

klien klarj, **prueh** ?at nam ?ey taŋ pii prik.

I am starving because I have not eaten since this morning.

?aeŋ trəv kʰam riən **baə** caŋ baan luy craən.

You must study hard if you want lots of money.

Key to exercises

Unit 1

Exercise 1

- | | | |
|-----------------------|---------------------|--------------------------|
| 1 cmuəh Sophal. | 3 cie kmae. | 5 pʰiesaa ?ankleeh. |
| 2 mook pii siəm riep. | 4 cie kruu baŋriən. | 6 niv saakal vittyielay. |

Exercise 2

- | | | |
|-------------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 1 cmuəh Marie. | 3 srok baaraŋ. | 5 cie nieyvək pæt. |
| 2 trakool cmuəh Claude. | 4 cmuəh paarii. | 6 niv pæt kalmaet. |

Exercise 3

- | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 mook pii srok kmae. | 5 Wei Ly cie nihsət. |
| 2 ciə cɔɔn ciet kmae. | 6 riən pʰiesaa ?anjkleeh. |
| 3 riən niv saakal vittyielay. | 7 baŋriən pʰiesaa cən. |
| 4 niv santʰaakie. | 8 tvəə kaa niv haar̥ baay cən. |

Exercise 4

- 1 som tooh soom nae noam kʰuən.
- 2 riikriey daoy baan cuəp look?
- 3 som tooh, ?aeŋ mook pii naa?
- 4 cumriep lie, cuəp knie tŋay kraoy.
- 5 ?aa kun, ?aŋcəəŋ ?aoy sok sapbaay.
- 6 min ?əy tee.

Exercise 5

- | | | | | |
|------|-------|------|------|-------|
| 1 កែ | 3 តិច | 5 សុ | 7 ណា | 9 បា |
| 2 ដី | 4 ទូរ | 6 ចុ | 8 ដំ | 10 ចំ |

Exercise 6

- | | | | | |
|-------|------|--------|------|--------|
| 1 មេ | 3 ទេ | 5 យេ | 7 នេ | 9 ពេ |
| 2 គិច | 4 លុ | 6 វិភុ | 8 ជុ | 10 ធមុ |

Unit 2**Exercise 1**

- | | | |
|-------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 baat mien | 3 ?at tee | 5 ?at tiv tee |
| 2 mien | 4 caa riən | 6 baat niv |

Exercise 2A

- 1 koat kmien baaj srøy tee.
- 2 knom min tiv pteah mak paa tee.
- 3 cav koat ?at tvøə kaa niv saalaa tee.
- 4 puu ?at baŋriən pʰiesaa cən tee.
- 5 ?om kmien koon pii neak tee.
- 6 nihsət bøy neak ?at rien pʰiesaa kmae tee.

Exercise 2B

- 1 koat mien baaj srøy tee?
- 2 ?aeŋ tiv pteah neak naa?
- 3a cav koat mneak tvøə kaa niv ?ae naa?
- 3b cav koat ponmaan neak tvøə kaa niv saalaa?
- 4a puu baŋriən pʰiesaa ?øy?
- 4b neak naa baŋriən pʰiesaa cən?
- 5a ?om mien koon ponmaan neak?
- 5b neak naa mien koon pii neak?
- 6a nihsət bøy neak riən pʰiesaa ?øy?
- 6b nihsət ponmaan neak riən pʰiesaa kmae?

Exercise 3

- 1 kee cie neak naa?
- 2 pteah miiŋ knom s?aat.
- 3 nih cie ruup tʰoot saalaa koat.
- 4 pdøy koat niv kmeeŋ.
- 5 puək maak ?aeŋ moɔk pœt knom.
- 6 prapuən koat cie ?aameerikaŋ.

Exercise 4

- 1 nih cie ruup tʰaat neak naa?
 - 2 kruəsaa noh mien koon ponmaan neak?
 - 3a ruup tʰaat puk niv ?ae naa?
 - 3b ruup tʰaat neak naa niv pteah taa yiey?
 - 4a kruu niŋ nisət tiv saalaa tvəe ?ey?
 - 4b kruu niŋ nisət tiv naa tvəe kaa?
 - 5a ruup tʰaat mdaay koat s?aat tee?
 - 5b ruup tʰaat neak naa s?aat nah?
 - 6a kmeen nih ?aayu? ponmaan cnam?
 - 6b neak naa ?aayu? dqp cnam?

Exercise 5

- | | |
|------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1 baat mien | 4 s̥aat nah |
| 2 ?at tee | 5 ?at tee, mien sɔŋsaa haøy |
| 3 caa sɔŋhaa nah | 6 baat baan |

Exercise 6

- 1 koat tiv tii kroŋ paarii haøy riŋ niv?
 - 2 yiey mien cav proh haøy riŋ niv?
 - 3 kon srøy mœk pii pœt haøy riŋ niv?
 - 4 saŋsaa ɬaøŋ tiv baŋriøn haøy riŋ niv?
 - 5 koat tuurea?sap tiv kuu døndøŋ haøy riŋ niv?
 - 6 p?oon proh pcoap piek haøy riŋ niv?

Exercise 8

- | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|----|---|------|---|-----|----|----|
| 1 | ० | 3 | १० | 5 | १००: | 7 | ००: | 9 | ० |
| 2 | ० | 4 | ०० | 6 | १०१ | 8 | ० | 10 | १० |

Exercise 9

- 1 ০ ৩ ১০ঁ ৫ ০ঁ ৭ ৩ ৯ ১০০ঁ
2 ০ ৪ ০ ৬ ০০ঁ ৮ ৩ ১০ ১০

Unit 3

Exercise 1

- 1 maoŋ dap pii tñay trñj.
- 2 maoŋ pram buən kanlah yup.
- 3 maoŋ pram muəy yup kuet.
- 4 maoŋ dap kvah dap pram nietti.
- 5 cuəp knie saamsiəp nietii tiət.
- 6 maoŋ dap muəy dap pram nietti niŋ sae səp pram vinietti prik.

Exercise 2

- 1 s?aeck tñay ?aatit, kñom tumnee.
- 2 koat tñj k^ao ?aav niv psaa.
- 3 ?aeŋ tiv cup liəŋ tñay sav nih.
- 4 niv psaa, koat dae mœl ?ey van.
- 5 cuəp knie pii maoŋ tiət.
- 6 maoŋ dap kvah dap pram nietti.

Exercise 3

- 1 knoŋ muəy ?aatit mien ponmaan tñay?
- 2 tñay can nih koat tiv tvœ ?ey?
- 3 tñay ?aŋkie prik mak ?aeŋ tumnee tee?
- 4 tñay ?aatit koat cih ?ey?
- 5 tñay put koat cuəp neak naa?
- 6 peel tñay trñj ?aeŋ niv ?ae naa?

Exercise 4

- | | | | |
|-------|------|--------|--------|
| 1 ၂၅ | 3 ၄၀ | 5 ၁၄၀၀ | 7 ၆၅ |
| 2 ၂၉၀ | 4 ၂၃ | 6 ၃၀၂ | 8 ၅၀၀၀ |

Exercise 5

- 1 s?aeck cie tñay put.
- 2 kiŋ cie k^ae tnuu.
- 3 kiŋ cie k^ae ?u?sa?phie.
- 4 tñay prøhoah.
- 5 cnam kraoy cnam pii poan dap pram.

Exercise 6

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------|--------|--------|-------|
| 1 ចោរ | 3 កោស់ | 5 ទូរ | 7 ដាំ | 9 បោរ |
| 2 បី | 4 ណាល | 6 ស៊ុំ | 8 ផ្ទៃ | 10 តី |

Exercise 7

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|-------|-------|-------|
| 1 លាត | 3 ពោះ | 5 លួយ | 7 ទុំ | 9 ឡៅ |
| 2 ពី | 4 នា | 6 យុំ | 8 គើ | 10 ទេ |

Exercise 8

- | | | | | |
|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|
| 1 ការដួរ | 2 ឈើពោះ | 3 នាកី | 4 ពិនេះ | 5 ខោនោះ |
|----------|---------|--------|---------|---------|

Exercise 9

- | | | | | |
|--------|-------|-------|-------|--------|
| 1 b?ey | 3 niv | 5 puu | 7 kee | 9 cam |
| 2 taa | 4 ceh | 6 cie | 8 som | 10 day |

Unit 4

Exercise 1

- 1 t?ay can tiv naa?
- 2 t?ay ?ankie cu?ep neak naa?
- 3 t?ay put mien nat ponmaan moa??
- 4 t?ay prahoah yaan? mec?
- 5 t?ay sok tv?e? ?ey?
- 6 t?ay sav tr?ev tij? ?ey?

Exercise 2

- 1 mak kampu? ni?yiey cie mu?ey knom.
- 2 koat kampu? jaam baay niv haan.
- 3 puu kampu? ch?ii tm?n klan nah.
- 4 kruu kampu? coap banri?en nihs?et.
- 5 kruu peet kampu? rovsel nah niv kliinic.
- 6 kee kampu? nat knie mo?k kaari?yaalay.

Exercise 3

- 1a koat hav neak naa tiv cup liej?
- 1b koat hav mit srəy tiv tvəe ?əy?
- 2 haet ?əy koat tiv min baan?
- 3 look mien nat cie muəy neak naa?
- 4 tnay nih cie bon kamnaət neak naa?
- 5 koat ñam baay yaarj məc?
- 6a tnay sav mak yaarj məc?
- 6b tnay sav mak rɔvəl niv ?ae naa?

Exercise 4

- 1 cap pii moaj pram bəy rəhoot dal moaj pram buən prik, knom tvəe kaa.
- 2 cap pii moaj pram buən rəhoot dal moaj dəp pii tnay traŋ, knom riən.
- 3 cap pii moaj dəp pii tnay traŋ rəhoot dal moaj muəy rɔsiel, knom ñam baay krav.
- 4 cap pii moaj pii rəhoot dal moaj buən lñiec, knom bañriən.
- 5 cap pii moaj pram rəhoot dal moaj pram muəy lñiec, knom hat kəylaa.
- 6 cap pii moaj pram bəy rəhoot dal moaj dəp yup, knom tiv cup liej.

Exercise 5

- 1 tnay can moaj pram buən prik, riən pʰiesaa kmae.
- 2 tnay can moaj dəp pii tnay traŋ, tiv psaa.
- 3 tnay can moaj pii rɔsiel, cuəp ðamnaaŋ nisət.
- 4 tnay put put pram buən prik, cuəp kruu pəet pnæk.
- 5 tnay put moaj dəp pii tnay traŋ, niv saara?məntii.
- 6 tnay put moaj pii rɔsiel, cuəp nieyuək rooŋcak.
- 7 tnay sok moaj pram buən prik, bañriən pʰiesaa ?əŋkleh.
- 8 tnay sok moaj dəp pii tnay traŋ, baay cie muəy leekhaa.
- 9 tnay sok moaj pii rɔsiel, tuurea?sap tiv nieyuək?tʰaan poadəmien.

Exercise 6

- 1 koat tuurea?sap tiv kaari?yalay.
- 2 knom cup liej niv pteah.
- 3 look nat cuəp cie muəy ðamnaaŋ kruu bañriən.
- 4 look srəy cie ðamnaaŋ krom hun.
- 5 ?aeŋ coap rɔvəl niv kliinic.

Exercise 7

- | | | | | |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1 អារ៉ា | 5 ចាន់ | 9 ឱ្យប | 13 ដូចប | 17 លោក |
| 2 ចាន់ | 6 កៅតិ | 10 សិន | 14 មួយ | 18 ជីន |
| 3 ដើម | 7 ភ្នែន | 11 ម៉ឺន | 15 ឡេតិ | 19 ម៉ែន |
| 4 ដង | 8 បៀក | 12 ពេល | 16 ទោស | 20 ទិញ |

Unit 5

Exercise 1

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 sraa pii daap. | 4 sac koo məkiiloo. |
| 2 kookaa bəy kampoŋ. | 5 banlae məbac. |
| 3 saŋ pram lii. | 6 skaa pii kəncap. |

Exercise 2

- 1 tik sot məyuə tlay pram muəy poan riəl.
- 2 ?əŋkaa məkilo tlay buən poan riəl.
- 3 sac koo məkilo tlay pram dollaa.
- 4 saŋ məlit tlay mədolla saesəp.
- 5 sraa mədəq tlay pram bəy dollaa.
- 6 biyyə məkaeh tlay dəq buən dollaa.

Exercise 3

- 1 tik trəy.
- 2 pii kiiloo kanlah haəy tlay məməən riəl.
- 3 skaa məkəncap niŋ tik trəy mədaap.
- 4 pii yuə.
- 5 bəy məən riəl.
- 6 ?at tee, prəhə neak t̄iŋ ?aoy tuk luy sal.

Exercise 4

- 1 ceek məsnət nih min toan tum tee.
- 2 svaay t̄om min toan p?aem tee.
- 3 krooc toc min toan lək ?oh tee.
- 4 puu ?at toan yook ?əvlək tiv ?aoy koon tee.
- 5 knom ?at toan coh tlay k̄hatnaa ?aoy koat tee.
- 6 spey nih ?at toan yook tiv ?nam baan tee.

Exercise 5

- 1 look yiey nam ceek tum haøy rii niv?
- 2 koat tløøj sac moan haøy rii niv?
- 3 baøø lœk ?ønøkaø ?ah haøy rii niv?
- 4 ?aøø ?aoj luy tiv neak lœk haøy rii niv?
- 5 neak lœk kit luy haøy rii niv?
- 6 koat ?øp luy ?aoj neak tñj haøy rii niv?

Exercise 6

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1 som cuøy tñj plae c ^h øø knom. | 4 sac moan koat sraø nah. |
| 2 knom lœk coh tlay ?oy. | 5 ceek mìn toan tum tee. |
| 3 svaay tum haøy p?øaem nah. | 6 yøøk banlaø tiv c ^h aa tiv. |

Exercise 7

- | | |
|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1 duck | 6 to go |
| 2 to be ripened | 7 to be sour |
| 3 to go down | 8 big |
| 4 cow | 9 to locate |
| 5 to request | 10 one kilogram |

Exercise 8

1 g 2 e 3 h 4 e 5 b 6 f 7 a 8 j 9 c 10 d

Exercise 9

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| ၁ ယက / မက | ၅ မြန / ဆလဲ |
| ၂ ဗျား / ယက | ၆ ဒီဂျ / ဇာ |
| ၃ လ / အီလ | ၇ လကဲ / ဆာပဲ |
| ၄ ဗာန / ဇေ | ၈ မြန / ဇန် |
| ၉ ဗြား / ဟီယ | ၁၀ မွှား / မှာ |

Unit 6

Exercise 1

- 1 som kcøp plae c^høø nih.
- 2 sampøøt hool mien tamlay nah.

- 3 yɔɔk svaay tʰom tiv cuun look taa.
- 4 kom som coh tlay tiət baan tee?
- 5 soom ?əŋcəəŋ ?əŋkuy look kruu.
- 6 ?aəŋ tijn krəmaa sot ?aoŋ neak naa?

Exercise 2

- 1 niv haarj luek voattʰo? ?a?nuhsaava?rii.
- 2 tijn rəbəh ?a?nuhsaava?rii.
- 3 saŋsaa, mdaay niŋ cov vaay.
- 4 pii.
- 5 pram muəy kaŋcap pseerj pseerj knie.
- 6 ?aav yiit ruup ?aŋkoo.

Exercise 3

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1 leek toc. | 4 ?at sam tee. |
| 2 poa khmav. | 5 ?aav yiit. |
| 3 caŋ?iət bantəc. | 6 trəv haəy. |

Exercise 4

- 1 ?aav nih mien poa ?ey klah?
- 2 kʰao ?aav məsamrap nih yaarj məc?
- 3a ?aav səa koat s?aat tee?
- 3b ?aav səa koat yaarj məc?
- 4 ?aav yiit nih mien tae leek ?ey?
- 5 peel tijn muək koat cool cət tvəə ?ey?
- 6a koat som ləo ?ey?
- 6b koat som ləo vaen taa kmav muəy naa?

Exercise 5

- 1 knom trəv kaa ?aav day vəəŋ poa khiəv leek toc.
- 2 knom trəv kaa səmpuət kləy poa baytaaŋ leek kandaal.
- 3 knom caŋ tijn kʰao cəəŋ vəəŋ poa prapʰeh leek tʰom.
- 4 knom caŋ tijn kʰao kləy poa prapʰeh leek toc.
- 5 som ləo kʰao cəəŋ vəəŋ poa khiəv leek tʰom.
- 6 som ləo ?aav ?at day poa sokolaa leek kandaal.

Exercise 6

- | | | | | |
|-------|--------------------|--------|----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 ຖុគ | 5 តុគ | 9 លុគ | 13 t ^h aa | 17 haa |
| 2 វុគ | 6 c ^h ω | 10 រុគ | 14 k ^h aa | 18 caa |
| 3 កុគ | 7 ងុគ | 11 តាត | 15 baa | 19 p ^h aa |
| 4 យុគ | 8 p ^h ω | 12 សាត | 16 kaa | 20 ?aa |

Exercise 7

- | | | | |
|-------------|------------|----------|-----------|
| ១ ចុះ/ថ្វី | តិ/ថ្វិ | ឡើង/ថ្វិ | ថ្វិ/ណាស់ |
| ២ ចេញ/លូយ | គិត/លូយ | អាប/លូយ | មាន/លូយ |
| ៣ លេខ/តួច | លេខ/កណ្តាល | លេខ/ដំ | លេខ/ពិស់ស |
| ៤ ខោ/ចង្វឹត | ខោ/រលូង | ស្រែក/ខោ | ខោ/នី |

Unit 7

Exercise 1

- 1 ?aeŋ cool cət kaafee rii tae?
- 2 ?aeŋ ñam sac rii ?at?
- 3 saŋsaa yoɔk baay rii num p?aŋ?
- 4 paa dak skoo rii tik dah koo?
- 5 propuən koat tijn kuy tiev rii babaa?
- 6 mak ciən trəy rii ciən sac moan?
- 7 kuu dəndəŋ koat hav baay c^haa rii kuy tiev c^haa?
- 8 koat ñam baay niŋ caŋkəh rii niŋ slaap prie?

Exercise 2

- 1 ?aeŋ cool cət babaa saa cie muəy poɔŋ tie ciən.
- 2 miŋ yoɔk kaafee cie muəy tik dah koo.
- 3 look taa ñam kuy tiev niŋ caŋkəh.
- 4 kruəsaa koat ñam baay niŋ slaap prie.
- 5 baŋŋ srəy tiv psaa cie muəy koon koat.
- 6 koat mien nat cie muəy kruu pœet.

Exercise 3

- 1 ?aeŋ ñam baay prik haəy rii niv?
- 2 vie tiv haəŋ baay cie muəy neak naa?

- 3 mhoop ?iitaalii yaan̄ məc?
- 4 koat tvəə mhoop ?əy klah?
- 5 baay cʰaa niv haan̄ nih yaan̄ məc dae?
- 6 koat nik̄ can̄ nam̄ ?əy?

Exercise 4

- 1 knom hav kuy tiev cʰaa dak sac koo məcaan.
- 2 mak cool cət nam̄ tae mhoop kmae tee.
- 3 vie tiv haan̄ baay ?iitaalii cie muəy knom.
- 4 kruəsaa koat paav baay knom.
- 5 joam̄ kriəj sa?mot tvəə ?aoy knom̄ cʰii puəh.
- 6 kmeeŋ̄ nih hav moan̄ ?ar̄ məcaan.

Exercise 5

- 1 som cam ponmaan̄ nietii?
- 2 sac koo cʰaa nih yaan̄ məc.
- 3a vie ?aoy sraa səə mədqap tiv neak naa?
- 3b vie ?aoy s?əy tiv koat?
- 4a koat yoōk s?əy məcaan?
- 4b koat yoōk baay səə ponmaan̄ caan?
- 5 tʃay nih koat ?aoy ?aeŋ̄ tumnee məen̄ tee?
- 6 koat rōok̄ ?əy?

Exercise 6

- | | |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1a yoōk sac moan̄ ?ar̄. | 3b ?at tee, ləək tʰaok nah. |
| 1b yoōk tae sac koo ?ar̄ tee. | 4 caa məen̄ haəy. |
| 1c yoōk teəŋ̄ pii muk. | 5a nɪŋ̄ haəy. |
| 2a həl nah. | 5b ?at tee. |
| 2b ?at tee. | 6a yoōk plae cʰəə. |
| 3a tlay. | 6b yoōk taəŋ̄ pii muk. |

Exercise 7

3 yoōk lok-lak məcaan	\$៥.૦૦
5 banlae cʰaa məcaan	\$૮.૦૦
9 samlaa mcuu sac trəy məcaan	\$૮.૫૦
11 baay səə pii caan	\$૮.૦૦
13 ?əŋ̄kɔ̄o biə pii kampon̄ (tij̄ muəy tʰaəm̄ muəy)	\$૮.૦૦

Exercise 8

- | | | | | |
|-------|-------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1 ឃុំ | 5 ឈុំ | 9 ឃុំ | 13 ឃុំ | 17 ឃុំ |
| 2 ឃុំ | 6 ឈុំ | 10 ឈុំ | 14 ឈុំ | 18 ឈុំ |
| 3 ឃុំ | 7 ឈុំ | 11 ឈុំ | 15 ឈុំ | 19 ឃុំ |
| 4 ឃុំ | 8 ឈុំ | 12 ឈុំ | 16 ឈុំ | 20 ឈុំ |

Exercise 9

- | | | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|------------|---------|
| 1 ត្រូវា | 3 ត្រូវឯ | 5 ច្បរ | 7 ត្រូវប្រ | 9 ត្រូវ |
| 2 ត្រូវា៖ | 4 ច្បរ | 6 នៅយាង៖ | 8 ច្បាំ | 10 លួយ |

Exercise 10

- | | |
|-----------------|------------------|
| a ឃុំ kcøy | f ត្រូវឯ sraa |
| b ដីៗ pteah | g ត្រូវឯក cruuk |
| c ត្រូវឯក kmae | h ត្រូវឯ tlay |
| d ត្រូវឯក p?aem | i ស្រីយ៉ែ svaay |
| e មួប mhoop | j ត្រូវឯស៊ែ srah |

Unit 8

Exercise 1

- 1 haaj cieñ kat sak neak niv psaa tməy.
- 2 koat yoōk mootoo tiv ?aōy cieñ maasiin.
- 3 bañ ?aeñ rook sii tvə̄e cumnuə̄n ?aōy krom hun nih.
- 4 paa koat rook sii tvə̄e camkaa niv srok srae.
- 5 look srəy niv knōj haaj cafee nih cie vihsva?kaa.

Exercise 2a

- 1 neak tvə̄e kaanje ?ey?
- 2 baek haaj niv ?ae naa?
- 3 ruup camlak neak luek yaan̄ məc?
- 4 roal tñay mien neak naa mōk tñ?
- 5 kee cool cət ruup camlak ?ey cieñ kee?

Exercise 2b

- 1 knom min meen cie ciəŋ camlak tee.
- 2 ?at baek haaj niv kraoy saa?rakmuntii ciet tee.
- 3 ruup camlak knom luek min dac tee.
- 4 kmien teehsa?caa mook tjin roal tjay tee.
- 5 kee ?at cool cət ruup camlak ?apsa?raa tee.

Exercise 3a

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|------------|
| a អ្នកលក់ទូរសព្ទ | c អ្នកការតែដេរ | e ជាងគំនួរ |
| b មេដ្ឋាន | d ជំនួយ | |

Exercise 3b

- 1 knom cie neak katdee.
- 2 paa koat rook sii tvəə cumnuəŋ.
- 3 ?əyləv knom cie neak luek laan.
- 4 pdəy koat tvəə cie ciəŋ komnuu.
- 5 prapuən knom cie mee pteah.

Exercise 4

- 1 tvəə cie vihsva?kaa. niv krom hun ?aekcōon muəy.
- 2 Sophal koat baek taksii haey luek kriəj sañhaarəm.
- 3 baan luy craən tae hat.
- 4 cuəy mdaay.
- 5 cool cət nah, pruəh ?aac daə ləəŋ cie muəy pjieh, haey baan hat niyieh ?əŋkleeh tiet.
- 6 baan luy təc, baan tae mərəuəh, tae sapbaay.

Exercise 5

- 1 knom caŋ tvəə cie neak kaasaet.
- 2 koat mien soŋpaabot pa?reŋpaabot.
- 3 koat mien bat pi?saot bəŋriən bəy cnam.
- 4 kee cʰup totuəl piek niv tjay sok kraoy.
- 5 peel dak piek rook kaanje trəv mien pravoat ruup sañkʰaep.

Exercise 6

- 1 som kom nae noam knom ?aoy skoal neak cumnuəŋ nih.
- 2 vihsva?koo noh ?at tvəə kaa ?aoy krom hun nih tee.
- 3 neak baæk taksii kmien bat pi?saot craən tee.
- 4 cierj tvəə pteah ?at cool cət kaanje nih sah.
- 5 cierj laan ?at trəv rook sii krav bantʰaem tee.

Exercise 7

- | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|
| 1 ត្រូវ: do not have | 6 ស្ថាល់: to know |
| 2 ក្រុម: group | 7 ខ្ពស់: high, talk |
| 3 ព្រៀង: because | 8 ក្នុង: inside |
| 4 ដំបូង: ricefield | 9 ត្រូវរៀ: guest |
| 5 ម្នាក់: one person | 10 ធ្វើប៉ែ: used to |

Exercise 8a

- | | | |
|----------------|---------------|---------------------|
| 1 ជាង/កាត់/ដេរ | រក/សី | កប/ណាស់ |
| 2 ហាង/លក់ | ផ្លូវ/លើ/នេះ | /មាន/អ្នក/ទិញ/ប្រើន |
| 3 តាត់/ត្រូវ | ធ្វើ/ការ/ងារ/ | ក្រោរ/បន្ថែម |

Exercise 8b

- 1 ជាងកាត់ដេររកសីកបណាស់។
- 2 ហាងលក់ផ្លូវលើនេះមានអ្នកទិញប្រើន។
- 3 តាត់ត្រូវធ្វើការងារក្រោរបន្ថែម។

Unit 9

Exercise 1

- 1 koat komponj ?aŋkuj cam niv knoŋ laan.
- 2 cav vaay ?aeŋ kamponj cʰɔɔ niv muk kaari?yaalay.
- 3 ckae kamponj deek niv kraom pteah.
- 4 knom kamponj dak kaasaet niv ləə tok nam baay.
- 5 look taa kamponj cʰɔɔ niv muk haan saŋ.
- 6 nihsət kamponj riən niv coan tii pii.

Exercise 2

- 1a kom plic tiv naa?
- 1b kom plic tiv haaj baay niv coan tii ponmaan?
- 2a koat tuk tsəhsa?naavatdəy niv ?ae naa?
- 2b koat tuk s?ey niv knoŋ sampiey?
- 3a som caol samraam niv ?ae naa?
- 3b som caol s?ey niv knoŋ tʰuŋ nih?
- 4a haaj luek siəvpʰiv niv ?ae naa?
- 4b haaj luek s?ey niv kraoy haaj saŋ?
- 5a siəvpʰiv riən pʰiesaa niv ?ae naa?
- 5b siəvpʰiv ?ey niv knoŋ laan?
- 6a kanlearj tvəə kaa niv ?ae naa?
- 6b kanlearj ?ey niv coap saalaa?

Exercise 3

- 1 pii pteah khnom baek traŋ tiv psaa.
- 2 niv kac cruj psaa, bat sdam.
- 3 som cʰup niv kʰaaŋ muk saara?muəntii pram nietii.
- 4 baek pii pləv, ruəc bat cveen niv pləəŋ stop.
- 5 kaari?yaalay niv tuəl muk haaj baay.

Exercise 4

- 1 The market is in the center of the city.
- 2 The school is on the west side of the market.
- 3 The restaurant is in between the school and the market.
- 4 The hospital is on the east of the market.
- 5 The house is on the north of the market.
- 6 The office is on the south of the market.

Exercise 5

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------------|
| 1 លេី # ក្រោម | 5 ឆ្លង # ស្តាំ |
| 2 បត់ # ទៅត្រួម | 6 ទិសខាងកើត # ទិសខាងលិច |
| 3 ក្រោ # ក្នុង | 7 ឆ្វាយ # ជិត |
| 4 ក្រោយ # មុខ | 8 យើត # លើខ្លួន |

Exercise 6

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------|
| 1 សំចុះនៅខាងមុខសាលា។ | 4 សំណួចទីនេះ។ |
| 2 ស្ថិដ្ឋីរល្អីនេះ។ | 5 ស្ថិបើកយើតង់។ |
| 3 ស្ថិបត់ធ្វើដោ។ | |

Unit 10

Exercise 1

- 1 niv srok kmae mien ponmaan rōdəv? rōdəv ?əy klah?
- 2 niv srok neak ?aakaasa?t^hiet yaaj məc niv rōdəv praj?
- 3 neak cool cit rōdəv ?əy cieŋ kee?
- 4 niv ?aalaaska, peel pril tleak ?aakaasa?t^hiet yaaj məc?
- 5a kmae tvəə srae camkaa niv rōdəv ?əy?
- 5b kmae tvəə ?əy niv rōdəv voahsaa?

Exercise 2

- | | |
|----------------|-------------------|
| 1 traceak nah. | 4 srah s?aat nah. |
| 2 kdav nah. | 5 min dael tee. |
| 3 buən rōdəv. | |

Exercise 3

- 1 pruəh steah luu.
- 2 pruəh ?əh sanj.
- 3 pruəh ?ət baay mətñay.
- 4 pruəh plic ?aav rɔŋje.
- 5 pruəh pliəŋ tlaek piŋ mək^hae.

Exercise 4

- 1 pliəŋ tleak klaŋ yaaj nih steah luu haəy.
- 2 mootoo rɔlvet t^heak min c^heh.
- 3 peel reaŋ pliəŋ təəp knom tiv pteah baan.
- 4 niv rōdəv pliəŋ yəəŋ trəv mien ?aav pliəŋ riŋ c^hat.
- 5 tñay nih tik lic pləv niv tii kroŋ pnum piŋ.

Exercise 5

- | | |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1 ?ət tleak ponmaan tee. | 4 ?ət caŋ ponmaan tee. |
| 2 ?ət mien ponmaan tee. | 5 ?ət toan soam ponmaan tee. |
| 3 ?ət tlay ponmaan tee. | 6 ?ət steah ponmaan tee. |

Exercise 6

- 1 srok ?aeŋ mien pril niŋ tik kaak tee?
- 2 pii mun vie dael kʰəeŋ saʔmot tee?
- 3 peel kdav klaŋ ?aeŋ kuə tae peak ?ey?
- 4 bantup nih trəv mien ?ey?
- 5 peel rɔŋje koat cool cət tvəə ?ey?
- 6 peel pril tleak vie lɛeŋ tvəə ?ey?

Exercise 7

- 1 tʃay nih meek sralah s?aat l?aa nah.
- 2 sbaek cəeŋ kaa vɛeŋ nih min tlay ponmaan tee.
- 3 koat ban ?aoy tae mien pril craən daəmbəy tiv leeŋ skii.
- 4 neak srae ban ?aoy mien pliəŋ daəmbəy tvəə srae.
- 5 baarəteeh min toan soam niŋ rɔdəv kdav niŋ srok kmae tee.

Unit 11

Exercise 1

- 1 knom cuən kaal criəŋ kara?o?kʰee, cuən kaal roam.
- 2 peel tumnee cuən kaal knom məəl tuurea?tuəh, cuən kaal məəl siəvpʰiv.
- 3 look kruu cuən kaal hat keylaa, cuən kaal tʰooit ruup.
- 4 koat cuən kaal cih mootoo dup tiv saalaa, cuən kaal cih koŋ.
- 5 nihsət cuən kaal hav kuy tiev, cuən kaal hav baay cʰaa.
- 6 koon koat cuən kaal nam kaareem, cuən kaal nam plae cʰəə.

Exercise 2

- 1 tʃay sav, koat min səv tiv tvəə kaa tee.
- 2 vie tiv daə leeŋ cie muəy puek maak cie nic.
- 3 peel vie sapbaay cət, kon proh knom taen tae criəŋ camriəŋ nih.
- 4 kon srəy koat min səv tumloop daə tjin ?əyvan roal tʃay ?aatit tee.
- 5 koat taen tae sdap cəmriəŋ bandaə hat praan bandaə.

Exercise 3

- 1 knom tumloap tiv hat praan riəŋ roal tŋay.
- 2 koon koat cool cət leer bal teah.
- 3 puək yəəŋ tiv ruət leen niv staad ?oolampiກ.
- 4 vie toat bal l?aa cieŋ kee bampʰot.
- 5 koat cool cət cih kaŋ taam pləv tooc cieŋ kee.

Exercise 4

- | | |
|----------------|------------------------|
| 1 ស្តីប់ចម្លៃង | to listen to music |
| 2 តិចលើន | to run fast |
| 3 ពួកមាំក | friend |
| 4 បាល់ទាត់ | soccer |
| 5 ហាត់ប្រាងណា | to exercise (work out) |
| 6 សួចក្រី | to fish (with a line) |

Exercise 5

- 1 koat tiv psaa daembəy tijn mhoop.
- 2 riən ?oŋkleeh daembəy rook kaanje tməy.
- 3 vie som?aat pteah daembəy ?aoy mdøy sapbaay cət.
- 4 haot keylaa daembəy sokpʰiep.
- 5 vie tvəə kaa bantʰeam daembəy rook luy krav.
- 6 koat keeŋ ?aoy c?aat daembəy ?aoy mien kamlaŋ.

Exercise 6

- 1 ការងារវិធី kaarje roat
- 2 ក្រុមហ៊ុនអភិវឌ្ឍន៍ krom hum ?aeaka?cōon
- 3 ថែរក្បាសុនបូណ្ឌទេ reaksaa suən cbaa
- 4 គេងអោយផ្លូវតិត keeŋ ?aoy c?aat
- 5 គួរអង់គ្លេស ?oŋkleeh

Exercise 7

- 1 koat mien camnaŋ camnool cət tvəə kaanje bantʰaem.
- 2 koat mien kumnit banriən kuə pʰiesaa ?oŋkleeh.
- 3 srəy nih sansam luy daə mbəy tijn pteah.
- 4 ?aeŋ min moək kaa daoy kaa knom niv tae cam.
- 5 teehsa?caa cool cət tʰaat ruup praasaat oŋkɔo voat.

Unit 12

Exercise 1a

- 1 baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, kñom tiv criej karaoke niv baa taam moat tuønlee.
- 2 baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, puøk yøøj cool mæøl saara?muøntii ciet.
- 3 baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, pñiøv baarøteh cool cøt tiv keeø samraak niv moat sa?mot.
- 4 baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak ñamnaø tijn sambot cool veaj niv tøj can.
- 5 baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, cih tuuk daø leenj taam moat tuønlee sapbaay nah.

Exercise 1b

- 1a baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak tiv criej karaoke niv ?ae naa?
- 1b baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak tiv tvøø ?øy niv baa taam moat tuønlee?
- 2a baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, puøk neak tvøø ?øy?
- 2b baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, puøk neak cool mæøl ?øy?
- 3a baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, pñiøv baarøteh cool cøt tiv keeø samraak niv ?ae naa?
- 3b baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak naa cool cøt tiv keeø samraak niv moat sa?mot?
- 4a baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak naa tijn sambot cool veaj niv tøj can?
- 4b baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, neak ñamnaø tijn sambot cool veaj niv tøj naa?
- 5a baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, cih ?øy daø leenj taam moat tuønlee sapbaay nah?
- 5b baø søn cie mien ?aokaah, cih tuuk daø niv ?ae naa sapbaay nah?

Exercise 2

- 1 baarøteeh cool cøt daø leenj knoø tii kroø ñaemþøy tijn ?øvan.
- 2 kñom caø tvøø ñamnaø tiv leenj niv baarøteeh.
- 3 puu kñom cool cøt ñam banlae knoø suøn cbaa nah.
- 4 neak ñamnaø tiv siøm riep ñaemþøy mæøl praasaat bo?raan kmae.
- 5 baø søn cie mien luy kñom caø tiv riøn niv ?øørop mdøøn.

Exercise 3a

- 1 paa min tloap tvøø damnaæ taam yøøn hah tee.
- 2 baøø srøy min dael cuøl laan krom hun tee.
- 3 cih kaanot min dael mien so?vatphiep tee.
- 4 koat min tloap baøk laan ptoal kluøn tiv leen sa?mot tee.
- 5 teehsa?caa min dael cuøl mootoo cih daø leen knoø tii roon tee.

Exercise 3b

- 1 paa min tloap tvøø domnaæ taam ?øy?
- 2 baøø srøy min dael cuøl ?øy?
- 3 cih kaanot min dael mien ?øy?
- 4a koat min tloap baøk laan ptoal kluøn tiv naa?
- 4b koat min tloap baøk ?øy tiv leen sa?mot?
- 5a teehsa?caa min dael cuøl ?øy cih daø leen knoø tii kroø?
- 5b teehsa?caa min dael cuøl mootoo tvøø ?øy?

Exercise 4

- 1 niv srok kmae kee craøn cih laan cnuøl tiv khaet nie nie.
- 2 prøøh vie mien so?vatphiep niø øjey sruøl nah.
- 3 knom min cool cøt tvøø damnaæ taam laan cnuøl tee.
- 4 prøøh knom pul laan.
- 5 niv pnum piø, koat ?øt hien cih mootoo dup tee, prøøh klaac mien krøøh tnak.

Exercise 5

- 1 tlay prohael haasøp dollaa.
- 2 baat baan, tae som cam mpøey nietii.
- 3 tlay prohael merooy dap dollaa samrap mneak.
- 4 samrap tiv moøk tlay prohael pii røoy mpøey dollaa.
- 5 baat baan, tae tøøv baøø tlay bonthaem.
- 6 cuøl tuuk cih daø leen taam moat tuønlee tlay prohael saamsøp dollaa.

Exercise 6

- 1 koat hav taaksii cih tiv viel ka?pal hah.
- 2 knom skoal səntʰaakie thoak noh.
- 3 look kruu noam nisət dae leen taam moat tənlee.
- 4 vie cuəl karj cih pii tñay.
- 5 teehsa?caa cool cət tvəə damnaə kamsaan tiv srok kmae.
- 6 koat klaac mien krəəh tnak peel baek laan liən peek.

Exercise 7

1 ពុលឡាត់នៃ	carsick	5 បាយក្រោត	to eat out
2 សំរក	to rest	6 បានទៅ	to have gone
3 ដើរលែង	to go for a stroll	7 ដូចជា	such as
4 ជាមួយ	with	8 ជីវិះទួក	to ride a boat

Exercise 8

- 1 ពេលយប់ # ពេលថ្ងៃ
- 2 ទីក្រុង # ស្របក្រោះស្រប
- 3 ក្នុងស្រប # ក្រោះស្របក្នុង
- 4 យើត # លើនេះ
- 5 ចេញ # ចូល
- 6 ឈប់សំរក # ធ្វើការ

Exercise 9

- 1 លោកស៊ីកឡាត់នៃថ្ងៃ។
- 2 គាត់ដូលឡាត់នៃថ្ងៃ។
- 3 ក្នុងគាត់ផ្លូវនៅបរទេស។
- 4 ឡាត់នៃឈប់ពីដែង។
- 5 ភាពីកដូចជាសាលា។

Unit 13

Exercise 1

- 1 cuəy hav taaksii ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 2 cuəy baak prae li?kʰət claaŋ daen ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 3 cuəy banriən nihsət ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 4 cuəy sansam luy ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 5 cuəy tʰaat ruup teehsa?pʰiep ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 6 cuəy tñj tik sot pii yuə ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 7 cuəy dam baay ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.
- 8 cuəy bampiŋ sambot snaam ?aoy knom pʰaaŋ.

Exercise 2

- 1 coon ciet ?aŋkleeh cih yuən hah tiv leej siem reap.
- 2 knom cuəy tij sambot laan kruŋ ?aoŋ puək mak ?aameerikanj.
- 3 peel tvəø damnae třev mien li?kʰet claaŋ daen cuəp kluən.
- 4 nihsət třev mien sambot boŋceak pii saalaa daəmbəy cool riən.
- 5 look nieyuək pəet som doo sambot yuən hah.
- 6 paa ?ankuy cam knom niv preah lien yuən prahael kanlah moaj.

Exercise 3

- 1 look nieyuək ?aŋcəən tiv krom hun teehsa?caa.
- 2 santʰaakie nih mien bantup tʰaok haəy mien daŋhal tiət.
- 3 kom kak bantup niv santʰaakie nih pruəh kmien sevaa ?laa tee.
- 4 bantup samrap kruəsaa mien bantup t̫ik baep ?eərop.
- 5 look tuk bantup kak nih samrap neak damnae baarəteeh.

Exercise 4

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 ເສັກ # ໄຜ່ງ | 5 ມະ # ເປົາຍ |
| 2 ເສັລ # ຖຸກ | 6 ໂຍ້ # ພັດູຍ |
| 3 ໄຜ່ງ # ດັບໆ | 7 ຕຸກ # ເຫຼື້ນ້ຳ |
| 4 ເຜົ້າໂຈ # ໃຜ່ລະມກ | 8 ບາມ # ເກາຍ |

Exercise 5

- 1 neak bonrae.
- 2 ?at tee, pruəh vie tʰum klən baarəy bantəc.
- 3 tuurə?sap teak tɔɔŋ niŋ kaari?yaalay sonth'aakie.
- 4 bae muk tiv moat sa?mot, tʰom haəy s?aat nah.
- 5 niv kʰaaŋ cveeŋ day konleanj totuəl pjniəv.
- 6 baek pii moaj pram pil tiv moaj pram buən prik.
- 7 niv coan tii pram bəy nai ?aakie nih.
- 8 třev teak tɔɔŋ kaari?yaalay niv kʰaaŋ kroam.
- 9 mien seevakam l?od nah.

Exercise 6

- | | |
|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1 ບົກົບຄົກໍ່ສິນ | luggage, bag, suitcase |
| 2 ກຳໄຟຟ້ອທີ່ເບາລົກ | swimming pool |
| 3 ກຳໄຟຟ້ອທົ່ວລະເກົ່າ | reception office, living room |

4 ເຕັງເປີດ
5 ຜຶ່ງສິນດາວີ

to satisfy, to be pleased
smell of cigarettes

Exercise 7

- 1 mun peel cəŋ damnaə třev bəŋceak sambot yuən hah.
- 2 koat cəŋ baan kav?ey coap bəŋ?uəc.
- 3 som cuəy bəŋceak sambot yuən hah ?aoy knom.
- 4 yəəŋ cool cet bantup mien maasiin traceak.
- 5 knom třev kaa bantup haam cuək baarəy.
- 6 sənt'aakie nih kmien bantup tik baep ?əərop tee.

Exercise 8

- 1 ຜູກຜຶ່ງເດີຣູລະບົດບຸນຫຼືບໍ່ຜຶ່ງ
- 2 ຜູກບໍ່ຜຶ່ງເມັກຍົກທຳບໍ່ເກົ່ານີ້
- 3 ບຸນບໍ່ເຊີເຣະມານຍັ້ງແຈ້ງ
- 4 ເຍັ້ນສຸ່ຫາກໍ່ໃຈກົງຢໍາລົດຍໍາ
- 5 ເກົ່າໂຮສະບຽດສູກໍ່ເຄີຍສຸກາຕາກໍ່ຊູ່
- 6 ບຸນບໍ່ກັກໍ່ເຄີຍຜຶ່ງສິນດາວີເກົ່າຕໍ່າ

Unit 14

Exercise 1

- 1 mien kruəh tnak mootoo haəy r̥oloat day cəəŋ.
- 2 vil muk, hiə sambao, kdav kluən, cəəŋkuən coam haəy haəm tiət.
- 3 məəl muk r̥obuəh, pi?nit bampuən kaa haəy sdap truuŋ vie.
- 4 kaət cumnjii pdaahsaay haəy třev leep tnam mətŋay məkroap.
- 5 ?at tee, pruəh kruu pəet thaə ?aoy vie kʰum nam niŋ pʰək tik ?aoy baan crean, vie cʰap cie haəy.

Exercise 2a

- 1 koat baek kbaal pruək mien kruəh tnak mootoo.
- 2 poolih pʰaak koat pruəh ?at peak so?vaatpʰiep.
- 3 kmeen nih duəl r̥oloat day cəəŋ pruəh ruət liən peek.
- 4 paa nam baan tae babaa pruəh r̥olieb bampuən kaa.
- 5 koat leep tnam məkroap pruəh vil muk haəy ciï kbaal.
- 6 puu hav laan tik ?aoy mook pruənlueat pləəŋ.

Exercise 2b

- 1 haet ?øy baan cie koat baek kbaal?
- 2 haet ?øy baan cie poolih p^haak koat?
- 3 haet ?øy baan cie kmeen nih duel røloat day cøen?
- 4 haet ?øy baan cie paa ñam baan tae bøbaa?
- 5 haet ?øy baan cie koat leep tnam møkroap?
- 6 haet ?øy baan cie puu hav laan tik?

Exercise 3

- 1 prøeh mae koat c^hii niv pøet.
- 2 min sruel kluøn, c^hii kbaal, kdav kluøn, haøy baan duel sanlap bat smaadøy.
- 3 hav laan sajkruøh bantoan.
- 4 koat ?ønkuy niv bantup sajkruøh bantoan.
- 5 pii tiv bøy ?øatit.
- 6 t^haa ?øoy vie c^hup yom. thaa mdaay vie p^hot pii kruøk tnak tñøen, haøy bantøc tiøt koat niø mœk pteah viø.

Exercise 4b

- 1 taa dae min baan, prøeh c^hii cøen.
- 2 kñom min hien ñam baay, prøeh mien cumñii riek.
- 3 puu trøv tam skaa, prøeh mien cumñii tik noom p?aem.
- 4 nihsøt som tiv bañkuøn, prøeh c^hii prøeh.
- 5 look min trøv k^høø craøn, prøeh mien cumñii løøh c^hiem.
- 6 paa tvøø damnae tiv srok krav min baan, prøeh mien cumñii røbeøn.
- 7 koat saasee min baan, prøeh bak day.
- 8 vie min tiv saalaa, prøeh pdaahsaay.

Exercise 4c

- 1 haet ?øy baan cie taa dae min baan?
- 2 haet ?øy baan cie ?aen min hien ñam?
- 3 haet ?øy baan cie puu trøv tam skaa?
- 4 haet ?øy baan cie nihsøt som tiv bañkuøn?
- 5 haet ?øy baan cie look min trøv k^høø craøn?
- 6 haet ?øy baan cie paa tvøø damnae tiv srok krav min baan?
- 7 haet ?øy baan cie koat saasee min baan?
- 8 haet ?øy baan cie vie min tiv saalaa?

Exercise 5

- 1 koat yɔɔk sambot tịn tnam tiv haan̄ luek tnam.
- 2 koat trèv laan bok baek kbaal hoo cʰiem kuə ?aoy klaac.
- 3 baan̄ sreay knom mien ptey puəh pram kʰae haey.
- 4 neak mien cumnjii beh dooŋ trèv kee bajcuun tiv bantup yeah kat.
- 5 cnam nih kmeen̄ sdap craen bandaal moɔk pii cumnjii krun caŋ.

Exercise 6b

- 1 ធម្ម៌គ្រឿនឈាមបណ្តាលមកពីមួសខ្មែរទាំងអស់។
- 2 លោកស្រាយបាក់ដើរអង្គុយចាំក្នុងកេវិស្សុរោ។
- 3 គេបញ្ចានក្នុងបេកក្បាលទៅបន្ទូប៉ែនៃអភិវឌ្ឍ។
- 4 ត្រូវទេសចរនៅត្រីនិចចិនកជនមិនបានរបស់។
- 5 កល់ព្រឹកលោកតាមូលចិត្តឡើងប៉ុន្មាន។
- 6 ម្នាយលោកមានធម្ម៌លើសលោម។

Exercise 6c

- 1 ធម្ម៌គ្រឿនឈាមបណ្តាលមកពីអី?
- 2 លោកស្រាយបាក់ដើរអង្គុយចាំនៅឯណា?
- 3 គេបញ្ចានក្នុងបេកក្បាលទៅណា?
- 4 ត្រូវទេសចរនៅត្រីនិចចិនកជនធ្វើអី?
- 5 កល់ព្រឹកលោកតាមូលចិត្តធ្វើអី?
- 6 ម្នាយលោកមានធម្ម៌អី?

Unit 15

Exercise 1

- 1 soom tooh, knom caŋ pnaə kaat postaal tiv kaanaadaa?
- 2 knom trèv kaa sraom sambot nih taem sumrap sambot nih?
- 3 pnaə sambot bəy nih tiv cea?pon ?oh ponmaan?
- 4 knom caŋ pnaə kajcap ?øyvan nih tiv srok ?oŋkleeh?
- 5 soom look tləŋ sambot nih ?aoy knom baan tee?
- 6 knom min caŋ bat ?øyvan, taə trèv tvəə yaaŋ məc?

Exercise 2

- 1 trøv tiv praysa?nii.
- 2 trøv pnaæ taam røikommadañdee.
- 3 trøv kcøp cie køncap haøy ?aoy kee tløj niv praysa?nii.
- 4 trøv yøok tiv tløj niv praysa?nii.
- 5 trøv mien ?aasa?yatt'h aan yøøj.

Exercise 3

- 1 krav pii ?aasa?yatt'h aan niv løø sraom trøv mien taem.
- 2 daømbøy pnaæ sumbot yøøj trøv tiv praysa?nii.
- 3 yøøj trøv yøok køncap pnaæ tiv ?aoy kee tløj niv praysa?nii.
- 4 daømbøy pnaæ ?øyvan pseøøj pseøøj trøv kcøp cie køncap.
- 5 baø min klaac ?øyvan bat tee, trøv pnaæ taam røikommadañdee.

Exercise 4

- 1 kñom tiv ATM daømbøy daak prak/luy.
- 2 koat taeø tae doo luy dollaa niv t'ea?niekie.
- 3 soom cam mæpleet, t'ea?niekie baøk tvie ?øyløv haøy.
- 4 neak mien kaat sumkoal kluøn tee?
- 5 kñom cie teehsa?caa, som praø li?køt clan daen baan tee?
- 6 nih luy doo, roap mæøl krup tee?

Exercise 5

- 1 ឆ្នាំខ្លួនអ្នកធ្វើប្រាក់ខ្សែខ្លះ។
- 2 ខ្សែខ្លួនដឹងការលុយពីជនភាគរោ។
- 3 ជាក់លុយនៅជនភាគរក្រូរមានសៀវភៅជនភាគរោ។
- 4 តោះ ទៅប្រាក់ដឹងមួយខ្សែខ្លួយនៅតិច។
- 5 នេះលុយដូរ សុំរកប់មិនគ្រប់ទេ?
- 6 សុំដូរលុយចិត្តណុលាបាលុយរៀល។

Exercise 6

- D t̄jay nih, k̄nom t̄iv daak luy niv t̄ea?niekie.
- A niv t̄ea?niekie dāmboon̄ k̄nom tr̄ev cap leek.
- E peel kee hav dal leek k̄nom, k̄nom t̄iv cuəp bokkea?lik t̄ea?niekie.
- F k̄nom tr̄ev bəñhaap̄ kaat samkoal kluən t̄iv bokkea?lik t̄ea?niekie.
- C k̄nom totuel luy pii bokkea?lik t̄ea?niekie.
- B k̄nom roap luy məəl krup haey, kaa lei bokkea?lik t̄ea?niekie.

Exercise 7

- 1 ដៃរាន់នេះមានម៉ាសីន ATM ទេ?
- 2 ខ្ញុំដើរកកវិនិច្ឆ័ន់ដូរលួយ ។
- 3 ៩០ដុល្លារបានលូយខ្លួចបុង្គាន់រៀល?
- 4 សំអាយជាសន្តិក៨០០០រៀល។
- 5 នេះលូយដូរសំរាប់មែលត្រូវទេ?
- 6 លោកត្រូវបានប្រាក់កំនើនក្រោតីរភាពរយ។

Exercise 8

- 1 អ្នកណាបាននាំខ្ញុំទៅបើកកុងនៅផ្ទាត់រាជរាជការ?
- 2 ថ្វីនេះខ្ញុំទៅដឹកលូយពីផ្ទាត់រាជរាជការព្រះខែនៅម៉ោង ៧:៣០ ។
- 3 គាត់ហុចកាត់សំគាល់ខ្លួនទៅអ្នកណា?
- 4 លោកយកកាត់ ATM ទៅដឹកលូយពីម៉ាសីនណាមួយ?
- 5 ពេលថ្វីដីលើរទៅប្រសកក្រោតត្រូវមានលិខិតឆ្លងដែន។
- 6 គាត់យូរបន្ទាកនូយដើម្បីទិញសំបុត្រចូល។
- 7 ថ្វីនេះមួយដុល្លារបានបុង្គាន់រៀល?
- 8 គាត់ទៅដូរលូយនៅផ្ទាត់រាជរាជការដើម្បីទិញសំបុត្រយន្តហេរ៍។
- 9 ទេសចរសំដូរលូយដុល្លារអាមេរិកកំងជាលូយខ្លួរ។
- 10 បើដូរ២០០ដុល្លារបានបុង្គាន់រៀលខ្លួរ?

Translations of dialogues

Unit 6

Dialogue 1: At a souvenir shop

- A: *Hello sir, please come in.*
- B: *I want to buy gifts for some friends back home.*
- A: *Are they women or men?*
- B: *They are for my fiancé, my mom, and my boss.*
- A: *Here are silk scarves, silk textiles with traditional patterns, plain silk fabrics, and sculptures.*
- B: *Wonderful, are these things made in Cambodia?*
- A: *Yes. What would you like to get, sir?*
- B: *Two silk scarves, one silk cloth with a traditional pattern, one Apsara sculpture, and this wall painting.*
- A: *These souvenirs are very precious because they are all handmade.*
- B: *Please wrap them up in separate packages.*
- A: *Please have an Angkor Wat souvenir T-shirt on me.*
- B: *Thanks.*
-

Dialogue 2: At a clothing store

- A: *Hello, what would you two like to buy?*
- B: *We want to buy a set of clothes for each of us.*
- A: *What size are you?*
- C: *A small for the short-sleeved blouse, and a medium for the skirt.*
- B: *Could you measure me? Because I am larger than I was before.*
- A: *A large for both the shirt and the pants. What colors do you like?*
- B: *I will take the white long-sleeved shirt and gray pants.*
- C: *Red for the blouse and black for the skirt. Do you have a dressing room?*

- A: Yes. Here are your clothes to try on.
- B: The shirt fits well but the pants are a bit tight. Do you have a size larger?
- A: For the XL pants, we have only black.
- C: Wow, these clothes look good on both of us.
- A: Please take them all, I'll reduce the price by 10%.
- B: Thank you very much.
-

Unit 7

Dialogue 1: Eating breakfast at a friend's house

- A: What do you want to eat this morning?
- B: Please give me some coffee first.
- A: Black coffee or coffee with milk?
- B: Black coffee with a lot of sugar.
- A: Do you want rice soup or noodle soup?
- B: Do you have rice soup with fish?
- A: I have only plain rice soup with salted dried-fish or fried duck egg.
- B: I would like plain rice soup with fried duck egg. How about you?
- A: I prefer cold rice and grilled dried-fish.
- B: Now I am very hungry.
-

Dialogue 2: Choosing a restaurant

- A: Phanna, are you hungry?
- B: I'm starving; I have not eaten anything since this morning.
- A: Do you want to eat at home or go out? What kind of food?
- A: Chinese food, Thai food, or Italian food?
- B: I feel like Italian food.
- A: But I like Thai food, especially seafood salad.
- B: Thai food is spicy; it gives me a stomachache.
- A: In that case, let's go to a Cambodian restaurant. It's less expensive and delicious.
- B: Let's go, but you're paying.
-

Dialogue 3: Ordering food

- A: *Do you have a table free for two?*
B: *Can I see the menu?*
C: *Sir, what dishes do you want?*
A: *Phanna, please order food for me.*
B: *I will take grilled chicken, fish salad, and sour soup.*
C: *What meat would you like in the sour soup?*
B: *Pork and also I'd like a plate of stir-fried vegetables.*
C: *Plain rice or fried rice?*
A: *Do you have brown rice?*
C: *Yes. What drinks would you like?*
B: *A can of beer and a glass of white wine.*
B: *For dessert we would like fruit and ice cream.*
A: *Please bring the food quickly. We don't have a lot of time.*
Thank you.
-

Unit 8

Dialogue 1: Discussion about work

- A: *Eh, have we met before?*
B: *Of course, at the business school five years ago.*
A: *Oh Vanna, please let me introduce my wife.*
C: *I am Sokhom. I am pleased to meet you. I am his business partner.*
B: *So, what profession are you in?*
A: *We have opened a tailor shop.*
B: *How is business?*
A: *Oh it is very successful, because Sokhom is a very popular seamstress. How about you?*
B: *I stopped working for the government, and opened a fruit store behind Soriya Mall.*
A: *How is the business?*
B: *It is going pretty well. I make more money than I did working for someone else.*
A: *Of course, we need to work doing what we enjoy.*
B: *I like this type of work very much.*
-

Dialogue 2: Part-time jobs

- A: *Hello friend, I haven't seen you for a long time. How are you doing?*
- B: *I am just fine. Where are you working now, Vanna?*
- A: *I work as an engineer for a private company. How about you, Sophal?*
- B: *I am still working as a teacher, but the salary is very low; I have to take on part-time work as well.*
- A: *Oh, so what part-time work do you do?*
- B: *I drive a taxi and, when there are no customers, I help my mom selling furniture.*
- A: *How is the taxi job?*
- B: *I really like it, because I take guests around, and I practice speaking English as well.*
- A: *Then why don't you quit your teaching job?*
- B: *Driving a taxi is fun but it is just to survive.*
- B: *As an engineer, your salary must be high, isn't it?*
- A: *Private jobs pay more, but it is very tiring.*
-

Dialogue 3: Applying for a job

- A: *Hello. Is this school looking for English teachers?*
- B: *Yes, that's right.*
- A: *How many teachers?*
- B: *We need two.*
- A: *What qualifications are required?*
- B: *You need a Bachelor's or Master's in English language.*
- A: *What about experience?*
- B: *You need at least two years of teaching experience.*
- A: *When is the application deadline?*
- B: *Next Monday.*
- B: *Please bring a resumé and a photo as well.*
- A: *Thank you very much. Goodbye.*
- B: *Goodbye.*
-

Unit 9

Dialogue 1: Asking about a location

- A: Hey, Dara what are you looking for right now?
- B: Sokha, have you seen my shoulder bag?
- A: Oh, I am so sorry. I aired the bag outside the house.
- B: What about my magazine that was on the table?
- A: I threw it away in the waste basket.
- B: By the way, do you know of a laundromat nearby?
- A: There is one nearby, but it is a bit expensive. It is next to the ABC Bookstore.
- B: What about a cheaper one?
- A: It's further away, behind the Total petrol station.
- B: Thank you. I will go to the cheaper one.
-

Dialogue 2: Giving directions

- A: Excuse me, uncle. I want to go to the Central Market. Which way do I go?
- B: From the museum, you turn left and walk to the west, along street #178.
- B: At the corner of Boulevard Preah Norodom, you turn right and walk straight north toward Wat Phnom.
- B: Arriving at the corner of street #130, turn right at the traffic lights.
- A: Approximately how many streets will I pass?
- B: You will pass about three streets.
- A: How many minutes will it take me to walk?
- B: If you walk fast, it takes about 15 minutes; and about half-an-hour if you walk slowly.
- A: Which side is the Central Market?
- B: The Central Market is in front of you.
- A: Thank you. Goodbye.
-

Dialogue 3: Giving location and directions

- A: *Excuse me, how much do you want for a three-hour ride in your tuktuk?*
- B: *Fifteen dollars, sir.*
- A: *Fine. We want to stop at many places to take pictures.*
- B: *OK, where do you want to go?*
- A: *From here, please go to the Independence Monument. Stop and I will take pictures there. Then we will drive by the garden on Sihanouk Boulevard.*
- A: *Please drive slowly along the river bank. I want to stop for half an hour in front of the Royal Palace.*
- A: *After that, go to Wat Phnom. I want to go up to take pictures for another half an hour. Can you wait?*
- B: *OK, where to next after that?*
- A: *We want to go to the Central Market.*
- A: *Please drop us at the eastern entrance. Then wait for us at the western entrance.*
- B: *Yes, sir, I'll wait there; then I'll take you back to your hotel.*
- A: *Great! Let's get in and start our journey.*
-

Unit 10

Dialogue 1: Weather in Cambodia and England

- A: *The weather here is very hot now. How about in your country?*
- B: *In England, the weather is beautiful because it is springtime.*
- B: *How many seasons are there in Cambodia?*
- A: *There are two seasons: the dry season and the rainy season.*
- A: *How about in England, how many seasons are there?*
- B: *There are four seasons: autumn, winter, spring, and summer.*
- A: *What is the winter like?*
- B: *In winter, there is snow and it is very cold.*
- A: *Wow, that's very special! I have never seen snow.*
- B: *How about the rainy season in Cambodia?*
- A: *It rains a lot, sometimes it rains all day. It is when farmers begin farming as well.*
-

Dialogue 2: The rain in Phnom Penh

- A: *It's raining so hard! A moment ago the sky was clear!*
- B: *Yes. How am I going to get home? I don't even have a raincoat.*
- A: *You can go with me, I have an umbrella and a raincoat.*
- B: *It is OK. I will wait for a while, my father will come and get me.*
- A: *I don't like the rain! Every time it rains the roads flood, the traffic gets bogged down, and the drains get blocked.*
- B: *The other day my motorbike died, I could not start it. I waded through water and dragged it along, until I got to the repair shop; it was exhausting.*
- A: *There! Your father is here!*
- B: *Ah, the rain has stopped, just in time. I am going now!*
- A: *OK, goodbye, see you tomorrow.*
-

Dialogue 3: Winter in New York

- A: *This morning, it snowed a lot, I was so cold!*
- B: *It's not that cold! I pray for a lot more snow because I am too lazy to go to school.*
- A: *It is this cold, and you still say it is normal for you?*
- B: *This week, do you want to make a snow mound for fun or go skiing up in the mountains?*
- A: *I am not going, I will freeze to death.*
- B: *Don't worry; just put on a thick coat, gloves and boots. It will no longer be cold.*
- A: *No, it is still freezing; I am not used to the weather here yet.*
- B: *You ought to go because it is your first time and you can play in the snow.*
- A: *Well, OK then. Let's go this week.*
-

Unit 11

Dialogue 1: Favorite activities

- A: *Hello Navy. Where are you going after work?*
- B: *Today, I want to go shopping. And you, what do you like to do when you're free?*
- A: *In my free time I like to watch TV, or lie down and listen to music while also reading a book.*
- B: *So, you're different from me. I rarely stay at home. I like to go to the market, shopping, eat out, or to go out to have fun with friends.*
- A: *So, you go out every weekend, do you?*
- B: *Of course, I always go out on my days off. Do you just stay home?*
- A: *No. I like to get fresh air at the river bank; sometimes, I go exercising in front of the Royal Palace or walk around taking pictures.*
- B: *Oh is that right! Do you want to go shopping with me?*
- A: *OK, let's wait until after work; then we'll go together.*
-

Dialogue 2: Sport activities

- A: *Hello there my friend! You're running faster than anyone, I almost could not catch up with you.*
- B: *Oh Virak! You're jogging at this stadium as well?*
- A: *Yes. Sometimes I run here. How about you?*
- B: *I normally jog here every afternoon.*
- A: *Didn't you know I play volleyball on Monday afternoon and soccer on Wednesday afternoon?*
- B: *No wonder I could not reach you when I called your house, each time they told me you had left to play ball already.*
- A: *That's right. I prefer playing soccer the most.*
- B: *Here take this bottle of cold water.*
- A: *Thank you. Oh do you want to go fishing this Sunday?*
- B: *Sure, come and get me.*
-

Dialogue 3: Day off and activities

- A: *Dara, are you still working for the government?*
- B: *Of course, working for the government I get lots of days off and time to rest. How about you?*
- A: *I work for a private company, I work six days a week.*
- B: *On my days off, I clean the house, I do the laundry, and I look after the garden.*
- A: *For me I just want to catch up with my sleep. But now, I have a new plan.*
- B: *What is your new plan?*
- A: *After I work, I'm going to go teach an English class to make more money.*
- B: *Excellent! That is a good use of time.*
- A: *I am saving money because I want to travel to Europe.*
- B: *Yes, I have the same dream. I want to go there as well.*
- A: *Oh, let's go together, that would be fun. Although we'll have to save up money from now on.*
- B: *Great idea. Thank you.*
-

Unit 12

Dialogue 1: Places to visit

- A: *You have lived in Phnom Penh for three months. What fun places have you visited?*
- B: *In the city, I have visited the Royal Palace, the National Museum, and some monasteries and I've taken a leisure boat ride along the river bank.*
- A: *How about outside the city, where have you gone to?*
- B: *I like to rest and relax at the beach, or go to the garden to help my mother grow vegetables and eat freshly picked fruit.*
- A: *How about at night, where do young people like to go for entertainment?*
- B: *They go out to eat, to drink, and to sing in karaoke bars along the river where lots of foreign guests are.*

- A: *By the way, have you been to Siem Reap to visit the ancient temples?*
- B: *Not yet. I am going to wait until vacation time.*
- A: *I also want to go if I have an opportunity to. I especially would like to see Angkor Wat. I have never seen it.*
- B: *Let's go together then.*
- A: *Good, during the vacation because we'll have two weeks off.*
-

Dialogue 2: Bus ride to Sihanouk Ville

- A: *Do you want to go to the ocean at Sihanouk Ville with me?*
- B: *Of course. How do we get there?*
- A: *Have you traveled by coach?*
- B: *Never, I used to drive my own car or rented a car with a driver. How about you?*
- A: *I have, when I went to my home town and other provinces.*
- B: *What it's like traveling by coach?*
- A: *It's very convenient; it stops at many eating places and of course it is very safe. But some people get carsick.*
- B: *Well, I want to try going by coach one. Having you accompanying me will be great.*
- A: *No problem. But don't forget to bring along motion sickness pills.*
- B: *Yes, it will be very pleasant and also cheap, going to the beach by coach.*
-

Dialogue 3: Taxi ride to the airport

- A: *Hello, are you the taxi driver?*
- B: *Yes, I am. What can I do for you?*
- A: *Now, I am at Phnom Penh hotel. Can you come and pick me up?*
- B: *Yes, I can. I will be there in 15 minutes; there is some traffic congestion.*
- A: *Oh, look! Here is the taxi coming.*
- B: *Where would you like to go?*
- A: *I want to go to Phnom Penh Airport. How much do you charge?*

- B: Yes, the fare is according to the meter. Usually it is about \$10.
- B: Please get in.
- A: Hey driver, can you go a bit faster? It is almost time for my plane to depart.
- B: Going too fast might lead to an accident. I should be careful. Going slow is safer. In about five minutes, we will be there.
-

Unit 13

Dialogue 1: Confirming a plane reservation

- A: Hello. Can you help me to confirm my flight?
- B: Please give me your confirmation number and the airline name.
- A: The number is SR214 and the airline is Cambodia Angkor Air.
- B: What is your first name and your last name, please?
- A: John is my first name and Mayer is my last name.
- B: You are scheduled to depart tomorrow at 11:00 am. Correct?
- A: That's correct. Please check number SR215 too?
- B: Can I have his/her name?
- A: My son's name is Jack.
- B: Would you like to sit together?
- A: I would like a window seat and, for my son, an aisle seat.
- B: Please be at the airport two hours before your departure time.
- A: Thank you for helping me. Goodbye.
- B: Goodbye.
-

Dialogue 2: Booking a hotel room

- A: Hello. I would like to book a room at this hotel, is that OK?
- B: Yes for what days? How many nights and how many people?
- A: Starting from tomorrow for three nights. It is for three adults and one child.
- B: We have rooms with one bed, two beds, and some for families. How many rooms would you like? And what type of rooms?
- A: We need rooms that have AC, with European-style bathrooms and non-smoking.

- B: Yes, sir, OK but tomorrow we don't have any rooms left with just one bed.
- A: In that case, we will take two rooms with two beds each.
How much does it cost per night?
- B: It costs \$60 a night including breakfast.
- A: OK. Do you have a free bus to pick up passengers from the airport?
- B: Yes we do. Could I have your credit card to confirm your room reservation, please?
- B: The rooms are all confirmed. See you tomorrow.
-

Dialogue 3: Checking in at a hotel

- A: Hello. Here is my room confirmation number.
- B: Welcome to our hotel.
- A: Can we see the room first?
- B: Of course, the concierge will take you and your luggage to the room first. If you want to change the room, please call us from there.
- A: Hello, we are not very happy with this room, because it smells a bit of cigarettes.
- A: Could we change to a room that has an ocean view, please?
- B: Yes, of course.
- A: Wow, the room is big and very beautiful.
- B: This new room has a balcony to sit on and enjoy the ocean view as well.
- A: Where is the breakfast room? And what time does it open?
- B: It is on the left side of the reception desk. It's open from 7:00 to 9:00 am.
- A: Where is the swimming pool?
- B: On the eighth floor. If you want towels or anything else, please contact the front desk downstairs.
- A: You have been a big help, and have taken good care of us.
Thank you for your service.
- B: It's my pleasure. Have a wonderful stay.
-

Unit 14

Dialogue 1: Doctor's visit

- A: *Hello. I heard you had a motorcycle accident. Where does it hurt?*
- B: *Yes, my head is OK, because I wore a helmet. I just got scratches on my arms and legs.*
- B: *But now I feel dizzy, I have a runny nose, and my knees are turning black and blue and swollen.*
- A: *Let me check those injuries. Your knees are OK. In two to three weeks the bruises and the swelling will be gone.*
- A: *Last night what was your temperature?*
- C: *We don't have a thermometer, but it was very high.*
- A: *Please open your mouth, and take a deep breath.*
- A: *Ah, you have a sore throat and a cold. Here are some medicines, take one tablet a day.*
- C: *Should she have one or two vitamin injections?*
- B: *Oh, I am scared of needles, please no injections.*
- A: *There is no need. Try to eat and drink plenty, you will recover quickly.*
- B: *Thank you doctor.*
-

Dialogue 2: A mother's illness

- A: *Dara, why do you look so sad?*
- B: *I am so worried. Mom complained of not feeling well, she had a headache, but yesterday she had a fever and fainted.*
- A: *Oh my goodness. What happened then?*
- B: *We called an ambulance to take her to the hospital. I waited in the waiting room of the emergency room.*
- A: *What did the doctor say?*
- B: *They tried to diagnose her illness. They took a chest x-ray, and took blood and urine samples.*
- A: *What was it then? What does she have?*
- B: *She has diabetes and pneumonia. She needs to stay at the hospital for treatment for two to three weeks.*

- B: OK. You can stop crying now. She has passed the critical stage, and will come home soon.
- A: Thanks for comforting me.
- B: Tomorrow we will go to visit her in hospital together.
-

Dialogue 3: At the hospital

- A: Hello, how is my mom doing?
- B: Hello, she can leave at any time.
- A: I need to get prescriptions from the doctor.
- B: Every day, she needs to take these three types of medicine, and come to get her injection at the clinic.
- A: How does she take her medicine?
- B: Every morning and every night, take two tablets of each medicine, and one tablespoon of the liquid one.
- A: OK, let's put her in the wheelchair and go together.
- A: Wow, how come there are so many children over there?
- B: Oh those kids have hemorrhagic fever and malaria because there are so many tiger mosquitos.
- A: How about the other sections over where the pregnant women are sitting?
- B: Those are the maternity rooms, radiology, and, further down, the surgical rooms.
- A: Oh the taxi has arrived, perfect timing.
-

Unit 15

Dialogue 1: Sending mail and packages

- A: Navy, where have you just come from?
- B: From the post office, I was sending a letter and a postcard to France.
- A: How do people send letters abroad?
- B: On the envelope, in the top left corner, write down the return address; in the middle, write the recipient's address and then take it to the post office to buy stamps.

- A: *How much does it cost to send letters?*
- B: *It depends on the weight and the country you are sending the letter to.*
- A: *How about sending merchandise?*
- B: *Goods must be wrapped in packages and taken to the post office to be weighed first before paying the postal fee calculated according to the weight.*
- A: *You are not afraid that they will get lost?*
- B: *Not really, if we send them registered. Then it is guaranteed they will be safe.*
- A: *Hey, Navy, look, there's the postman distributing mail in the mailboxes.*
-

Dialogue 2: Getting money from the bank

- A: *Hello! May I help you?*
- B: *Yes, I have come to get the money my father sent to me here from Battambang.*
- A: *Do you have a passport or an ATM card?*
- B: *No, I don't.*
- A: *Please wait for a moment. Fill in this form first.*
- B: *Here is the form, I have completed it.*
- A: *I must confirm the information. What is the name of the sender? How much was sent? And who was it sent to?*
- B: *Yes, his name is Sok Samnang; he sent five hundred thousand Riel to me.*
- A: *Do you have an ID, address, and phone number to confirm it?*
- B: *Yes, I have those.*
- A: *Here is the money, please count it to make sure there is nothing missing.*
- B: *Yes, it is correct. Thank you very much.*
-

Dialogue 3: Changing money

- A: *Hello there my friend! What kind of services does that bank have?*
 - B: *They exchange money, send money, borrow money, and transfer money, and so on.*
 - A: *Oh, do you have a savings account at the bank that earns interest?*
 - B: *Are you crazy? Me, having money! I go to the bank simply to get money my dad has transferred from his account to mine.*
 - A: *I am just teasing! How do you get that money?*
 - B: *You take a queue number, sit and wait.*
 - B: *When your number comes up, go to meet the bank clerk to withdraw the money.*
 - A: *To withdraw money, what documents are needed?*
 - B: *Personal identification card, bank passbook, or account number.*
 - A: *If you do not have ID, can you use your passport instead?*
 - B: *You can.*
 - A: *Talking about this, I heard that if you have an ATM card, you can withdraw money directly from the ATM machine.*
 - B: *That's right. But I forgot my PIN number.*
-

Translations of reading passages

Unit 1

Greeting and self-introduction

Hello, my name is San Sophal. I am from Siem Reap. I am an English teacher at the university.

Hello, my name is Marie Claude. Claude is my last name. I am a Frenchwoman from Paris. I am the director of Calmette Hospital.

Hello, my name is Kong Borey. I am a student from Cambodia. During the day I study and at night I work at a hotel.

Unit 2

Family

Sophal's family is composed of his grandfather, grandmother, dad, mom, older brother, and his younger sister. Sophal has been married for three years already.

Rany's family consists of her older sister and her child, and her aunt and uncle. Rany's parents have passed away.

Navy has a very handsome boyfriend. She has been engaged for three months already. She will invite Sophal's family and Rany's family to her wedding. Her younger brother is single and still going to school.

Unit 3

Time and date

Tomorrow is Sunday. At 9:00 am, I am free. I am going to buy gifts at the Central Market, and clothing at Soriya Mall. By 10:30 am, after buying the gifts, I will walk to Soriya Mall. Walking from the Central Market will take ten minutes. After buying clothes, at 12 noon, I will come home.

Unit 4

Appointments and daily routines

This morning, I had a severe toothache. I could not bear it anymore. I called the dentist to make an appointment, but I needed to wait for half an hour. This week, I have lots of appointments and I will be very busy. I need to meet with the director of the garment factory and the student representative. At the end of this weekend, I am going to celebrate my girlfriend's birthday. I will eat until my heart's content, from 8:00 pm until 10:00 pm.

Unit 5

At the open market

In Phnom Penh there are regular open markets and supermarkets everywhere. Every market has lots of people browsing to buy things from dawn to night. The large indoor malls have air-conditioning, and the majority of their merchandise is expensive and from foreign countries. Foreigners like to go to the malls. Every day Cambodian people go shopping at the open market. I like to buy delicious fruits, fresh vegetables, and good and cheap merchandise at the open market because over there I can bargain.

Unit 6

Souvenirs and clothing

Antique stores and souvenir stores are everywhere in the city and in the tourist area. Foreign guests like to shop for various types of souvenirs at the Toul Toumpoung Market because over there they can bargain and the prices are also reasonable.

In Phnom Penh, they can buy clothes at the malls, the Central Market, the Olympic Market, or the Night Market. At those places, the sellers set high prices and the buyers enjoy bargaining. Clothing at the malls is very expensive, but it is fancy and trendy so people buy it anyway.

Unit 7

Food and restaurants

Tonight, I was too lazy to make dinner, so we are going to a Cambodian restaurant. I like to eat Cambodian food because it is not expensive and is also delicious. I ordered stir-fried chicken with ginger and sweet and sour beef soup. My older sister does not eat meat. She ordered fried egg, fried vegetables, and one bowl of brown rice. I drank one can of beer, and she had one glass of red wine. We ate mango ice cream for dessert. My older sister has lots of money and is generous. She paid for me.

Unit 8

Vocations and employment

My family has our respective jobs. My father and mother are school teachers. My elder brother completed his degree in commerce and is now working for a foreign company. My oldest sister is a painter. My second eldest sister is good with languages. She is a translator and a journalist. I am a student and want to be a lawyer. My uncle is a farmer. My aunt is a weaver. Her traditional handwoven silk fabrics sell very well; tourists come to the house to buy them. Our family lives happily together.

Unit 9

Locations and directions

This Saturday night, my mother went to celebrate her friend's birthday on the fourth floor of Soriya Mall. She called and asked me to join the party. I had to bring along the present from the top of the table. She gave me directions on how to get to the party. I had to drive from home and take a left turn at the corner of the bakery. Drive to the corner of the Sihanouk Boulevard and turn left again. Drive until reaching the corner of Street #154 and then turn right. Soriya Mall was located on the left-hand side.

Unit 10

Weather and seasons

In Cambodia there are two main seasons: the dry season or summer and the rainy season. During the rainy season farmers grow crops because there is a lot of rain. During the dry season the weather is very hot. Normally, wealthy city dwellers or the majority of foreigners use a fan or an air-conditioner when they are inside their houses.

In Europe there are four seasons: fall, winter, spring, and summer. In fall, the landscape is in an orange color. In winter, there is snow and it is very cold. In spring, there are beautiful blooming flowers. In summer, I like to go to the ocean or climb a mountain with my family.

Unit 11

Leisure activities

Each person has their own habits and things they like to do. Some people like to go out for fun, go shopping, go out eating, or go out with friends. Some people like to stay home, sleep, listen to music, read books, or watch TV. For some, they work extra hours to make extra income to support their family and help their children to take supplementary classes. Even though they are busy, they do not forget to exercise for their health. They like to exercise, run, play sport, or do aerobic dance at the stadium, at the public park, or along the river bank.

Unit 12

Traveling

In Cambodia there are many places to visit such as ancient temples, the Royal Palace, museums, the zoo, rivers, or the ocean. Cambodians prefer to make short trips using individual transportation such as a bicycle, motorcycle, or car. Those without individual transportation tend to use a cyclo (3-wheel pedicab or cycle rickshaw), motodup (motorcycle taxi), tricycle tuktuk or taxi. Each time, when traveling to

the provinces, Cambodian people prefer to use taxis, renting the whole car with a driver or a passenger bus, because it is safe and the fare is reasonable. At present, Cambodia does not yet have train services.

My mother said, ‘At major celebrations, the city people like to visit their birthplaces in the provinces. But the province folks, they prefer to be in Phnom Penh especially during the water festival celebration.’

Unit 13

Hotels and tickets

In Cambodia there are many places where travelers can stay such as modern hotels, regular hotels, and guesthouses. These hotels provide up-to-date, international services and serve foreigners as well as local clients.

Travelers can go to the travel agencies to ask for information about traveling within the country or to foreign counties. At those travel agencies, travelers can buy plane, bus, and boat tickets; rent a car; or get a tour guide to accompany them to places of attractions for tourists. At some places they can help travelers with hotel or guesthouse bookings, confirm travel tickets, help with passports, or facilitate visa applications.

Unit 14

Emergencies and health issues

In Cambodia in general, when there are emergencies or accidents, people call the security authorities or their neighbors for help. When a house is burning they call the fire truck or people in the village to help put out the fire. When there are thieves or robberies or traffic accidents, they call the police. If there are injuries, they call the hospital or the ambulance. Nowadays in Phnom Penh, there are more clinics and private hospitals than government hospitals, and the majority of them have foreign doctors working side-by-side with the local Cambodian doctors. In the rural areas, the poor have no money to take care of their illnesses.

Unit 15

Post office and banking

Mailing letters and packages to foreign countries can be done through the post office or through private messengers. When sending packages inside the country, Cambodians prefer to send mail via a private van, a taxi driver, or through friends and relatives.

Cambodians prefer to use cell phones to talk to each other, and even the farmers in the countryside have cell phones to use. For those who have relatives in foreign countries, they usually ask how they are doing using the phone, or using electronic messages such as email or Facebook. If they want to send money, they send it through the bank because it is safe and easy. For exchanging money for daily use, Cambodians prefer to go to the local exchange place or money exchange, because it is convenient, nearby, and quick.

Cambodian–English glossary

កោ kaa

កោ

also, too, then,

kaa

therefore

កោដាយ

whether or not

kaa daoy

to be hardened,

kaak

coagulated

kak

to reserve; to

kak

deposit; to wash

កក្កដា

July

kakka?daa

bicycle; wheel

kanj

pack, package

កញ្ចប់

September

kanjcap

half

កញ្ញា

place

កន្លែងទូលក្ខោរ

reception office;

konleang totuol pñieov

living room

កន្លែងហោលទីក

place to swim,

konleang hael tiv

swimming pool

កន្លែង

kerchief, scarf,

konsaen

towel, napkin

កច្ចាប់

motorboat,

ka?pal

steamboat

កច្ចាប់ហោះ

airplane, aircraft

ka?pal hah

កម្មជា

Cambodia

កម្រៃ

kamroo

rarely; (it) takes a long time to . . .

កច្ច័ត្តិង

kac crui

corner; street corner

កាបឹប

kadoo

gift or present (French word)

កាលុយតិ

kaanoot

motorboat

កាតិត

kaat ATM

ATM card

កាត់

kat

to cut; to pass through

កាត់ដំរើ

katdee

to make clothing

កាតសំគាលខ្លួន

kaat samkoal kluoen

identification card

កាតសណ្ឌាន

kaat ?intien

credit card

កាបូប

kaaboop

bag

ការ

kaa

work; to marry; wedding; interest

ការងារ

kaanje

job, task, work, employment, duty

ការងារនកជន

kaanje ?aeka?cwoon

private job

ការប័តសុត

kaa t'oot suet

lung x-ray

ការប្រាក់

kaa prak

interest (on a saving or loan)

ការចាក់ទិន្នន័យ

kaa teak toon

relationship, tie; involvement; relation

ការពិនិត្យឈាម	blood test	កោអីជាប់ចន្ទាន់ដើរ	aisle seat
kaa pi?nit chiem		kav?ey coop canlah	
ការពិនិត្យឯកនោម	urine test	dae	
kaa pi?nit tik noom		កោអីជាប់បង្កួច	window seat
ការឃោលបំបុយ	office	kav?ey coop b?n?uac	
kaari?yalay		កោអីរដ្ឋចាំ	waiting chair
ការឃោម	ice cream	kav?ey r?u? cam	
kaa reem		កោអីរូញ្ញូន	wheelchair
កាលណាត	when, whenever	កំ	do not
kaal naa		kom	
កាហ្វេ	coffee	កំត្រួច	don't forget
kaafee		kom p?lic	
កាហ្វេខ្សោ	black coffee	កំណាត់	appointment;
kaafee kmav		kamnat	fixed period
កាហ្វេទីកដោះគោ	coffee with milk	កំបីង	small tin can
kaafee tik dhh koo		kampon	
កិច្ច(ការ)ប្រចាំថ្ងៃ	daily routine	កំពុង	to be in process of
koc(kaa) procam t?j?y		kampu?	doing something
កិឡា	sports	កំពង់រក	searching for
kaylala		kampu? rok	
កិច្ច	bank account	កំនើ	gain; tip, gratuity
korj		kamray	
កិច្ចចិវ	meter (instrument	កំសាត់	to relax, to rest
konjtoa	to measure something)	kamsaan	
កុន	movie, film	កោតាំ	
kon		kdav	to be hot; hot
កុម្ភៈ	February	កោតាន់	
komp?eak		kdav kluoen	to have fever
កុន	child; offspring	ក្រុង	
koon		kmen?	young people
កុនប្រុស; កុនប្រឹស	son; daughter	ក្នុង	inside
koon phoh; koon srey		knoj	
កើត	to be born; to	ក្បាល	head; beginning,
kaat	rise; give birth to	kbaal	source
កើតជម្លើ	to be taken ill	ក្រាំ	to be poor;
kaet cumnjii		kraa	destitute
កោវ	glass	ក្រដាហិសប	
kaev		kradaah	paper
កោអី	chair	ក្រសុង	
kav?ey		krasuon	ministry

ក្រសួងការពារសហនិធីសុខ	security unit	ីង	to be angry
krasuən kaapie		kʰəŋ	
sante?sok		ីស	wrong; to be wrong
ក្រាស់	thick	kʰoh	
krah		ីតិបី	different from
ក្រមហិន	company	kʰoh pii	
krôm hun		ីបកំណោត	birthday
ក្រមហិនទេសចរណ៍	travel agency	kʰuəp kamnaət	
kromhun teehsa?caa		ីតិ	province
ក្រមហិនយន្តហោះ	airline	kʰaet	
krôm hun yəen hah		ីល	month; moon; season
ក្រមហិនិភកជន	private company	kʰae	
krômhun ?aeka?coon		ីមេសា	April
ក្រូច	orange	kʰae meesaa	
krôoc		ីខា	pants, trousers
ក្រាយ	behind, back, at	kʰao	
kroay	the back	ីខាកវ់	clothing
ក្រវ	outside, out	kʰao ?aav	
krav		ី	to make an effort
ក្រវិពី	beside, in addition	kʰam	
krav pii		ីប៊ែ	to wrap
ក្រាក	to cough	kcap	
k?aaak		ីខិ	to be light (color)
ខ kʰaa		kcey	
ខាង	side; directions;	ីប្រាក់	to borrow money
kʰaanj	part	kcey prak	
ខាងក្រោរ	on/from the	ីលិ	
kʰaanj krav	outside, outside of	kcil	
ខាងកៀត	eastern; east	ីនុំ	I
kʰaanj kaet		knom	
ខាងលើ	on top	ីដូរ	Cambodian
kʰaanj lœ		kmae	
ខាងក្នុង	right side, on the	ីឡូ	to be black, dark (color)
kʰaanj sdm	right	kmav	
ខាត	to lose (money, benefits)	ីរុស	wind, breeze, air
kʰaat		kyal	
ខាន	to fail, to miss	ីរុសបិសុខ	fresh air
kʰaan		kyal aresot	
ខានស្អក	day after tomorrow	ីតិច	to fear, be afraid of
kʰaan s?æk		klaac	

ខ្សែតុលិក kley	short	តែង keen	to sleep, to lie down
ខ្សែសំណើ klah	some	តែងអាយក្សត keen ?aoy c?ae	to catch up with sleep
ខ្សែចិត្ត klaej	strongly	គោរ koo	cow, ox
ខ្សែសុខ kvah	to be short of, insufficient	គំនិត kumnit	idea, opinion; thinking
គិត គុត		គំនូវ kumnuu	drawing; design; painting
គាត់ koat	he, they, she, her, their (depends on context)	គំរាន kumroun	plan, outline; planning
គិត kit	to think; to wonder; to count	គ្រឿង knie	I, he, she (depends on the context)
គិតគូម kit ruem	including (add together)	ក្រុង kmien	not having; there is not; without
គិតលូយ kit luy	total up	គ្រប់ krup	correct, complete
គីឡូរូក kiloo	kilogram	គ្រាន់ kroan	to be sufficient; enough
គី(ជា) kii (kii ciə)	to be (equal to); as follows; namely	គ្រាន់តៅ kroan tae	only, just, merely, simply
គូយទារៈ kuy tiev	noodles	គ្រុន krún	to have a fever
គូ kun	pair	គ្រុនចាយ់ krún caŋ	malaria
គូដែកដង kuu dandəŋ	fiancé	គ្រុនលាម krún cʰiem	hemorrhagic fever
គូរ kuu	to draw, to paint; to design	គ្រូ kruu	teacher; learned person; healer
គូរ kuə	to be correct; suitable; should, ought to	គ្រូបង្កើន kruu banjriən	teacher, instructor
គូវតែ kua tae	should, or ought to	គ្រូពើចុងផ្លូវ kruu peet tmij	dentist
គូសិម kuə sam	to be reasonable; courteous	គ្រូសារ kruəsaa	family; spouse
គីត kee	he, she; they; someone; other	គ្រីង kriəŋ	bed
		គ្រីងក្រុង kriəŋ kriəŋ	equipment; tool; ingredient, spice

គ្រឿងសង្គារិម kriəŋ sɔŋhaarəm	furniture	ចាប់លេខ cap leek	to take a number
គ្រោះប្លាក់ krueh tnak	danger, accident	ចាយវីយ caay viey	to spend (money)
គិនិត្រ kliinic	clinic	ចាត់ cah	to be old
ឃ k̚aa		ចាស, ចាាំ caah, caa	polite response for female
ឃើញ k̚eən	to see, to perceive	ចិត្ត cet	heart; mind; spirit
ឃ្លាន klien	to be hungry	ចិន cen	Chinese; China; to be Chinese
ឃ ឃុំ		ចូង cong	end, tip, top
ឃាប់ hooap	to die	ចូងសុណ្ឌាប់ cong suopdaa	weekend
ឃាយ hiey	easy to do	ចូល cool	to enter; to go in (to)
ឃាយស្រុំលេ hiey sruel	to be easy	ចូលចិត្ត cool cet	to like, to prefer
ឃ caa		ធ្វើន cien	to fry something
ឃដី caej	to want, wish, desire	ចោក ceek	banana
ឃដី៖ (ឃដី៖) caŋkəh	chopsticks	ចោរ cen	to leave; to depart; to go out; exit
ឃជួរតិត caŋ?iet	to be narrow, tight	ចោរដឹងលើរ cen domnae	to depart on a trip
ឃច្ចួន៖ canlah	interval; area in between	ចោក caek	to divide; to distribute
ឃប់ cap	to finish; to end; to conclude	ចោល caol	to throw; to abandon
ឃក់ cak	to stab; to pour; to inject	ចោរ cao	thief, gangster, robber
ឃក់ថ្មាំ cak tnam	to give injection	ចោះ cav	grandchild
ឃញ្ញោះ caajn	to be overcome; to lose; to be less than	ចំ cam	directly, right (on spot)
ឃន caan	plate, bowl, dish	ចំកណ្តាល cam kandaal	in the center
ឃប់ cap	to begin; to catch; to arrest		

ចំការ (ចំអារ)	farm (fruit, vegetable); plantation	ឆ្នាំ	year
camkaaa		cnaam	
ចំណាយ ចំណាលបិត្ត	desire, wish	ឆ្លើយ	to answer
camnaaj camnool cət		ឆ្លាយ	
ចាំ	to remember; to wait	ឆ្លាង	facing, toward
cam		ឆ្លែង	
ចុះ	to go down; to get off	ឆ្លួត	to be full; to be well fed
coh		ចាទ់	
ចុះត្រួត	to reduce price	ជំគឺ	
coh tlay		ជំដូង	knee
ចុះនៅ	how about, and you	ជំសេរី	
coh ?aeu		ជំដឹក	to discuss
ចេះ	to know (knowledge)	គោចេក	
ceh		ជន	people, person
ចេះត្រួត	keep on it, always	គោន	
ceh tae		ជនជាតិ	nationality
ក្រឹង	much, many	គោន ciet	
craoen		ជនបរទេស	foreigner
ជំ c^haa			
ឆាំ	to stir-fry (mixed vegetable and meat)	ជំលោះង	to have a party, banquet; party
c ^h aa		គុល	
ឆាប់	to be quick; fast; right away	ជម្រើនកន្លាមផ្លូម	diabetes
c ^h ap		cumnjii tik noom	
ឆាប់ជាតិ	to recover quickly	រោមេ	
c ^h ap cie		ជម្រើនសាយ	to have a cold
ឆោវ	to be raw; uncooked	cumnjii pdaahsaay	
c ^h av		ជម្រើនបែង	TB (tuberculosis)
ឆេះ	to start a motor; to burn	cumnjii robeenj	
c ^h eh		ជម្រើនលាកសុំតិ	pneumonia
ឆុំតិ	to be foolish, crazy, insane, stupid	cumnjii roliek su?	
c ^h kuet		ជម្រាបសុំរ	
ឆ្លៃ	dog	cumriep sua	hello (polite greeting form)
ckae		ជាតិ	
ឆ្លាញ់	to be tasty, delicious	ជាឡិម	to be (equal to); to be well
cnaaj		cie daem	
ឆ្លាយ	to be far away, distant	ជាចម្បតា	for example; first of all
cnaay		cie t ^h oammea?daa	usually, ordinarily, normally

ជោង	artisan; more . . .	ជាំ	to bruise, to be bruised
cieŋ	than; in excess of	coam	
ជោងកាត់ដេរ	tailor	ជ្រុង	corner, angle
cieŋ katdee		crun̄	
ជោងតែបំផុត	the most . . . of all	ជ្រុក	pig, pork
cien̄ kee bamp̄ot		cruuuk	
ជាន់ទីពីរ	second floor	លូយ ចោគ	
coan tii pii		luy c̄aw	
ជាប់	next to, adjacent	លូយប់	to stop
coap	to	c̄up	
ជាប់ចារចារ	traffic congestion	លូយប់ទួលសពក្ស	deadline
coap codraacaa		c̄up totuel piek	
ជាប់វេលាំ	to be busy	លូយវេលាំ	to strand; to be stationed at
coap vənbaol		c̄wā	
ជាបិស់សិប	especially	លូយី	to be sick; to hurt,
cie pi?seeh		c̄?i	to feel pain, ache
ជាមួយ	with, along with	លូយីក្បាល	to have a headache
cie muøy		c̄?i kbaal	
ជី៖	to ride; to sit on	លូយីត្រូង	have toothache
cih		c̄?i tmij	
ជិត	close, near, next to	លូយីពោះ	to have a stomachache
cit		c̄?i puəh	
ជួន	to give/present to;	លូយី	tree, wood
cuun	for	c̄?oə	
ជួរ	sour	លូយីល	rent, fee
cuu		cnueol	
ជិតិត	life, living, existence	លូយីៗ	to be named/ called; name
ciivit		cmusəh	
ជួនកាល	sometimes	លូយីៗត្រូកល	last name
cuoen kaal		cmusəh tracool	
ជួប	to meet	ឆ្លងគោ	
cuoep		chlang kow	
ជួយ	to help	ឆ្លាំ	to make salad
cuøy		noam	
ជួល	to employ, to rent	ឆ្លាំត្រឹមសិម្បូច្ចេ	seafood salad
cuøl		noam kriəŋ sa?mot	
ជួសជួល	to repair, fix	ឆ្លាំសាថ្ទ័រត្រី	fish salad
cuøh cul		noam sac trøy	
ជើង	leg, foot; way;	ឆ្លាំ	to eat
ceøt̄y	north	nám	

ជំពារ		ដីចំ	
ជក	to pull out, extract;	daem	trunk (of a tree, or body); origin, base
daak	to subtract	ដីមិត្ត	for the purpose of,
ជកជន្តឹម	to breathe	daembey	in order to; so that
daak danhaem		ដីរ	
ជង	pole, post, handle	dae	to walk
daan		ដីរតាម	walk along, go
ជង្ហាល់	electrical fan	dae taam	along
daanjal		ដីរត្រង់	walk straight, go
ជប	bottle	dae tran	straight
daap		ដីរទិញអីកំនែ	to go shopping
ជប់	ten	dae tjin ?oyvan	
dap		ដីរម៉ឺល	window shopping
ជល់	to arrive (at)	dae maoel	
dal		ដីរបីតិ	
ជក់	to put, to place;	dae yiit	to walk slow
dak	to add (ingredient)	ដីរលួយបីក	
ជាត់	to detach; to	dae luy tik	shallow water
dac	break	ដីរលើនីន	
ជាត់ខេ	the end of the	dae lien	
dac k'ae	month	ដីកិ	to lie down, to sleep
ជក់	to transport, carry;	deek	
dak	to lead; to take	ដីរូរូ	to chase, to run
ជង	to know (a fact);	dej	after
deng	to be informed	ដីរលប	
ជុល្យវា	dollar	dael	who; whom, which; used to, to have ever
dollaa			
ជង	coconut	ដីរ	too
doon		dae	
ជួច	to be alike, like	ដី	hand; handle
dooc		day	
ជួចគ្នា	to resemble; just as; such as;	ដីគ្នា	
dooc knie	identical with	day kuu	partner, companion
		ធមុ	pile; lump; piece
ជុវិ		dom	
doo	to exchange, to change; to give change	ដីណែនកុវ	traveling; walking; trip, journey
ជុលូយ	to change money; to make change	damnae	
doo luy		ដីណែនកុវកំសាន្ត	pleasure/leisure trip
ជុល	to fall down; to collapse	damnae kumsaan	
duel		ដាំ	to plant; to cook

ណា naa

ណា	where	ត្រកូល	family name; lineage; clan
naa		ត្រង់	to be straight; to be direct;
ណាមួយ	which one	ត្រានេរ	straightforward; frank
naa muoey			
ណាត់(ពេល)	to set an appointment	ត្រជាក់	to be cool
nat peel		traceak	
ណាស់	very; greatly; very much	ត្រី	fish
nah		trey	

ពា taa

ពា	grandfather	ត្រីង់តិ	dried salted fish
taa		ត្រី	
តាម	to follow; to agree; to go along	ត្រេវ	must, have to; should; right, correct; exact
taam			
តាមចិត្ត	according to one's desire or wishes	ត្រេវការ	to need; to want; require
taam cət		trəv kaa	
តាមមិនទាន់	unable to catch up	ត្រេវនឹង	to get along with; to be consistent with
taam min toan		trəv niŋ	
តារាងពេលរែលា	schedule	ត្រេវល្មម	to have perfect fit
taaraan̄ peel veelie		trəv lmoom	

ពី tec

little, few, small

ថ tʰaa**គុ tok**

table

ថូ ruup

to take picture

គុ laa

October

ថាto say, tell,
pronounce**តើ taø**interrogative
marker (formal)**ថែរក្រា**

to nurture

តើ teøto make a phone
call (Fr.)**ថែម**to add (to);
increase**ពី tae**

but, however; only

ថី

Thai

ពី taeñ taeusually, always,
continually**ថូ**

to moan, to groan

ពី taeñstamp, postage
stamp**ថយ**

day

គុណាង

representative

ថ្វីកំណើត

birthday

ពី pii

since

ថ្វីក្រាយnext time; in the
future

ថ្ងៃខែ	date	ទាត់	to kick
tnjay k ^h ae		toat	
ថ្ងៃលូប់សម្រាក	day off; break,	ទាន់	to catch up with;
tnjay c ^h up samraak	holiday; weekend	toan	to be timely
ថ្ងៃព្រឹង	noon	ពិរិ	to buy
tnjay traŋ		tip	
ថ្ងៃសិរីកាំ	holiday, weekend;	ទិ៍ សិរិ	direction, cardinal
tnjay somraak	vacation	tih	point
ថ្មាំ	medicine	ទី	place
tnam		tiı	
ថ្មាំក្រាប់	pill, tablet	ទីក្រុង	city
tnam kroap		tii kroŋ	
ថ្មាំទិក	liquid medicine	ទិក	water
tnam tik		tik	
ថ្មី	to be new; recent;	ទីកកកក	ice or snow
tmey	modern	tik kaak	
ថ្មីង	to weigh; to	ទីកដោះគោ	milk
tləŋ	consider	tik dah koo	
ថ្មី	to be expensive;	ទីកត្រី	fish sauce
tlay	valuable; price,	tik trey	
	cost	ទីកមុខ	facial expression
ទីកមុខ		tik muk	
ទីកុល	to receive; to	ទីកមុខកំសត់	sad face
totuəl	admit, to accept	tik muk kamsat	
ទីនៅ	river	ទីកសុទ្ធស័យ	drinking water
tuənlee		tik sot	
ទីមួន	weigh, load	ទូកទូក	three-wheel taxi, tricycle
tumrəbən			
ទីម្រាចល់	until reaching	ទូវ	cabinet, closet
tumroam dal			
ទីអ្នកប៉ែ (ទីលាប់)	to make a habit, to	ទូរទិន្នន័យ	television
tumloap	get accustomed to	tuurea?təəh	
ទីសុវត្ថិភាព	magazine	ទូរសិរី	telephone
tuəhsa?naavatdəy		tuurea?sap	
ទី		ទីប៊ូ	then
sac tie	duck	teəp	
ទាក់ទង		ទេរ៉ិត	again, more,
teak təoŋ	to contact,	tiət	further
	communicate		
	(with); to maintain	ទេសបភាព	scenery,
	relationship with	teehsa?pʰiep	landscape

ទៅ	to go	ធ្វីន់	to be heavy; to be grave, serious.
tiv		tnuon	
ទៅក្រោម	to go out	ធ្វីខ្លួន	December
tiv krav		tnuu	
ទៅជំរើលើង	going to a party	ត្បាក់	to fall down (for snow or rain)
tiv cup lieŋ		tleak	
ទៅឆ្លាំអី	to go to eat something, to have some snack	ធ្វី	to do, to work
tiv nam ?ey		tvøə	
ទៅដេរលើង	to go for a walk, to go out for fun	ធ្វីការ	to work, do a job
tiv dae leen		tvøə kaa	
ទុំ	to be ripe	ធ្វីជាតិ	to pretend
tum		tvøə cie	
ទុំណ្ឌោរ	unoccupied, empty	ធ្វីជីវិ៍	to travel
tumnee		tvøə damnae	
ទាំងអស់	all together	ធ្វីរាយ	to cause, to make
taəŋ ?ah		tvøə ?aoy	
ទោះបី	even if, although	ធ្វីស្របចំការ	farming (rice field; vegetable and fruit-growing)
tbəh bəy		tvøə srae	
ត្រាំ	to endure		
troam			
ទូរ	door, entrance, gate	នាក់	classifier for people
tvie		neak	
ធិ៍ tʰoo		នាទី	minute
		nietii	
ធានាគារ tʰea?niekie	bank	នាយក	director
tʰoammea?daa	normal	nieysek	
ធានាកំបែង	to insure, to guarantee	នាយកដ្ឋាន	office of a ministry
tʰienie raap ṙwəŋ		nieyuək?tʰaan	
ធាក់	to kick start, jump start a motor	និស្សិត	student (college)
tʰeak		nihset	
ធាតិ	to be fat; obese	និយោបុរឈ	to speak
tʰoat		ni?yiey	
ធុងសំណាម	garbage bin, dustbin, wastebasket	និក	to miss; to think of
tʰuŋ samraam		nik	
		និកចង់	to desire
ធិ៍	to smell	nik caŋ	
tʰum		នីន	of
ធំ	to be big; big	ney	
tʰom		នៃវិវ	to be located; reside; at

នៅក្នុង	still young	បណ្តាលមកពី	to be caused by
niv kmeen		bondaal mook pii	
នៅតីលីវ	to be unmarried, single (for male/ female)	បណ្តូប្រសណ្ឌីយ៍	picture postcard
niv liiv		ban praysa?nii	
នៅឯណា	where	បណ្តែកវា	to keep on doing
niv (?ae) naa		bandea	
នុំ	sweet, cake, cookie	បត់	to turn
num		bat	
និចុង	bread	បត់ឆេង	turn left
num paŋ		bat cveet	
នាំ	to accompany, to take	បត់ស្តាំ	turn right
noam		bat sdam	
នាំរោគយ៉ា	to cause to; to provoke; to enable	បទពិសោធន៍	experience
noam ?aoy		bat pi?saot	
នេះ	this, these; here	បន	to pray, wish, hope
nih		ban	
នៅេះ	that, those; there	បន្ទាំ	to continue, to go on
noh		bantaa	
		បន្ទូខ្សែ	to connect the line
ប baa			
បង្កើត	elder sibling	បន្ទិច	a bit, a little bit, slightly
baanŋ		bantec	
បង្កើតប្រឈប់	elder brother	បន្ទិចឡើត	in a little while, soon
baanŋ ṭroh		បន្ទិចម	
បង្កើតស្រី	elder sister	bant̥aem	to add to, in addition to
baanŋ sreay		បន្ទូប់	room
បង្កើតឃីន	sibling	bantup	
baanŋ ṭ?oon		បន្ទូប់កក់	reserved room
បង្កើតម្បែក	to pay	bantup kak	
baanŋ tamlay		បន្ទូប់គ្រឿបារ៉ា	family room
បង្កើនិ	toilet; restroom	bantup kruəsaa	
baanŋkhuən		បន្ទូប់គ្រឿបីរី	double rooms
បង្កើនិន	to teach	bantup kreə pii	
baanŋriən		បន្ទូប់គ្រឿមួយ	
បង្កើម	dessert	bantup kreə muəy	single room
baanŋ?aem		បន្ទូប់គ្រឿងទេនិ	
បង្កាក់	to confirm	bantup clan tuənlee	delivery room
banceak		បន្ទូប់គ្រឿងអេកូ	
បង្កើមប	menu	bantup cloh ?eekoo	radiology room
baŋciii mhoop			

បន្ទូប់ទីកិច្ចអីរុប bantup tik baep	European-style bathroom	បាយឆា baay c ^h aa	fried rice
?əerop		បាយសា baay saa	plain cooked rice
បន្ទូប់វេះកាត់ bantup veah kat	surgery room	បាយអង្គរសំរុប baay ?anjkaa samroop	brown rice
បន្ទូប់សង្ក្រោះបន្ទាន់ bantup sanjkrueh bantoan	emergency room	បារា baa	bar, nightclub (Fr.)
បន្ទាប់មក bantoap mook	after that, then	បារី paarii	Paris
បន្ទើស banlae	vegetable	បារ៉ាង baaran ^g	France; French person; European
បបារា babaa	rice soup	បាលទេះ bal teah	volleyball
បបរក្តី babaa trey	fish rice soup	បាលទាត់ bal toat	soccer, football
បិញ្ញាបត្រ pa?rengnaabat	Bachelor's degree	បារី paav	to treat (to a meal)
បាតា paa	papa	បិទ bet	to close, to shut
បាក់ bak	to be broken; to break	បុគ្គលិក bokkealik	employees, personnel, staff
បាក់ដើង bak ceoŋ	to have a broken leg	បុណ្យកំណែត bon komnaet	birthday celebration
បាក់ដៃ bak day	to have a broken arm	បុន្មាន ponmaan	how much; how many
បាក់ bat	to lose, to vanish	បុរាណ bo?raan	to be ancient, old
បាក់ស្មានី bat smaadey	to be unconscious, to lose spirit	បុស្សី poh	post office
បាត់ baat	polite response for male	បុលិសប poolih	police
បានឯណ៍ baan	to get, to obtain	បុន buoen	four
បានទេ? baan tee?	is that OK?	បី bae	if
បាយ	cooked rice; food, meal; to eat	បីក baek	open
បាយកក់ baay koak	leftover rice, cold rice	បីកកាត់ baek cat	to drive by or pass by

បើកទ្វារ baek tvie	to open the door	ប្រអប់សំបុត្រិ pra?ap sambot	mailbox
បើកលូយ baek luy	to withdraw money	ប្រាក់ prak	silver, money
បើកឡាន baek laan	to drive the car	ប្រាក់ខេខ prak k^hae	salary
បើសិន bae sen	if	ប្រាសាត praasaat	temples
បើកក្បាល baek kbaal	to have a skull fracture	ពីប្រោះ prae	to translate
បាកកម្មារ៉ា baak k^ao ?aav	to wash clothes	ពីប្រសណីយ៍ praysa?nii	post office
បំពង់ក bampuon ka	throat	ឬឯណុ p?oon	younger sibling
បំពេញ bampij	complete	ឬឯណុប្រុប់ p?oon proh	younger brother
បំពេញក្រដាស bampij kradaah	complete this paper/form	ឬឯណុស្រី p?oon srey	younger sister
ចោះចោល bah caol	to throw (away)		
បី pday	husband	ធម៌ p^haa	
ប្រជាធិន pracie cwoa	the people, population	ធម៌ p ^h aaŋ	also, too, as well
ប្រទេសិប prateh	country, nation, territory	ីកី p ^h ek	to drink
ប្រទេសក្រុវ prateh kmae	Cambodia	ីកីីក p ^h ek tik	to drink water
ប្រធាន look prat ^h ien	director	ធផិត p ^h ot	to come to the end; to be over; to pass
ប្រពន្ធ prapbøn	wife	ឪក pkaa	flower
ប្រវត្តិ pravoat	history; biography	ឪត្រី pnae	to send
ប្រគិរិបសផ្លូប pravoat ruup saŋk ^h aep	curriculum vitae	ឪត្រីប្រាក់ pnae prak	to send money
ប្រវហាល prahael	approximately, about, around	ឪយូ ptuy	to be contrary; opposite
ប្រអប់ pra?ap	box	ឪផ្លាក់ pteet prak	to transfer money
		ឪៗ pteah	house, home; store

ផ្ទះសំណាក់ pteahsamnak	guesthouse	ពូលឡាន pul laan	to be carsick
ផ្សេលឃើម plae c̄həə	fruit	ពូ puu	uncle
ផ្លូវ pləv	street, route, path, way	ពូកោះ puukae	to be clever, skillful
ផ្សារ psaa	market	ពូន puun	to make a mound
ផ្សែងៗ psœŋ ɔ̄sœŋ	other, various	ពូក puək	group
ផ្លូម p?əem	sweet	ពេញ pəñ	to fill up; to be complete
ពីរគេ			
ពង rwɑŋ	egg	ពេកលេខ៉ែត peet kalmaet	Calmette Hospital
ពងមាន់/ពងទា rwɑŋ moan/rwɑŋ tie	chicken egg/duck egg	ពេកប្រុង peet tmij	dental clinic
ពណ៌ poa	color	ពេល peel	time; period of time
ពណ៌ខេវ poa khiev	blue color	ពេលថ្វី peel tray	day time
ពិតមាន poadəmien	news, information	ពេលចិនី peel tumnee	free time
ពន្លឹត rənələsət	to extinguish; to switch off	ពេលយប់ peel yup	night time
ពាក់ peak	to wear/put on (any things other than skirt and pants)	ពី pum	not, non, without (negative particle)
ពិត pit	to be true	ព្រីក prik	morning
ពិធី ri?t̄'ii	ceremony	ព្រាបាល pyeabaal	to treat illness
ពិនិត្យ ri?nit	to examine	ព្រលិម pralim	dawn, daybreak, sunrise
ពិសេសប៊ា ri?saeh	special	ព្រះបរមាជរៀង preah baromrieveaŋ	royal palace
ពី pii	from; out off	ព្រះលីយនុហោះ preah lien yuən hah	airport
ពី . . . ទៅ pii . . . tiv	from . . . to	ព្រិល prił	snow; hail

ព្រីក priek	morning	មកវិញ mook viñ	to come back, return
ប្រយច្ច័ត្ត pruy cət	to be worried, to worry	មករា mea?ka?raa	January
ប្រហែល pruhəl	because	មនុស្ស monuh	people
កិរឹង		មនុស្សចាស់ monuh cah	adult
ភាគ p'iek rooy	percent	មន្ត្រី munentrəy	civil servant; minister
ភាសា p'iesaa	language	មន្ទីរ munentii	office; department
កើសដៅ: p'eehsaccea?	drink, beverage	ម៉ាក់ mak	mom, mommy
ភាគជីថ្មជាន់ p'oocea?niiyea? t'aan	restaurant (formal)	ម៉ាក់បា mak paa	parents
ភ្លាប់ពាក្យ pcoop piek	to be engaged	មោត់ moat	mouth
ភ្នំ pnhum	mountain, hill	មោត់ទន្លេ moat tuonlee	riverside, riverbank
ភ្លឱក phleak	to sample food	មិន mien	to have, possess; to exist; there is, there are; to be rich
ភ្លូម pliem	immediately, at once	មិន mien	chicken
ភ្លើង pleon	fire; light	មិន mien	have seen
ភ្លើងស្តូប pleon stop	traffic light	មិន ឃើញ mien k'eoŋ	have appointment
ភ្លើង pleon	rain; to rain	មិន ណាត់ mien nat	
ភ្លើង pleon	music	មិនធ្វើបាន៖ mien ptey puəh	to be pregnant
ភ្លើច plic	to forget	មិន mien	chicken
ម៉ោង		មិនអាជីង mien ?aŋ	grilled chicken
ម៉ោង mook	to come; to, toward	ម៉ោប់ mieh	gold
ម៉ោងពី mook pii	to come from	ម៉ោតីសិន maasiin	machine, engine
		ម៉ោតីសិន ATM maasiin ATM	ATM machine

ម៉ាសីនត្រូវជាក់ maasiin traceak	air conditioner	មុន	before
មិញ្ញ məŋ	just now; to be very recent	មួត	fashion, style, fancy
មិត្ត(ភាគី) mit(p̚ea?)	friends	មួតូ	motorbike
មិត្តប្រឈរ; មិត្តប្រី mit pr̚h; mit sr̚y	boyfriend; girlfriend	មួតូកានបៅ	motorbike with three wheels
មិថុនា mi?t̚o?naa	June	មួតូឌុប	two-seater motorbike-taxi
មិន	not, non- (negative particle)	មួយ	client who frequently uses the service of a place
មិនដែល min dael	never	មួព	mosquito
មិនចំនួន min meon	no (that's not right)	muuh	
មិនទាន់ min toan	not yet	មុេក	hat
មិនបាត់អាប់ទេ min bac ?ap tee	keep the change	មុេកសុវត្ថិភាព muək so?vaatp̚iep	helmet
មិនប្រឈប់លួន min sruel kluən	not feeling well	មួយ	one
មិនអើឡូ min ?oy tee	surely; it doesn't matter; you are welcome	មួយផ្លូត məpleet	for a moment
មិនា mina	March	មួយរស់ mərbəh	just to survive, barely live
មី mii	egg noodles	មួយសំកាប់ məsamrap	one set of clothing
មីជុំ miiŋ	aunt	មួយស្ទិត məsnet	a hand of bananas
មីន mœən	ten thousand	មួយស្ថិប្បញ្ញា məslaap prie	one tablespoon
មីខ muk	face; front	មិះល məəl	to read; to watch; to look at
មីខជា muk cie	surely, undoubtedly	មិះល... គូល məəl... skoal	to recognize
មីខរបាំ muk rəbaa	type of jobs, professions	មិះលជីថុ məəl cumnji	to treat illness
មីខរប្បិស muk rəbuəh	wound, injury	មិះបី meek	sky; weather

មេយ៍ស្រីទួរៈ meek sralah	clear sky; excellent weather	យ៉ាង ណាត yaan naa	which way, how; however
មេសា meesaa	April	យ៉ាង មេច yaan mœc	how, what about, in what way
មៅ mae	mom, mama	យី yii	oh; oh no; wow
មែន meen	sure, correct, right	យីតិ yiit	to be late; slow; to be elastic
ម៉ោង maoŋ	hour; time of the day	យូរ yuu	to be long (of time); slow
មេវី mav	to take over or rent the entire thing	យើង yeen	we, us, ours (regular). I, me, my, mine (intimate)
មុល mcuł	needle		
មុង mdaŋg	once; one time	កោត rook	to look for, search for
មោយ mdaay	mother	កោលូយ rook luy	earn money
មិលមិញ msei mij	yesterday	កោសី rook sii	to earn a living
មូប mhoop	food, meal	កោសីកប rook sii kaap	to succeed in business
យិយោគ		កោសីក្រាល rook sii krav	to have part-time job, to moonlight
យី yaa	deck; balcony	រងា ronje	to be cold
យក yak	to take; to bring; to get	រដោវ rodəv	season
យកចំពុកទូកដាក់ yook cət tuk dak	to work hard at; to take an interest in	រដោវក្រាល rodəv kdav	summer
យប់ yup	night, evening	រដោវក្រាង rodəv praj	dry season
យល់ yuəl	to understand, comprehend	រដោវការីក rodəv pkaa riik	spring
យល់ព្រម yuəl prəam	to agree	រដោវរងា rodəv ronje	winter
យោយ yiey	grandmother	រដោវសិប្ប rodəv voahsaa	rainy season
យ៉ាង yaan	kind, type, way, manner	រដោវសិកលេយីជ្រោះ rodəv slək chəə cruh	autumn, fall

តិច	to run	ព្រៀបការ	getting married
រេច		riep	
រេចលេង	to run for fun; to jog	រៀល	Riel (Cambodian monetary unit)
រេចលេង		riel	
រប់រ	work, job, trade, business	ធាន់ចំក្រុកតាំង	garment factory
របាត		ទី	
របាតកិត្យី	occupation, profession	រំលែក	to dance
រេបាតកិត្យី		roonjacak kat dee	
រប់រកិត្យី	how, in what way	រំង	
រេប់រកិត្យី		rean	to stop raining; to barricade
រយ	hundred	លី ឡើ	
រេយ		លក់	to sell
រលបត់	extinguished, to be off, to die	លក់	
រេលបត់		លក់	
រណាកកបំណើក	to have a sore throat (pharyngitis)	លក់ជាប់	selling so well
រេលីកបាំណើក		លក់ដាច	
រណាកតិដីជីង	to have scratches on hands/feet	លម្អិត លប	result, outcome
រេលាត ដីជីង		lattii?ph'al	
រេល	to be busy, tied-up	លម៉ែល	to try on
រេល		លោ	
សេជាតិ	flavor, taste	លី	to say goodbye; to leave
សេជាតិ		lei	
ស៊ិរ	to live; alive	លាបីយេ	goodbye
សេរ		lei haey	
រហូតដីល	until	លិខិត	document, notice, letter
រេហូតដីល		li?khet	
កំង	to stop raining; absence of rain; to be without rain	លិខិតផ្លូវជីន	passport
រោង		li?khet clan daen	
រាប់ម៉ែល	to count	លិច	
រោល		lic	
រាល	every, each	លូយ	to sink; immersed, submerged, to disappear
រីក		luy	
រីក	open, bloom	លូយសល	left over money
រីក		luy sal	
រីកម៉ាណែង	to register (Fr.)	លូ	
រីកម៉ាណែង		luu	
រូបថត	photograph, picture	លូនេ លោម	drainage, sewer
រូបថត		luoen loom	
រូន	to study	លូច	to comfort, to cheer up
រូន		luoc	
រូន		luoc	to steal; to be sneaky

លេខ់	on top, at the top,	ល្បី	popular, famous
លេខោ	above	lbey	
លើក	to lift, raise,		
លេក	elevate	តុគាំទ្រ	
លេប្កីន	to be fast	វត្ថុ	pagoda, temple
លោន		voat	complex
លេប្កីនជាងគេ	faster than	វត្ថុភុំ	Wat Phnom
លោន cieŋ kee	anyone	voat pnum	
លេខ	number	វត្ថុ	thing, object
leek		voattʰo?	
លេខកណ្តាល	medium size	វិ	he, she; they; it
leek kondaal		vie	
លេខធំ	large size	រាលកញ្ចប់ហោះ	airport
leek ^om		viel ka?pal hah	
លេខបញ្ជាក់	confirmations	វិច្ឆិកា	November
leek bojnceak	number	vicch^e?kaa	
លេខបូន្មាន	what size	វិមានជករដ្ឋីរ	Independence
leek ponmaan		vi?mein ?aek riec	Monument
លេខសម្ងាត់	password	វិលមុខ	to feel dizzy
leek somnhat		vil muk	
លេខាត	secretary	វិសុំមកាល	vacation, school
leekaa		vihsa?ma?kaal	break, holiday
លេង	to play; to do	វិតាមីន	
leeng	something for fun	viitaamiin	vitamin
លេងសី	to ski	រំង់	royal palace
leeng skii		vean̄	
លេបប្អាំ	to swallow/take		
leep tnam	a pill		
លេបង		សិច្ចារិវិទ្យា	girlfriend/boyfriend
leeng	to stop, to	sangsaa	
លោក	release, no longer		
look	Mr., you (sing./plur.)	សិច្ចាភាគស៊ា	very handsome
លោកតា	for male and polite	sanjhaa nah	
look taa	grandfather	សិច្ចាបត្រ	
	(polite)	sangjaabot	
លោកម្មាស់អើយ	Oh my goodness	សិបុណ្ណាតារ	degree
look mcah ?œøy		santʰaakie	
លោកស្រី	Mrs., you (sing./	សិបនិយ័	
look srey	plur.) for female	sansam	to save, to preserve;
	and polite		to accumulate
លោកជនកិច្ចិម	his excellency	សំបុត្រិ	
look ?aek?otdam		sambot	letter

សំបុត្រទិញផ្សេះ sambot tijn tnam	medicine prescription	សាលាចំនួន saalaa cumnuən	commercial school
សំបុត្រយេនហោះ sambot yuen hah	plane ticket	សាលាឫោះ salaa riən	school
សំបុត្រស្ដាម sambot snaam	document	ពីនិ sen	now, first
សំបុរាយ sapbaay	happy; to be happy	សីការ់ sii kaa	wedding party
សំបុរាយចំតួ sapbaay cət	to be content, happy	សីហា səyhaa	August
សំណាយ sampley	shoulder bag	សីងតែ səŋ tae	almost, nearly
សិម sam	fit, go well with	សុខសំបុរាយ sok sapbaay	to be well and happy
សិមទូទៅ sa?mot	ocean, sea	សុទាសំ som tooh	excuse (me)
សិមរី samboo	to be abundant, to have plenty of	សុវត្ថិភាព so?vattʰepʰiep	safety
សិមរាប់ samrap	for; a set (clothing)	សុមទោស soom tooh	excuse me; to beg pardon
សិមលាត់ samlaa	soup	សុនចំណាយ suen cbaa	garden, park
សិមមួយ samlaa mceu	sour soup	សិរីរោគជនាការ siəvpʰiv tʰəwonekie	passbook
សំអាត sam?aat	to clean	សិរីរោគបច្ចុប្បន្ន siəvpʰiv ruup tʰaat	picture album
សំរាប់ soam	to get used to	សិរី seevaa	service(s)
សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ saa?kal vittiyelay	university	ស្កាត skaa	sugar
សាច់គោ sac koo	beef	ស្កាល់ skaol	to know
សាច់គោឆា sac koo cʰaa	stir-fried beef	ស្កាប់ sdap	to listen
សាច់គ្រឹក sac cruu̍k	pork	ស្កាប់ចម្រៀង sdap comriən	to listen to music
សារមន្ទីរ saara? mbenetii	museum	ស្កាជ (កើឡាភ្លោន) staad (kəylaatʰaan)	stadium
សារមន្ទីរជាតិ saara? mbenetii ciet	national museum	ស្រីល srueł	to be easy; comfortable; easy

ស្រែ streý	women (female)	ស្រាយ svaay	mango
ស្រីមានិន្ទៃពេះ streý mien ptey puəh	pregnant women	ស្រាត s?aat	beautiful, pretty
ស្មោះ steah	to obstruct, block, close up	ស្រីទេតិតិ s?ey tiət	anything else
ស្ថិចកិចដុំ stuŋ rəok cumnji	to diagnose	ហាត់ haa	
ស្បែងផ្លូវ steah pləv	traffic jam, road congestion	ហាត់ hat	to be tired
ស្បួចត្រី stuuč trey	to fish	បាតា haa	to open
ស្មាក់ snak	to stay, dwell	បាតង haaŋ	shop, store
ស៊ូកដើង sbaek cəəŋ	shoes	បាតងកាត់ដោរ haaŋ katdee	tailor shop
នៅពេល smde naa	at any time	បាតងបាយ haaŋ baay	restaurant
ស្រីសំណាស់ srəah nah	more beautiful	បាតងបោកខោអារ៉ា haaŋ boak kʰao ?aav	Laundromat
ស្រាក្រហាម sraa krahaam	red wine	បាតងលក់ស៊ូវក់កោត haaŋ ləuk siəvpʰiv	bookstore, bookshop
ស្រី sreøy	women (female), girl	បាត់ hat	to practice
ស្រីបី srok	district; country, nation	បាត់ប្រាណ hat praan	to exercise
ស្រីកចិន srok cəən	China	បាមជក់បារ៉ី haam cuək baarey	no smoking
ស្រីកកំណែត srok komnaeət	hometown	បាលខ្សែល haal kyal	to air out, to be exposed to wind
ស្រីសំណាស់ srueəl nah	very easy	បីប heəp	box, case; suitcase
ស្រីសំបុគ្គិត sraom sambot	envelope	បីល (បីល) həl	burning hot (as in the taste of hot pepper)
ស្លាប់ slaap	pass away or decease	ហូវ hoo	to flow, run, drip
នៅក្នុង sleik	to put on pants, skirt	ហូរិយាម hoo ciem	to be bleeding, to bleed
ស្រាតមនី swaakum	welcome	ហូសិ huəh	to go past

ហេីម haem	to be swollen	អង្កិយចាំ ?onkuy cam	to wait for
ហេីយ haey	and	អង្គភាំ ?ongsaa	degree (temperature)
ហេីយប្បនៈ haey rii niv	yet?	អញ្ជាំ ?ap	I (depends on the context)
ហេស៊ាំបារ hiə sambao	to have a runny nose	អត្ថិញ្ញាំ ?apceəən	to invite
ហេតុអី haet ?əy	why	អត់ ?at	no, not
ហេវ hav	to invite (guest); call	អត់ទាស ?at tooh	excuse me
ហីង ហេីយ niŋ haey	that's right; of course	អត់បង់តាមលោយ ?at baŋ tomlay	not paying, free
ឡាតាំង laat		អនុបណ្ឌិត ?anu?bandit	Master's degree
ឡាន laan	car	អនុស្សារីយ៍ ?o?nuhsaava?rii	souvenirs
ឡានក្រុមហ៊ុន laan kromhun	private company car with driver	អនុរងាតិ ?onta?ra?ciet	souvenirs
ឡានបូល laan cnuel	coach, bus	អរគុណា ?oa kun	thank you
ឡានថ្វាល់ខ្លួន laan ptoal kluəən	personal car	អាកាសជាតិ ?aakaasa?tʰiet	either
ឡូ loo	a dozen	អាបារ់ ?aahaa	food
ឡើង laəŋ	to climb (up)	អាយុ ?aayu?	age
ឡើងភ្លឺ laəŋ pnum	to climb a mountain	អាតិត្យ ?aatit	week
អ នាំ aa		អាំង ?arj	to grill, to roast
អក្សរ ?aksaa	letter; alphabet; script	អាចមកបាន ?aac mook baan	able to come
អង់គ្លេស ?anjkleeh	English	អាណាពិត ?aanət	to pity, to feel sorry for
អង្គុរ ?anjkaa	rice (uncooked)	អាតិច ?aa toc	the small one
អង្គុយ ?anjkuy	to sit (down)	អាយិត ?aav yiit	T-shirt

English-Cambodian glossary

A

about	prahael	again (more, or further)	tiøt
(approximately)	ប្រហែល	age	?aayu?
about	?ampii	agree, to	proom
(concerning)	អំពី	air	kyal
about to	kampong tae កំពង់តែ	air conditioner	maasiin traceak
abroad	krav prateeh ក្រវិប្បទិស	airline	krom hun yuən hah
abundant, to be	samboo	air out, to	haal kyal
	ធម្មរ	airplane (aircraft)	ហាលុយល់
accident, danger	krusoh tnak គ្រោះឆ្នាក់	airport	ka?pal hah
accompany, to	noam		កាត់ល់ហោះ
	នាំ		yuən hah
according to	taam cøt		យន្តហោះ
one's desire	តាមចិត្ត		viel ka?pal hah
ache, to	cʰøi	airport	កាលកាត់ល់ហោះ
	ឈើ		preah lien yuən hah
add, to	tʰaem		ព្រោះណានូយន្តហោះ
	ថែម		kav?øy coap canlah
address	?aasa?yatt'haan អាស៊យដ្ឋាន	aisle seat	dæe
adult	monuh cah មនុស្សចាស់		កោភិជ្របច្ចនោះដើរ
afraid of, to be	klaac	alike, to be	dooc knie
	ខ្សោច		ផ្ទចត្តា
afternoon (early)	rocial	alive	rhøh
	វេស់ល		សិច
afternoon (late)	Injec	almost	soø tae
	ល្វាច		សិចនៃតែ
afterwards	kraoy (moøk)	along	taam
	ក្រុយ(មក)		តាម

already	haøy ហេយ	artisan	ciej ជាង
also	dae ផែរ	ask (requesting)	som សំបុំ
altogether	taoŋ ?ah ទាំងអស់	ask, to	suo សូរ
always	cie nic ជានិច្ច	at	niv នៅ
America	?aameerik អាមេរិក	ATM card	kaat ATM ភាត ATM
American	?aameerikan អាមេរិកា	ATM machine	maasiin ATM ម៉ាសីិន ATM
amount	camnuən ចំនួន	attached, to be	coap ជាប់
ancient	bo?raan បុរាណ	August	səyhaa សីហា
and	nij និង	autumn, fall	rədəv slək cʰəə cruh រដៃស្តីកណ្លឹម្រោះ
animal	sat សត្វ	B	
answer	camlaøy ចោលើយូ	Bachelor's degree	ba?reŋnaabot បរិញ្ញាបត្រ
answer, to	claøy ធ្វើយូ	bad	?aakrok; kʰoooc អាក្រក; ឱច
anything else	s?ey tiət ស្ថិទេត	balcony (terrace)	yaa យ៉ា
any time	peel naa; sməə naa ពេលណា; សម្រេចណា	banana	ceek ចេក
anywhere	tii naa kaa baan ទីណាក់បាន	bank	tʰea?nieki ធនាគារ
appointment	nat ណាត់	bank account	kon កុង
April	ŋreesaa មេសា	barbecued	?an អាំង
arm, hand	day ដៃ	bargain, to	tao tlay តត្រូ
arrest, to	cap ចាប់	bathroom	bantup tik បន្ទប់ទីក
arrive at, to	dal ជល់	be, to	cie; kiə ជា; គឺ

be able, to	?aac អាច	blue	kʰioəv ខ្សោវ
beautiful (pretty)	s?aat; ?aa ស្មាត; ល្អ	boat	tuuk ទួក
because	proeh ប្រចាំ	book	siəvpʰiv សីវ៉ូរកោះ
bed	krεe (deek) តិច្ចិ(ដេក)	booking	kak កក់
bedroom	bantup បន្ទូប់ដេក	bookstore	haaŋ ləek siəvpʰiv ហាងលក់សីវ៉ូរកោះ
beef	sac koo សាត់គោ	bored, to be	tʰup ធុញ
beer	bjijex, biə បីយេរ, ឃៀរ	born, to be	kaet កែត
before	mun មុន	borrow, to	kcey ក្រឹង
behind (back)	kraoy ក្រាយ	bottle	daap ដោប
believe, to	cie ជូរ	boulevard	mohaavitʰay មហាវិថីប្រាំ
beside (in addition)	krav pii ក្រោវពី	boy	kmeen proh ក្រុងប្រើបាប
between	rovien រវាង	boyfriend	səŋsaā សង្ឃារ
bicycle	kaŋ កង់	break (bone), to	bak បាក់
big	tʰom ធំ	breakfast	baay prik បាយព្រឹក
birthday	kʰusəø kəmnaøt ខ្លួចកំណែត	breathe, to	daak dəŋhaøm ដកដើម្បីម
birthday celebration	bon kəmnaøt បុណ្យកំណែត	broken arm	bak day បាក់ថ្ងៃ
bite, to	kʰam ខាំ	broken leg	bak cəø បាក់ថីង
black	poa kmav ពណ៌ខ្សោះ	brother (elder), (younger)	baaŋ proh; p?oon proh បង្កប់សិ; ឆ្នួនប្រើបាប
blood test	kaa pi?nit chiem ការពិនិត្យសុសាម	brown	poa thaot ពណ៌ត្រូត
blouse	?aav អារ៉ា	brown rice	baay ?aŋkaa samroop បាយអង្គរសំរួប

bruise, to	coam ជាំ	carsick, to be	pul laan ពូលឡាន
burn, to	c'eh ឆ្លែះ	cash	luy លួយ
burning hot (e.g., pepper)	hel ហើល	cat	cmaa ម្នាត
bus	laan cuel ឡាន គួល	cause, to	bondaal បណ្តាល
business	cumnuoən ចំនួន	ceremony	pi?t'i ពិធី
businessman, -woman	neak cumnuoən អ្នកចំនួន	certainty, of course	nij haey ហីងក់ឱយ
busy, to be	rauhol រោល	chair	kav?ey កោវី
but	tae; pontae តែ; បុង	chance	cmaa ម្នាត
buy, to	tij ទិញ	change (clothing), to	plah ផ្ទាល់
by	daoy ដោយ	change, to	doo ដូរ
		change money	doo luy ដូរលួយ
C			
call, to	hav ហែវ	chat, to	ni?yiey leej និយាយលេខ
Cambodia	kampu?cie; srok kmae កម្ពុជា; ប្រទេសខ្មែរ	cheap, to be	t'aok ថាក់
Cambodian	kmae ខ្មែរ	check (to read), to	moei ម៉ែល
can	baan បាន	chicken	moan មាន់
capture, to	cap ចាប់	child, i.e. offspring	koon កូន
car	laan ឡាន	China	srok cən; prateeh cən ស្រុកចិន; ប្រទេសចិន
care for	t'ae reaksaa ថែរក្សា	Chinese	cən ចិន
careful, cautious	prayat ប្រយ័ត្ន	chopsticks	cankəh ចងិះ (ចងិះ)
carry, to	cmaa កាន់	cigarette	baarey បារី

city	tii kroj ទីក្រោង	color	poa ពណ៌
class	som?aat ថ្វាក់	come, to	mook មក
clean	s?aat ស្ថាត	comfort, to	loem loom លូម លោម
clean, to	sqm?aat សំរាត	commercial school	saalaat cumnua?r សាលាចុំនឹង
clearly, surely	cbah cie ច្បាស់ជា	company	krom hun ក្រុមហ៊ុន
clear sky	meek sralah អំបើស្អាន	complete, to	bampin បំពេញ
client (regular customer)	mooy មួយ	confirm, to	ba?ceak បញ្ជាក់
climb, to	laen ឡើង	comfortable, to be	sruel ស្រុែល
clinic	kliinic គិនិច	complete	krup គ្រប់
close, near	cit ជិត	connect, to	bancoo បញ្ជី
close, to	bet ចិត្ត	contact, to	teak tow?r ទាក់ទួន
clothes	k?ao ?aav ខោអារ៉ា	contract illness/ diseases, to	kaet cumnjii កែតិដី
clothing store	haan k?ao ?aav ហានខោអារ៉ា	cook, to	tvee baay; dam baay ធ្វើបាយ; ដំបាយ
coach, bus	laan cnuel ឡានលួយ	cool, to be	traceak ត្រជាក់
coconut	doorj ដីង	cost, to	tlay ត្រួត
coffee	kaafee កាបូ	cough, to	k?oak ឯក
coffee with milk	kaafee tik dah koo កាបូទិកដោះគោះ	country	prateeh, srok ប្រទេសប់, ស្រុក
cold, to be	r?onje រោង	countryside	srok srae ស្រុកស្រុក
cold, to have a	pdaahsaay ជីសាយ	count, to	roap រាប
collapse (be unconscious)	duel sanlap ដូលសិន្យប់	cow	koo គោះ

crazy, to be	ckuət ឆ្លួត	deadline	ch'up totuəl piek លយប់ទឹលាភាក្ស
credit card	kaat ?intien ភាគតែណាទាន	December	tnuu ធ្វី
critical condition	kruək trnak tñøen ក្រោះថ្មាក់ចិន	decide, to	samræc cət សំនងចិត្ត
cross, to	cləŋ ឆ្លង	degree (certificate)	saŋgaabat សញ្ញាប្រព័ន្ធហិរញ្ញវត្ថុ
crowded (narrow)	caŋ?iet ចំង់តិត	degree (temperature)	?orŋsaas អង្កោរ
cry, to	yom យំ	delicious	cnjan ឆ្លាត់
cup	øeŋŋ តេង	delivery room	bantup cləŋ tuənlee បន្ទូបឆ្លងទេនី
curriculum vitae	pravoat ruup sankʰaep ប្រវត្តិរបស់អ្នប	dentist	kruu pəet tmīn ក្រុមទេសជាក្រុង
cut, to	kat កាត់	depart for a trip	ceŋ domnaə ចេញដំណើរ
cyclo	siikloo សីកូ	depart (leave), to	ceŋ ចេញ
		depend on, to	?aasray ləə គារប៉ែយលើ
D			
daily routine	kəckaa pracam tñay កិច្ចការប្រចាំថ្ងៃ	desire (wish), to	camnaəŋ camnool cət ចំណាយចំណូលចិត្ត
dance, to	roam រាំ	dessert	baŋ?əem បង្កើម
danger, accident	kruəh trnak ក្រោះថ្មាក់	diabetes	cumnjii tik noom p?aem ជម្រើនីកនោមវិជ្ជម័យ
daughter	koon srøy កូនស្រី	diagnose, to	stun ŋoɔk cumnjii ស្អែករកជម្រើន
day	tñay ថ្ងៃ	diarrhea	cumnjii riek ជម្រើនភាគ
day after tomorrow	kʰaan s?aeak ខាន់ស្អែក	die, to	slap ស្អាប់
day off, break	tñay ch'up somraak ថ្ងៃឈប់សម្រាក	different from	kʰoh pii ខ្ពសពី
day time	peel tñay ពេលថ្ងៃ	difficult	p?i?baak ពិចាក
dead	slap ស្អាប់	director	nieysek, look prat'hien នាយក, ប្រធាន

dirty	krakvak ក្រកុវក់	drink, beverage	p ^h eehsaccea? កើសចេះ
disappear, to	bat បាត់	drinking water	tik sot ទីកសុទ្ធស័យ
discuss, to	coccek ជំដែក	drive, to	baek បើក
disease	cumnjii; rook ឯម្ធិ; រោគ	drive by or pass by	baek cat បើកកាត់
dish	caan ចាន	driver	neak baek អ្នកបើក
distance	comnaay ចម្លាយ	dry season	rōdev pran រដ្ឋវប្បធម៌
divide (distribute)	caek ចំកូល	duck	tie ទាំង
do, to	tvøe ធ្វើ	E	
doctor	kruu peet គ្រឿតកែត	each	nī?muøy និមួយ
doctor's discharged	sambot viccea? bapcie សំបុត្រិដ្ឋបញ្ជាផ្ទា	each kind, type	muøy muk? មួយមុខ
document	sqmbot snaam សំបុត្រិត្រូវ	earn a living	rōok sii រកសិុល
dog	ckae កំស្កែរ	earn money	rōok luy រកលួយ
dollar	dollaa ដុល្លារ	east	k ^h aanj kaet ខាងកើត
don't forget	kom p ^h lic កំត្តឹច	easy	(ŋ)ey sruel (ងាយ)ស្រុះល
double rooms	bantup kreé pii បន្ទូប់គ្រឿពីរ	eat, to (colloquial)	nam ឆ្នាំ
dozen	loo ឡូ	eat, to (polite, elder)	p ^h isaa ពិសារ
drainage, sewer	luu លូ	eat, to (common term, also used for animal)	sii សិុល
dress, to	sliæk peak ស្លីកកាត់	egg	rōon ពិដ្ឋ
dried salted fish	treý njet ត្រីង់តិត	elder sibling	baan បិជ្ជ
drink, to	p ^h ieek; nam ឯក; នាំ	emergency	?aason អាសន្ន

emergency room	bantup sañkruəh bantoan បន្ទុប់សង្គ្រោះបន្ទាន់	experience	bat pi?saot បច្ចិត់សោដ្ឋកិច្ច
employees (staff)	bokkea?lik បុគ្គលិក	extinguished	rebsøt រលបត់
endure, to	troam ត្រាំ	extreme	peak តេកកំ
engagement	pcoap piek ធ្វាប់ពាក្យ	F	
English	?aŋkleeh អង់គ្លេស	face	muk មុខ
entrance (gate)	tvie ទីវេ	facing, toward	cpueh ជ្រោះ
envelope	sraom sambot ក្រុងសំបូត្រិ	factory	roonjacak នាងច័ងក្រឹង
era	sa?may សំម៉ែយ	fall down (for snow or rain)	tleak ត្លាក់
escort, to	cuun ជួន	fall over, to	duel ជួល
especially	cie pi?seeh ជាតិសេសប	family	kruəsaa គ្រឿសារ
European-style	baep ?aerop បែបអីរុប	family name	cmueh kruəsaa ឈ្មោះគ្រឿសារ
even if, although	tsoh bey ទៅៗបើ	family room	bantup kruəsaa បន្ទុប់គ្រឿសារ
evening	Injec ល្ងាច	famous	lbey ល្អី
ever (to have ever done something)	dael ដើល	fan (electric)	dønjaal ដែងឆ័រ
every	roal ភាគ	far (far away or distant)	cnaay ឆ្នាយ
every weekend	roal con sabdaa ភាគចុងសប្តាហ៍	fare	tlay cnuel ត្រួតលួយណ៍
examine, to	pi?nit ពិនិត្យ	farmer	neak srae អ្នកក្រែប
excuse (me), I'm sorry	som tooh, ?at tooh សូមទោស	farming	tvøø srae camkaa ធ្វើសរោចការ
exercise	hat praan ហាត់ប្រាកណា	fast	liøn លូវីន
expensive, to be	tlay ត្រួត	fat (to be fat)	t ^h oat ជាតិ

father	?əvpuk ឪពុក	for a moment	məpləsest ម៉ូយ៉ែក្តីតិ
February	kompʰeak កូម្មេះ	for me	?aoy knom អាយូខ្មែរ
feel dizzy, to	vil muk វិលមុខ	for the purpose of (in order to)	daəmbey ធើម្បី
fever (to have fever)	krun; kdav kluən ក្រុង; ក្រោចខ្លួន	forbid	haam ហាម
fiancé	kuu dandəŋ គួរដៃជាន់	foreigner	eoən baərəteeh ជនបរទេស
finish, to	cap ចូប	forget, to	plic ត្រូច
fire	əleəŋ ភ្លើងផែះ	free (no charge)	?at baŋ tlay អតិថជ្ជផ្សេង
fish	trey ត្រី	free, to	tumnee ទំន់នៅ
fishing	stuuc trey ស្អួចត្រី	free time	peel tumnee ពេលទំន់នៅ
fish salad	noam sac trey ឆ្លាំសាច់ត្រី	French(wo)man	baaran បារាំង
fish sauce	tik trey ទីកត្រី	fresh air	kyal baresot ខ្សែបន្ទីសុខ
fit, go well with	sam សិម	Friday	t̄hay sok ថ្ងៃសុក្រ
fix (an appointment)	nat peel ណាត់ពេល	fried chicken egg	eoəŋ moan ciən ពងមាន់ថ្ងៃនេះ
fix (repair), to	cuəh cuəl ជួសជុល់	fried duck egg	eoəŋ tie ciən ពងទាថោន
flow, to	hoo ហូវ	fried rice	baay cʰaa បាយឆាតា
flower	pkaa ផ្កាត់	friend	puək maak ពួកមាតិក
food	mhoop; baay មួប; បាយ	from	pii ពី
foolish (insane)	ckuet ឆ្លួត	fruit	plae cʰəə ផ្សែលឃើញ
foot	ceen ជើង	fry, to (mix with vegetable)	c̄haa ឆា
for	səmrəp សិរប្បាប់	fry, to (meat, fish, egg)	ciən ថ្ងៃនេះ

full, to be	c?aeat ឆ្លើត	go out, to	tiv krav ទៅក្រាប់
furniture	kriem sognhaarem គ្រឿងសង្ហារិម	go past, to	hueh ហូស
		go shopping, to	dae tjin ?oyvan ធ្វើទិញអ៊ីវាំន
G			
garbage bin (waste basket)	t?un sqmraam ធុងសំរាម	go to eat something, to	tiv nam ?oey ទៅក្រោះអី
garden, park	suoen cbaa សៀវភៅ	going to a party	tiv cup lieu ទៅជប់លោយ
garment factory	rooncak kat dee ហេងច័កកាត់ដោ	good	?i?aa ល្អ
gate	tvie ទ្ទារ	goodbye	lei haey លាត់ហើយ
get (to obtain), to	baan បាន	good idea	kumnit ?i?aa គិតិតណ្ហ
get married, to	riep kaa ឃុំបារាំរ	grandfather (polite)	look taa លោកតា
get used to	soam សុំ	grandmother (polite)	look yiey លោកយោយ
gift (present)	kadoo; ?omnaoy កាត់; អំណោយ	greet, to	cumriep sue ជិកបសុរៈ
girl	kmeen srey ត្រួងប្រើ	grill, roast, to	?an អំដី
girlfriend	mit srey មិត្តប្រើ	group	krom, puak ក្រុម, ពុក
give, to	?aoy អាយ, ឲ្យ	guest	pniev ត្រូវ
give for free (to add)	t?aem ថែម		
give injection	cak tnam ចាកថ្មី	H	
glass	kaev កែវ	half	kanlah កន្លែង
glove	sraom day ស្រាមដោ	hand	day ដោ
go, to	tiv ទៅ	happy, to be	sapbaay សិប្បាយ
go for a walk (to go out for fun)	tiv dae leen ទៅដើរលោង	hardly	min sev មិនសូវ
		hat	muok
			មួក

hate	s?ap សិរប	hospital	muonii pœet មនីភេទទឹក
have, to	mien មាន	hot, to be	kdaav ត្រូវ
have to, must	trav ត្រូវ	hot (spicy)	heil ហើល; ហើរ
he	koat គាត	hotel	santh'aakie សណ្ឋាការ
head	kbaal ក្បាល	hour	maoŋ ម៉ោង
headache	cʰii kbaal ឈើក្បាល	how about	coh ចុះ
health	sok pʰiep សុខភាព	how (many, much)	ponmaan ប៉ន្ទាន
hear, to	l̥i ពិ	how (in what way)	robiəp naa របៀបណា
heart	cet ចិត្ត	how (which way)	yaan mæc យ៉ាងម៉ែច
heavy	t̥uən ធ្វឺន	human	monuh មនុស្ស
helmet	muək so?vaatpʰiep មួកសុវត្ថិភាព	hungry, to be	klien ឃ្មាន
help, to	cuəy ជួយ	hurry	prohəp ប្រញាប់
here	nih នី៖	husband	pðəy ជី
high	kpuəh ខ្ពស់		
hill	rpnum ភី		knom; ?aj ខំ; អាយ
hire	cuəl ជួល	ice	tik kaak ទិកកាក
holiday	t̥nay cʰup samraak តែងលួបសំណក	ice cream	kaa reem ការឃំ
home	p̥teah ផែះ	idea	kumnit គំនិត
hometown	srok kamnaøat ស្រុកកំណើត	identification card	kaat samkoal kluen កាតសំគាល់ខ្លួន
hope	saŋkʰim សិរីស្រម	if	baø បើ

ill	c̄h̄i ឈិ	jogging	r̄ut leen រៀតលេង
illness	cumnḡi ជុំមី	July	kakka?daa កក្កាំដាតា
immediately	piiem ពិភ័យ	June	mi?h̄o?naa មិថុនា
important	samk̄an សំខាន់	just (fair, correct)	tr̄em tr̄ev ត្រីមត្រីវេ
in, inside	knoj កុង	just (now)	məej មិញ្ច
including (add together)	kit ruem គិត្យរេម	K	
Independence Monument	vi?mein ?aek riec វិមានធម៌រៀបចំ	keep (put), to	tuk ទូក
information	poadəmien ព័ត៌មាន	kick (jump start a motor)	t̄eak ធាក់
insufficient, to be	kvah ខ្លះ	kilogram	kiiloo kraam គីឡូក្រាម
insure, guarantee, to	t̄ienie raap រោង ធានាភាគប់រែង	kilometer	kiiloo maet គីឡូម៉ែត្រ
intend	kit គិត	kind (generous person)	cet l̄?aa មិត្តល្អ
interest (on a saving or loan)	kaa prak ការប្រាក	kind (type, style)	yaan̄; baep យ៉ាង; បែប
interpreter	neak book prae អ្នកបកព្រៃ	knee	cuoŋkuŋ ជួងុង
invite, to	?aŋceən, hav អាណ្ញោះ, ហែវ	knife	kambet កាំបិត
is, to be	cie; ki? ជី; គិ	know, to (how to do something)	ceh ចែះ
it	vie វិ	know, to (information)	dəŋ ដីង
Italian	?iitaalii អិតាលី	know, to (person)	skaol ស្នាល់
J		Korea	kooree កូរ៉ែ
January	mea?ka?raa មេកុរាតា	L	
Japanese	cea?pon ជុបុន	lacking, to be	kvah ខ្លះ

landscape	teehsa?p ^h iep ទេសាប់ភាព	like, to (want; enjoy)	can; cool cat ចង់; ចូលចិត្ត
language	p ^h iesaa ភាសា	like (similar)	dooc ដូច
large	t ^h om ធំ	liquid medicine	tnam tik ច្បាវិក
large size	leek t ^h om លេខធំ	listen, to	sdap ស្វាប់
last name	trakool ត្រួរូល	liter	liit លីត្រ
last week	?aatit mun ភាតិត្រមុន	little, few	tac តិច
last year	cnaam mun ឆ្នាំមុន	little bit, slightly	bantec បន្ទិច
late	yilt យើត	live, to	ruet រិះ
later on	kraoy moek ក្រាយមេក	live comfortably	ruet niv sruel រិះនិវស្រែល
laundry mart	haan boak k ^h ao ?aav ហាងបាកកម្មអារ៉ា	locate, to	niv និវ
lazy, to be	kcil ខិល	look at, to	moeol ម៉ែល
leave, to	ceo ចេញ	look for, search for	rook moeol រកម៉ែល
left (side)	cveen ឃ្លោះ	look out, careful	prayat ប្រយ័ត្ន
leftover money	luy sal លួយសល	lose, to	bat បាត់
leftover rice, cold rice	baay kaak បាយកក	love, to	sralaj ស្រឡាញ
leg	ceoet ជីជុំ	lovely	i?aa ឈុំ
let, to (allow)	?aoy អាយ	lower (price), to	coh thlay ចុះថ្លែង
letter	sambot សំបុត្រ	luggage, suitcase	heep ?eyvan ហើបអើវាន
letter (alphabet)	tuə ?aksaa ពីអក្សរ	lunch	baay tjay traŋ បាយថ្ងៃត្រង់
life	ciivit ជិវិត	lung x-ray	t ^h aat suet ចិត្តសុះត

M

magazine	tuəhsə?naavatdəy ទូស្សានាបៀវី	meet, to	cuəp ជួប
mailbox	pra?ap sambot ប្រអប់សំបុត្រ	meet (each other), to	cuəp knie ជួប គ្មាន
make, to	tvəə ធ្វើ	menu	bənċii mhoop បញ្ជីមួប
make (a habit), to	tumloop ទុលាប (ទាំលាប)	merchandise, goods	?øyvan អីវ៉ាន
make (a mound), to	puun ពួន	meter	konjtoa កិច្ច ទី
make (a phone call), to	tee ធោះ	middle	kondaal កណ្តាល
make (clothing)	katdee កាត់ដេរ	might, may	?aaç . . . baan អាច . . . បាន
malaria	cumŋii krun caj ធម្មីត្រូនិច្ចាថ្មី	milk	tik dah koo ទីកដោះគោ
mango	svaay ស្វាយ	ministry	krasuenet ក្រសួង
many	craoen ត្រីន	minute	nietii នាទី
map	pʰaen tii ផែនទី	moan, groan, to	tjoo ចូរ
March	minaah មិនា	mom and dad	mak paa ម៉ាក់បុរាណ
market	psaa ផ្សារ	Monday	tñay can ថ្ងៃចន្ទី
marry, to	kaa ការា	money	luy; prak លួយ; ប្រាក់
Master's degree	?anu?bandit អនុបណ្ឌិត	month	kʰae ខែ
May	?anu?pʰie ឧស៊ា	moonlight (have part-time job), to	rook sii krav រកសិធភ្លោះ
meal, food	mhoop មួប	more	tiət ទូក
meat	sac សាច់	morning	prik ប្រីក
medicine	tnam ថ្នាំ	mosquitos	muuh មួស
medium size	leek kandaal លេខកណ្តាល	most (majority)	phieek craoen កាត់ត្រីន

most (superlative)	craən cieŋ kee ក្រឹះនឹងជាតិ	nationality	cəoŋ ciet ជានិភ័ពា
most, the	bampʰot បំផុត	national museum	saara?muəntii ciet សារមន្ទីរជាតិ
mother	mdaaay ម្នាយ	near	cit ជិត
motion sickness	pul laan ពូលឡាន	nearly	steeə tae ស្រីព័ត៌
motorcycle	mootoo មួតូ	necessary	cam bac ចាំបាច់
motorbike (three wheels)	mootoo kan bəy មួតូកានបី	need, to	trəv kaa ក្រោការ
motorboat, steamboat	ka?pal កិច្ចាល់	needle	ŋcul អង្គល
Mr.	look លោក	never	min dael មិនដែល
Mrs.	look srəy លោកស្រី	never mind	min ?oy tee មិនអើទេ
much, many	craən ក្រឹះនឹង	new, to be	tməy ថ្មី
museum	saara? muəntii សារមន្ទីរ	newspaper	kaasaet ការសេចក្តី
music	camriəŋ ចម្រៀង	next	bantoap បន្ទាប់
must	trəv ត្រូវ	next (days)	tñay kraoy ថ្ងៃត្រូវយ៉ា
must have	trəv kaa ក្រុះការ	nice	i?aa ល្អ
		night	yup យុប់
N			
name (n)	cmuəh ណ៍ូហ៊ែ	no	tee ទេ
name, to	cmuəh ណ៍ូហ៊ែ	noodles	kuy tiev គុយទោវ
namely	kii គឺ	normal	tʰoammea?daa ជម្បតា
narrow	caŋ?jət ចំងួត	north	kʰaaŋ cəoŋ ខាងជើង
nation	ciet ជាតិ	November	viccʰe?kaa វិចិកា

now	?eyləv ពេជ្យរៀ	opportunity	?aokaah ឯកាស
nowadays	sap tñay nih សប្តាហ័េន់	or	rii ឬ
number (figure)	leek លេខ	orange	krooc ក្រុច
number (quantity)	camnuoan ចំនួន	other, various	pseəŋ pseəŋ ផ្សេងៗ
nurture	tʰae reaksaa ថែរក្សា	ought to	kue tae ត្រូវតែ
		out, outside	kʰaan krav ខាងក្រោម
O			
obstruct, block, to	steah ស្វែះ	over, to pass	pot pii ដូចតែ
occupation, profession	robao rook sii របរកស្តី		
ocean, sea	sa?mot សមូទ្រ	pack, package	kajcap កញ្ចប់
October	to?laa គុណា	painting	komnuu គំនួរ
of	rwrah; ney របស់; នៅ	pair	kuu គូ
office	kaari?yalay ការិយាល័យ	paper	kradaah ក្រុជាសំបុត្រ
office (of a ministry)	nieuyek?h'aan នាយកដ្ឋាន	parents	?øvpuk mdaay ឱ្យពុកម្មាយ
often	nik noap ឆ្លើយតប	Paris	paarii បារី
old	cah ចាស់	park	sunen សូនុន
once (one time)	mdaq អតិ	partner	day kuu ដើមគូ
only (merely)	kroan tae ត្រូវតែ	party (banquet)	cup lieng ដំប់លេង
on top	leø លេខ	pass away or decease	slaap ស្អាប់
open, to	baek បែក	passbook	siøvp'h'in t'wøniekie សៀវភៅការិយនាគារ
open the mouth	haa moat បាយមាត់	passenger	neak domnae អ្នកដំណើរ

passport	lī?kēt clāj daen លិខិតថ្មន៍ដោន	plane ticket	sambot yuən hah សំបុត្រយន្តហោះ
password	leek somnat លេខសម្ងាត់	plate	can ចាន
patient	neak cumnjī អ្នកជីថិ	play, to	leej លោង
pay	bən tlay បង់ធ្វើ	pleasure/leisure trip	damnaət komsaan ជំណើរកំសាន្ត
pay attention, to take care of	yəok cət tuk dak យកចិត្តទុកដាក់	pneumonia	cumnjī rəliek suət ជីវិណាកស្ថូត
perfect fit (thing, clothing)	trəv lmoom ត្រួវល្អម	police	poliih ប៉ូលីសិប
perhaps	prahael ប្រាំហែល	poor, to be	kraa ក្រុ
person, people	mɔnuh មនុស្ស	popular, famous	lbəy ល្បី
personal car	laan ptoal kluən ឡានថ្វាត់ខ្លួន	pork	sac cruuuk សាច់ផ្លូវក
Phnom Penh	pnun piŋ ភ្នំពេញ	post office	praysa?nii ត្រូវសណ្ឋាយ
photograph, picture	ruup t̄aat រូបថត	practice, to	hat បាត់
photograph, to	t̄aat ruup ចំពួរប	pray, wish, hope, to	ban បន្ត
pick up	moōk tətuəl មកទូលាយ	pregnant women	strey mien ptey puəh ស្រីមានធ្វើពេះ
picture postcard	ban praysa?nii បណ្តាលត្រូវសណ្ឋាយ	prescription	sambot t̄in tnam សំបុត្រទិន្ន័យ
pill, tablet	tnam kroap ថ្វីក្រាប់	price, cost	tomlay តម្លៃ
pity, to feel sorry for	?aanət អាណាពិត	private	?aeka?cəoən ជកជន
place	konlaen កំន្លែង	private company	kromhun ?aeka?cəoən ក្រុមហ៊ុនជកជន
place to swim (swimming pool)	konlean hael tiv កំន្លែងបោលទិន្ន័យ	private job	kaajniə ?aeka?cəoən ការងារជកជន
plain cooked rice	baay səo បាយសុំ	probably	muk cie មុខជា
plan	kumrouŋ គ្របាមាន (គំរែង)	problem	paŋhaa បញ្ហា

profit	kamray កំរើ កំប្រែ	refuse, to	min proom មិនប្រាម
prohibit	haam ហាម	register (mailing)	rəikommañdee រឹកម៉ាណែជី
province	kʰaet ខេត្ត	relax, to rest	komsaan កំសាន្ត
put, to	dak ដាក់	release, to	ləen លុបង
		remember, to	cam ចាំ
Q			
quickly	cʰap ឆាប់	rent	cnuel ឈូល
		rent, to	cuel ជូល
R			
radiology room	bantup cloh ʔeekoo បន្ទុប័ណ្ឌេះអេកូ	repair, to	cueh cul ជូសជូល
rain; to rain	pliəŋ ត្រូវឃើញ	representative	dəmnaanq តំណាង
rainy season	rədəv voahsaas រដ្ឋវិសុំ	request	som; soom សំ; សូម
rarely	kamroo កំប្រែ	reserve, to	kak កាត់
read, to	məəl ម៉ីល	reserved room	bantup kak បន្ទុប័ណ្ឌេ
reason	haet ហេតុ	rest, to	samraak សិប្រាក
receipt	bəŋkan day បង្កាន់ដី	restaurant	haaŋ bay ហាងបាយ
receive	tətuəl ទូទិន	restaurant (formal)	pʰoocea?niyea?tʰaan តោដីឃើយដ្ឋាន
reception office	kanlean tətuəl pniəv កំឡើងទូទិន ពិនិោះ	result, outcome	lattʰi?pʰal លុខិជល
recognize, to	məəl ... skoal ម៉ីល ... ស្នាល់	return, to	tralap ប្រុងប៊ែប
recover quickly, to	cʰap cie ឆាប់ជាន់	rice (brown)	baay ʔəŋkaa samroop បាយអង្គរសំបុរ
reduce the price	coh tlay ចុះផ្សេងៗ	rice (cooked)	baay បាយ
red wine	sraa krahaam ស្រោាក្របាម	rice (uncooked)	ʔəŋkaa អង្គរ

rice soup	babaa បាបាំ	Saturday	tñay say ថ្ងៃសោរ
ride, to	cih ិះ	save, to	sansam សាសាំ
right (correct), to be	trav ត្រូវ	say, to	ni?yiey នឹយាយ
right-hand side	sdam day ស្កាត់ដែល	scared	klaac ខ្សាច
ripe, to be	tum ទុំ	scarf	krumaa ក្រមា
river bank, riverside	moat tuenlee មាត់ទួន្លេ	scenery (landscape)	teehsa?ph'iep ទីសភាព
road	plev; tnal ផ្លូវ; ផ្នែល	schedule	taaraan̄ peel veelie តារាងពេលវេលា
rob	plan ប្រាន់	school	salaa riem សាលាបង្រៀន
robber	cao ត្រោរ	scratches on hands/feet	røloat day cœur រលាក់ដីជីវិះ
room	bantup បន្ទូប់	sea	sa?mot សមូគ្រ
royal palace	preah baromrievean̄ ព្រះបរមរឿយ៉ែន់	search, to	røok រក
run, to	rhøt ចិត្ត	season	rødev ដើរ
runny nose, to have	hiø sambao បែប់សំបាន់	second floor	coan tii pii ជាន់ទីពីរ
S		secretary	leekaa លេខា
sad	kamsat កំសំត័	see, to	k^øøk យើរូ
sad face	tik muk kamsat ទីកម្មធមកំសំត័	sell, to	lesøk លរក
safety	so?vatp^hiep សុវត្ថិភាព	selling so well	lesøk dac លរកដោច
salary	prak k^hae ប្រាក់ខែ	send, to	ønaø ផ្តូរ
same	dødael ដីដែល	send money, to	ønaø prak ផ្តូរប្រាក់
satisfied	pøjø cøt ធោញចិត្ត	September	kajñaa កញ្ចា

service(s)	seevaa សៀវា	sky	meek មេក
service worker	neak bdmraə អ្នកបំដី	sleep, to	keen; deek តែង; ដោក
set (an appointment), to	nat ណាត់	slow	yit យើតិ
set of clothing	muøy samrap មួយ សំរាប់	small, to be	tooc តូច
sew, to	dee ដោះ	smell, to	tum ធុំ
shoulder bag	kaaboop speiy កាបូបស្វាយ	smell (odor, scent)	klen ភិន
sibling	baaŋ p̥oɔn បង្កួន	smell of cigarette	t̥um klen baarey ធុំភិនបារី
sick	cʰii; min sruel khluən ឈឺ; មិនប្រើលុខី	smoke (cigarette), to	cuək baarey ជកបារី
side	kʰaaŋ ខាង	snow or ice	pril, tik kaak ព្រិល, ទឹកកក
silver	prak ប្រាក់	so	doocneh ដូច្លេះ
since	taŋ pii តាត់ជី	soccer (football)	bal toat បាលទាត់
sing	crieŋ ប្រើចុង	some	klah ខ្សោះ
single room	bantup kreə muøy បន្ទូប៊ូត្រូមួយ	sometimes	cuən kaal ជួនកាល
sink	lic លិច	son	koon proh កូនប្រស
(submerged), to			
sister (older, younger)	baŋsrey; p̥oɔn srey បង្កួនប្រើ; បួនប្រី	sore throat (pharyngitis)	rəliek bəqampuən kaa រលាកប៊ូតង់កា
sit, to	?aŋkuy អងីយ៉ែ	so that (in order to)	doocneh ដូច្លឹះ
size	tumhum ទុំបាំ	sour	cuu ជុំ
ski, to	leəŋ skii លេងស្ថី	sour soup	samla mcuu សំម្រែមុំ
skilled	ruu kae រួកកៅ	south	kʰaaŋ tboonj ខាងក្រោង
skirt	samp bat សំពាត់	sorry (apology)	soom tooh សូមទោស

sorry (regret)	sdaay ស្តាយ	stop raining	rear កំង
speak	hi?yiey និយាយ	store	haan ហាន
special	pi?saeh ពិសេស	straight	tran ត្រង់
spend (money), to	caay ចាយ	street corner, corner	kac cruj កាត់ប្រជុំ
spoon	laap prie លាបប្រាំ	street number	plav leek ផ្លូវលេខ
sport	keylaa កីឡា	street, route, path	plav ផ្លូវ
spring	rodev phkaa riik រដ្ឋភការីក	strong	klanj ខ្ចោះ
stadium	staad; keylaat"aan ស្តាគ; កីឡាស្តាគ	student (college)	nihsot និស្សិត
stamp	taem ព័តម	study, to	rien រៀន
stand	c ^h o លួរ	succeed (in business), to	rook sii kaap រកសិកប
start (a motor), to	c ^h eh ផ្រែ៖	such as	cie daem ជាដើម
starting from	cap pii ចាប់ពី	sugar	skaa សុរ
starve, to	?ot baay អត់បាយ	summer	rodev kdav រដ្ឋរក្សា
stay, dwell	snak ស្វាក់	Sunday	tlay ?aatit ថ្ងៃអាទិត្យ
steal	luoc លួច	sure, for sure	cie praakor ជាប្រាកដ
still	niv . . . niv laey និវ . . . និវឡើយ	surely, undoubtedly	muk cie មុខជា
stomach	pueh បុរោះ	surgery room	bantup veah kat បន្ទុបែវកាត់
stomachache	c ^h ii pueh លើបោះ	swallow, to	leep លូប
stop, to	c ^h up លួប	sweater	?aav rovje អារិវា
stop crying	c ^h up yom លួបយ៉ែ	sweet	p?aeam ផ្លូម

swim, to	hael tik ហែល ទិក	than	cien ជាង
swollen, to be	haem ហោម	thank you	?aa kun អរគុណា
	ហោម	that	noh នៅ៖
T			
table	tok តុ	then	teap ទីប់
tailor	cien katdee ជាងកាត់ដេរ	thick	krah ក្រាស់
tailor shop	haan katdee ហានកាត់ដេរ	thing	rabah របស់
take, to	yook យក	think, to	nik គិត
takeover (or rent the entire thing)	mgav មេវិ	this	nih នេះ
take picture	t'aat ruup ថតូរបំបាត់	thousand	poan ពាន់
tasty, delicious	cnaj ឆ្លាយ	throat	bampuhet kaa បំពង់កា
taxi	taksii តាក់ស្ថិ	throw away, to	bah caol បញ្ចាន់ចោល
TB (tuberculosis)	cumnjii roboen ជុំរបោះង	Thursday	tnay prohaoh ថ្ងៃប្រាកប្បត្តិ
tea	tae តើតើ	tight	caej?iet ចង្វែក
teach, to	banjriem បង្វីន	time	peel; veillie; kaal តេល; វេលា; កាល
teacher	kruu banjriem គ្រូបង្វីន	tired, to	hat ហាត់
telephone	tuurea?sap ទូរសព្ទ	too	dae ខ្លួន
television	tuurea?tsoh ទូរទឹកស្ថិន	toothache	c'hii tmij លើឱ្យង្វួញ
tell, to	prap ប្រាប់	total (up)	kit luy គិតលូយ
temples	praasaat ប្រាសាត	towel	kansaen cut kluoen កំន្លែងដូចខ្លួន
Thai	t'ay ថែរ	traffic	coap cooraacaa ជាបច្ចាប់
		congestion	

traffic light	pleøø stop ត្រួវសុប	unhappy	min sapbaay cøt មិនសហយចិត្ត
transfer money, to	ptee prak ផ្លូវប្រាក់	university	saa?kal vittyielay សាកលវិទ្យាល័យ
transport, to	dak ដឹក	unmarried, single (for male/female)	niv liiv នៅលីវ
travel agency	kromhun teehsa?caa ក្រុមហ៊ុនទេសចរណ៍	unoccupied (empty)	tumnee ទុនី
traveling, trip	domnaø ជំណះវា	unripe, to be	kcey ខ្សែ
treat illness, to	mœøl cumnjii អើលជីមី	until	rohoot dal រហូតដល់
treat illness (formal)	pyiebaal ព្រាតាល	until reaching	tumroam dal ទុម្រាមដល់
try . . . on	løø mœøl លម៉ិល	urine test	kaa pi?nit tik noom ការពិនិត្យទីកនោម
T-shirt	?aav yiit អារីយិត	us	yøøk យើង
turn, to	bat បត់	use, to	præø ប្រើ
turn left	bat cveøj បត់ឆ្លង	used to	tloap ឆ្លាប
turn off	bat បិទ	V	
turn right	bat sdam បត់សំណាំ		vacant
type	baep បឹប	vacation	vihsa?ma?kaal វិស្សែមភាល
U		value	tomlay តម្លៃ
umbrella	c^hat ឆ័ត្តិ	various	pseøø pseøø ផ្សែងៗ
uncle	buu ឬ	vegetable	bonlae បន្ទោះ
unconscious (to lose spirit)	bat smaadøy បាត់ស្អារតី	vendor	neak lœøk អ្នកលក់
under	kraom ក្រាម	very	nah ណាត់
understand, to	yøøl យល់	villager	neak srok អ្នកប្រើកិរិយា

visit, to	tiv leen ទិវ លើន	Wat Phnom	voat pnum វោត ភ្នំ
visitor	rohiov រោគីវ	we	yoeu យើឱ
vitamin	viiitaamiin វិតាមីន	weather	?aakaasa?thiet អាកាសធាតុ
voice	samleen សំឡូន	wed (marry), to	riep kaa រឹបការ
volleyball	bal teah បាល់ទេះ	Wednesday	tnej put ព្រៃណុដ
		week	?aatit ភាពិក្ស
W			
wait, to	cam ចាំ	weekend	coej soapdaa ចូងសំណ្តាប់
walk, to	dae ដើរ	weigh, to	tleng តើង
walk along (go along)	dae taam ដើរតាម	weigh (load)	tumruhən sambot ទុម្គនឹង
walk fast	dae lien ដើរលើន	welcome	swaakum ស្វាគមន
walk slow	dae yit ដើរយើត	West	k'aaŋ lic ខាងលិច
walk straight	dae traŋ ដើរត្រង់	what	?ey អី
walk through shallow water	dae luy tik ដើរលួយឱ្យទីក	wheelchair	kav?ey rujn ការអីរញ្ញ
want, to	caŋ ចង់	when	peel naa ពេលណា
want to go	caŋ tiv ចង់ទៅ	where	niv ?ae naa នៅឯណា
want to order food	caŋ hav ចង់ហោ	whether or not	koo daoy កើដោយ
want to see/meet	caŋ cuəp ចង់ជួប	which	dael ដៃល
wash clothes (do laundry)	baok k'ao ?aav បាកកខោកវា	which one	naa muøy ណាមួយ
watch	mœol ម៉ែល	while, during	knor peel កូនុំពេល
water	tik ទីកិ	white	bao saa ពណិតប

who (whom)	neak naa អ្នកណា	Y	
why	haet ?ey បោតីអី	year	cnam ឆ្នាំ
wife	prapuən ប្រពុន	yellow	pao lieu ពាល់លើឃី
will	nii នីង	yes (polite response for female)	caah, caa ចាត់ស់, ចា
wind	kyal ខ្សែល	yes (polite response for male)	baat បាត់
window seat	kav?ey coap baŋ?uec កាហិត្តជាប់បង្គច្ច	yesterday	msel miŋ មុនិលមិញ
window shopping	dae mœl ដើរម៉ែល	yet?	haøy ri iñiv ហេយរីនិវ
winter	rødøv roŋje រដ្ឋវរង់	you	?aeŋ ឯង
with, along with	cie muøy ជីមួយ	young (people)	kmeen ក្រុង
withdraw money, to	baæk luy បើកលូយ	younger (brother or sister)	p?oon proh; p?oon srøy បួនប្រសិទ; បួនស្រី
women	strej ស្រី	younger sibling	p?oon បួន
work, job	kaanje ការងារ		បួន
work, to	tvøø kaa ធ្វើការ	Z	
worried, to be	pruøy cət ប្រួយចិត្ត	zero	soon ធម្មនឹង
wound, injury	muk røbuən មុខរប្បស៊ិប	zoo	suen sat ធម្មនិស៊ិប
wrap (packages), to	kcap ខ្សែ		

Index

addressing: by title 55; foreigners 4;
government officials 53, 55, 103;
people 4, 109
appointments: book 56; making 46–7,
52, 56, 216–17

banking 200, 211; ATM မာဏ္ဍာဏ 205,
206, 208, 209, 211; depositing
money **daak prak/luy** နေခါပုံပြ
206, 207, 209; exchanging money
doo luy ဖွှဲပုံပြ 206, 211;
withdrawing money **daak prak/luy**
နေခါပုံပြ 206, 208, 209, 211

beverages: drinks (noun) 61; to drink
(verb) 159, 189, 195
breakfast 86–7

classifiers/specifiers 63; countable for
fruit, flowers and vegetables 63, 64,
68; countable for grain 62, 63, 88;
countable for liquid goods 61, 63,
64, 149, 184, 225; countable for
solid goods 60, 61, 62, 64, 65, 66,
71, 77, 87, 201, 204; people 109

clothing 76, 82, 83, 85, 138, 227;
buying 78–9; size 80

colors 81, 83

comparisons: ‘more than’ **cien** ငါးနှံ
or ‘-er than’ 79, 101, 103, 168, 199,
212, 222; ‘the most’ **cien kee**
ငါးနှံတော် 103, 149, 150, 222;
‘same’ **dooc** ဖွှဲပြ 66, 68, 70, 185,
222, 229

confirmatory expressions: **mœen** ဒီမီ
or **mœen haøy** ဒီမီဟေးပေါ်ပြ ‘of
course’ 101, 105, 108, 210, 215,
216; **nij haøy** ပုံးနှံဟေးပေါ်ပြ ‘of
course’ 100, 144, 148, 217, 218

conjunctions: noun phrases with ‘and’
nij ဒီနှံ and ‘or’ **rñ** ပူ့ 229; verb
phrases with ‘and’ **haøy** ဟေးပေါ် 54,
59, 60, 65, 68, 73, 85, 90, 91, 99,
101, 105, 107, 118, 123, 127, 129,
132, 141, 148, 162, 171, 173, 176,
179, 180, 187, 190, 191, 193, 195,
200, 205, 208, 212

consonants: reading and writing
xiii–xiv, 12–14, 16; consonant
clusters xiv, 12, 95, 110–11, 126;
consonant and vowel combination
43–4, 125

daily routine: schedules 37, 49, 52,
56; days of the week 35–6, 41;
period of day 35, 39; times 37

diacritics xiii, 12, 155–6, 157

directions: giving directions 115,
118–19, 122–3, 125, 127;
directional terms 120–1, 124;
locational expressions 116–17

drink see **beverages**

employment 100, 102–3, 106, 107,
109, 112–13

family: kinship terms 4, 17–19, 210, 223;
relationships 23, 24, 25, 112–13

fruits 66, 68; taste 68

greetings 1, 3–4, 8, 9, 12

health and illness 187, 191, 193, 195,
197, 199; emergencies and hospital
48, 189

hotels and tickets 8, 38, 173, 175,
176–7, 180–1, 183, 185, 229, 230

- independent vowels 140
- interrogatives 216; ‘confirmatory’ questions with **mɛen tee** ໝັນເຕີ 215, 217; ‘how’ questions with **yaan** ຢ້ານ ແລ້ວ or **mec** ມ່ານ ແລ້ວ 152, 177, 187, 191, 195; ‘how many’ or ‘how much’ questions with **ponmaan** ພົມນານ 17, 20, 25, 34, 36, 60, 61, 64, 65, 78, 83, 107, 109, 118, 122, 123, 128, 129, 132, 136, 138, 139, 167, 176, 177, 180, 181, 183, 187, 193, 201, 205, 220; ‘or’ **rii** ໃຫ້ statements 8; ‘what’ questions with **?vay** ສີ່ວຍ, **?ey** ສີ່ຍ, or **s?ey** ສີ່ຢ 5, 6, 7, 36, 38, 54, 61, 75, 78, 79, 87, 90, 92, 93, 115, 162, 167, 181, 191, 195, 201, 205, 208, 209, 219; ‘what should one do?’ questions with **tvee yaan mec** ຕີ່ຍ້ານ້ອນ ແລ້ວ 183, 201, 204, 208; ‘when’ questions with **kaal naa** ກາລ ນານ or **peel naa** ເປີລ ນານ 220; ‘where’ questions with **naa** ນານ 2, 6, 7, 10, 12, 38, 67, 150, 219; ‘which’ questions with **naa** ນານ or **?aa naa** ສ້າ ນານ 33, 38, 47, 211, 220; ‘who’ questions with **neak naa** ນຸກ ນານ 6, 18, 23–4, 109, 211, 219; ‘why’ questions with **haet ?ey** ໄບຕື່ສີ 135, 190, 194, 221; ‘yes-no’ questions 20–1, 22, 26, 216, 218; ‘yet’ questions with **haey rii niv** ໄບຍິ່ງບູແຕ່ or **rii niv** ບູແຕ່ 2, 8, 25, 26, 27, 66, 69, 71, 218
- leisure activities 143, 160
- locations: locational expressions 116–17, 127; directional terms 120–1; giving directions 118–19, 122–3
- manners and respect 11
- market 10, 32–3, 45, 60–1, 65–6, 73, 85
- money see banking
- months 40
- names 4
- negative sentences 215; **?at . . . (tee)** ຂັດ . . . (ເຕີ) 21, 32, 35, 53, 61, 65, 78, 79, 82, 83, 89, 90, 92, 95, 99, 118, 122, 132, 133, 135, 136, 138, 144, 146, 166, 176, 177, 181, 186, 187, 201, 203, 205, 215, 216, 217; **?at toan** ຂັດ ດານ or **min toan** ມືນ ດານ ‘not yet’ 21, 69, 91; **min . . . tee** ມືນ . . . ເຕີ 21, 47, 61, 69, 79, 90, 92, 133, 136, 138, 144, 146, 177, 181, 187, 162, 201, 215, 201; **min mɛen** ມືນ ໝັນ 210, 215, 216
- numbers 21–2, 40–1, 45
- polite expressions: **soom** ສົມ ‘please’ vs. **som** ສົມ ‘to request’ or ‘to ask for’ 76
- post office and mailing 200–1, 202–3
- pronouns 4–5; title nouns 4, 55
- punctuation 170
- questions see interrogatives
- souvenirs 74–5
- specifiers see classifiers
- subordinate or embedded clauses 230
- subscripts (reading and writing) 83–4, 96–7, 98, 110
- tickets 54, 172, 173, 175, 176, 185, 195, 198
- travel 158, 162, 163, 172, 176, 180
- vowels: audio xv, 28; independent 140; reading and writing 29, 30, 31
- weather and seasons 128, 132–4, 136

Audio track listing

All audio tracks referenced within the text are free to stream or download from www.routledge.com/cw/colloquials. If you experience any difficulties accessing the audio on the companion website, or still require to purchase a CD, please contact our customer services team through www.routledge.com/info/contact.

Audio 1

Introduction

- 1 Introduction
- 2 Phonetic sounds
- 3 p, t, c, k, b, d, s
- 4 h, m, n, ñ, r
- 5 v, y, l, r
- 6 Vowels – first and second series

Unit 1

- 7 Dialogue 1
- 8 Exercise 2
- 9 Dialogue 2
- 10 Exercise 3
- 11 Dialogue 3
- 12 Exercise 4
- 13 Exercise 5
- 14 Exercise 6
- 15 Listening passage

Unit 2

- 16 Dialogue 1
- 17 Numbers 1–10
- 18 Numbers 11–20
- 19 Exercise 1
- 20 Exercise 2 – negative statements
- 21 Exercise 2b – questions
- 22 Dialogue 2
- 23 Exercise 4
- 24 Dialogue 3

- 25 Exercise 5

- 26 Exercise 8
- 27 Exercise 9
- 28 Listening and reading passage

Unit 3

- 29 Dialogue 1
- 30 Days of the week
- 31 Exercise 1
- 32 Dialogue 2
- 33 Months of the year
- 34 Numbers
- 35 Exercise 5
- 36 Exercise 6
- 37 Exercise 7
- 38 Listening and reading passage

Unit 4

- 39 Dialogue 1
- 40 Exercise 1
- 41 Dialogue 2
- 42 Dialogue 3
- 43 Exercise 5
- 44 Exercise 7
- 45 Listening and reading passage

Unit 5

- 46 Dialogue 1
- 47 Dialogue 2
- 48 Fruit

- 49 Vegetables
50 Exercise 4
51 Exercise 9
52 Listening and reading passage
- Unit 6**
- 53 Dialogue 1
54 Exercise 2
55 Dialogue 2
56 Colours
57 Statements
- 58 Exercise 4
59 Listening and reading passage
- Unit 7**
- 60 Dialogue 1
61 Exercise 1
62 Dialogue 2
63 Dialogue 3
64 Exercise 6
65 Exercise 9
66 Exercise 10

Audio 2

Unit 7

1 Listening and reading passage

Unit 8

- 2 Dialogue 1
3 Dialogue 2
4 Exercise 4
5 Dialogue 3
6 Exercise 6
7 Listening passage

Unit 11

- 20 Dialogue 1
21 Dialogue 2
22 Dialogue 3
23 Listening and reading passage

Unit 12

- 24 Dialogue 1
25 Dialogue 2
26 Dialogue 3
27 Listening and reading passage

Unit 9

- 8 Dialogue 1
9 Dialogue 2
10 Points of compass
11 Relative positions
12 Dialogue 3
13 One medial cluster
14 Three consonants
15 Listening and reading passage

Unit 13

- 28 Dialogue 1
29 Dialogue 2
30 Dialogue 3
31 Listening and reading passage

Unit 14

- 32 Dialogue 1
33 Dialogue 2
34 Dialogue 3
35 Listening and reading passage

Unit 10

- 16 Dialogue 1
17 Dialogue 2
18 Dialogue 3
19 Listening and reading passage

Unit 15

- 36 Dialogue 1
37 Dialogue 2
38 Dialogue 3
39 Listening and reading passage
40 End

Bonus audio

Only available to stream or download from www.routledge.com/cw/colloquials

- | | |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| 1 Pronunciation | 17 Unit 9 Comprehension questions |
| 2 Consonant clusters | 18 Unit 10 Exercise 3 |
| 3 Long vowels | 19 Unit 10 Comprehension questions |
| 4 Long diphthongs | 20 Unit 11 Exercise 1 |
| 5 Short vowels | 21 Unit 11 Exercise 5 |
| 6 Short diphthongs | 22 Unit 11 Comprehension questions |
| 7 Unit 1 Comprehension questions | 23 Unit 12 Exercise 3 |
| 8 Unit 2 Comprehension questions | 24 Unit 12 Exercise 5 |
| 9 Unit 3 Comprehension questions | 25 Unit 12 Comprehension questions |
| 10 Unit 4 Comprehension questions | 26 Unit 13 Exercise 5 |
| 11 Unit 5 Comprehension questions | 27 Unit 13 Comprehension questions |
| 12 Unit 6 Comprehension questions | 28 Unit 14 Exercise 1 |
| 13 Unit 7 Comprehension questions | 29 Unit 14 Exercise 3 |
| 14 Unit 8 Exercise 7 | 30 Unit 14 Comprehension questions |
| 15 Unit 8 Comprehension questions | 31 Unit 15 Exercise 4 |
| 16 Unit 9 Exercise 5 | 32 Unit 15 Comprehension questions |

Speakers: Vansok Khem, Socheat Nean, Sonorita Srey, Reaksmey Yean

Narrator: Justin Watkins



eBooks

from Taylor & Francis

Helping you to choose the right eBooks for your Library

Add to your library's digital collection today with Taylor & Francis eBooks. We have over 50,000 eBooks in the Humanities, Social Sciences, Behavioural Sciences, Built Environment and Law, from leading imprints, including Routledge, Focal Press and Psychology Press.



Free Trials Available

We offer free trials to qualifying academic, corporate and government customers.

Choose from a range of subject packages or create your own!

Benefits for you

- Free MARC records
- COUNTER-compliant usage statistics
- Flexible purchase and pricing options
- All titles DRM-free.

Benefits for your user

- Off-site, anytime access via Athens or referring URL
- Print or copy pages or chapters
- Full content search
- Bookmark, highlight and annotate text
- Access to thousands of pages of quality research at the click of a button.

eCollections

Choose from over 30 subject eCollections, including:

Archaeology

Architecture

Asian Studies

Business & Management

Classical Studies

Construction

Creative & Media Arts

Criminology & Criminal Justice

Economics

Education

Energy

Engineering

English Language & Linguistics

Environment & Sustainability

Geography

Health Studies

History

Language Learning

Law

Literature

Media & Communication

Middle East Studies

Music

Philosophy

Planning

Politics

Psychology & Mental Health

Religion

Security

Social Work

Sociology

Sport

Theatre & Performance

Tourism, Hospitality & Events

For more information, pricing enquiries or to order a free trial, please contact your local sales team:
www.tandfebooks.com/page/sales

www.tandfebooks.com

